



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

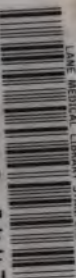
We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

2 45 0061 8442



LANE MEDICAL LIBRARY STANFORD

LANE



MEDICAL

LIBRARY

LEVI COOPER LANE FUND

NOTES ON MATERIA MEDICA AND PHARMACY.

NOTES
ON
MATERIA MEDICA
AND
PHARMACY

BY
FREDERICK T. ROBERTS,

M.D., B.Sc., F.R.C.P.



EXAMINER IN MATERIA MEDICA AND PHARMACY IN THE UNIVERSITY OF
LONDON, AND IN MATERIA MEDICA AT THE ROYAL COLLEGE OF
PHYSICIANS; PROFESSOR OF THERAPEUTICS AT UNIVERSITY
COLLEGE; PHYSICIAN TO UNIVERSITY COLLEGE
HOSPITAL, AND TO THE BROMPTON
CONSUMPTION HOSPITAL, ETC.



PHILADELPHIA
PRESLEY BLAKISTON, SON & Co., 1012 WALNUT ST.

1884

MP

f
'4

DEDICATED
TO THE
MEDICAL STUDENTS
OF
UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, LONDON.

PREFACE.

THE duration of the Course of Lectures on *Materia Medica*, as required by the Examining Boards, is far too short to do justice to the whole range of subjects included under this term; while it has always appeared to me a waste of time to lecture on certain branches, which can only be satisfactorily taught by practical demonstration. These are the primary reasons which have induced me to publish the following "Notes." They are mainly founded upon lectures which I have delivered from time to time, as part of the Course at University College, and their publication will enable me in future to devote the entire course to Therapeutics. Although intended in the first instance for the Students of University College, I trust that these notes may be found useful to others, either as an aid in learning the main facts

relating to *Materia Medica* and Pharmacy, or for reference.

I have to express my acknowledgments to my friend and pupil, Mr. Raymond Johnson, for the valuable assistance which he has rendered me in revising the final proof-sheets, and in preparing the Index.

THE AUTHOR.

53 Harley Street, W.

September, 1884.

CONTENTS.

SECTION I.

| | Page |
|------------------------|------|
| INTRODUCTION | I |

SECTION II.

| | |
|---------------------------------|----|
| THE INORGANIC KINGDOM | 26 |
|---------------------------------|----|

SECTION III.

| | |
|-------------------------------|-----|
| THE ORGANIC KINGDOM | 191 |
|-------------------------------|-----|

SECTION IV.

| | |
|---|-----|
| SUMMARY OF OFFICINAL PREPARATIONS | 355 |
|---|-----|

MATERIA MEDICA AND PHARMACY.

SECTION I.

INTRODUCTION.

THE study of the medicinal agents which are employed in the treatment of disease constitutes an essential part of a medical education. The subject, as a whole, may be conveniently designated by the term PHARMACOLOGY, but it naturally arranges itself under three divisions, namely:— I. MATERIA MEDICA. II. PHARMACY. III. PHYSIOLOGICAL ACTION AND THERAPEUTICS.

MATERIA MEDICA has come by general usage to be associated with that branch of the subject which deals with medicinal substances in themselves; that is, with the particulars which have to be learnt about each individual drug. PHARMACY is concerned with the actual preparation of the medicinal agents themselves, and of their various combinations and compounds. PHYSIOLOGICAL ACTION AND THERAPEUTICS, in their more restricted meaning, refer to the action of drugs upon the system in health and disease, and their practical uses in treatment.

The following "Notes" are intended merely for beginners; and on this account they deal mainly with Materia Medica and Pharmacy. With regard to Therapeutics, it is useless to attempt to teach this branch of the subject to those who have not as yet acquired the preliminary knowledge,

without which its intelligent study is absolutely impossible. Therefore, all that will be done is to point out the action of drugs, as indicated by the ordinarily recognised terms—*emetic, purgative, tonic, diuretic, &c.*; and to mention the doses of the preparations used for internal administration.

I. METHOD OF STUDY.

It is preferable to recognise MATERIA MEDICA and PHARMACY as distinct branches, and to study them separately. Obviously MATERIA MEDICA should come first. The student should avoid burdening his memory with minute and unimportant details about the various drugs, but endeavour to grasp the essential facts relating to each, and to recognise intelligently their practical bearings. The requisite information must of course be obtained from books, lectures, or demonstrations, but these methods of instruction should always be supplemented by personal and practical study of the drugs themselves. Thus, in reading the description of a drug, the different points will be far more easily understood and remembered if the student has a specimen before him, and carefully observes the characters which are described. Moreover, by examining and handling the specimens again and again, he will make himself perfectly familiar with these characters; and may also learn to contrast those drugs which are liable to be mistaken for each other. Again, he should endeavour to practise and verify chemical tests, where these are important, so as to have them impressed on the memory. Nor should the study of Medical Botany be forgotten, in so far as this subject is connected with Materia Medica; while useful information may be gained

by observing the plants themselves in their natural state, where this is practicable.

PHARMACY is essentially practical, and a satisfactory and abiding knowledge of its details can only be acquired by learning the "art of dispensing." Formerly this branch was taught during apprenticeship, but now it has to be studied as a separate part of the medical curriculum, either in a private or public dispensary. It must be insisted upon that *practical pharmacy is important*, and should receive adequate attention. While during the period of long apprenticeships it occupied far too prominent a position, the danger now is lest students should pass into the opposite extreme, and go through the instruction demanded by the examining boards in a perfunctory manner, as if it were of no consequence. Of course a practical knowledge of pharmacy is absolutely essential for those who intend to engage in a dispensing practice; and it is very useful to those who have no such intention. Thus it teaches them, and makes them familiar with:—(1) The *art of prescribing*, i.e. how to write prescriptions, and the best combinations of different drugs to employ. (2) The *modes of administering* and using therapeutic agents. (3) The proper *doses* of drugs under various circumstances. (4) *Incompatibles*. Medicines may be either *chemically* or *physiologically* incompatible, and it is of considerable importance to become acquainted with, and to remember the chief facts relating to this subject. Owing to their incompatibility drugs when combined together may give rise to compounds which are either inert or injurious; or which are merely objectionable on account of their appearance, colour, taste, or other characters. It must be borne in mind, however, that agents which are chemically incompatible may have valuable therapeutic properties; as may be exemplified

by Lotio Nigra, Mistura Ferri Composita, and numerous other combinations.

While Pharmacy is essentially practical, its study may be guided and assisted by books. *The book* which must be regarded as the standard of Pharmacy in this country, is the British Pharmacopœia; but other countries have their several Pharmacopœias, which may be studied with advantage; while most hospitals have now their special Pharmacopœias, from which much valuable information may be gained; and there are several useful books of prescriptions compiled by individual writers. In studying the British Pharmacopœia with reference to Pharmacy, attention must be paid to the following points:—1. The *weights and measures* which are employed, with their signs and abbreviations. 2. The mode of conducting *general pharmaceutical operations*. 3. The nature of *groups of preparations*, and their general methods of manufacture. 4. The details of the preparation of *individual drugs* and of *active principles*. 5. The *pharmaceutical compounds* or *officinal preparations* of each particular drug, with their important ingredients, and in some instances the proportions of these ingredients. 6. The *members of each group* of officinal preparations; with such details as may be of importance in relation to any individual member of the group.

2. GENERAL NATURE AND SOURCES OF DRUGS.

The agents which are used as medicines must be regarded in the first instance under the two divisions of:—1. *Officinal or official*; 2. *Non-officinal or non-official*. *Officinal or official* drugs are those which are recognised by the BRITISH PHARMACOPŒIA, and this division alone will be dealt with in these

notes; although many *non-official* agents have now obtained an established reputation in treatment, and are of considerable practical value.

The following table will serve as a basis for indicating generally the sources and nature of medicinal agents.

| | | |
|-------------------------|---|--|
| A. INORGANIC KINGDOM | { | 1. Non-metallic. 2. Metallic. 3. Special chemical products. |
| B. ORGANIC KINGDOM | { | 4. Vegetable or Botanical. 5. Animal. |

1. Some important drugs belong to the **non-metallic** division of chemistry, such as certain gases, carbon, sulphur, iodine, phosphorus, and some acids.

2. The **metallic** division yields a large number of valuable substances, preparations of several of the metals being extensively employed in treatment. They are sometimes used as found in nature, especially in the form of *mineral waters*. Some salts are also obtained ready formed, and have only to be purified for use. As a rule, however, metallic preparations have to be specially made, in the form of oxides, salts, acids, and various other combinations. Very rarely is a metal itself employed therapeutically.

3. Under **special chemical products** I include certain compounds which belong to the domain of *organic chemistry*, and which are made up of some of the non-metallic elements in various combinations. Alcohol, the different ethers, and hydrocyanic acid, will serve to illustrate this group.

4. From the **vegetable or botanical** kingdom a very large number of drugs are obtained, many of them of the greatest value and importance. In a few instances the *entire plant* is made use of; but commonly one or more of its *parts* are alone offici-

nal, such as the root, bark, wood, leaves, flowers, fruit, or seeds. Two drugs derived from the vegetable kingdom are really portions of plants in a *diseased* condition, namely, ergot of rye and gall-nuts. Plants are seldom administered in their natural state, but are usually made into different *pharmaceutical preparations*. Again several important drugs consist of *products* obtained from certain parts of plants, by incision or in other ways, of which opium, aloes, scammony, assafoetida, camphor, catechu, and kino afford prominent examples. These are often given in their *simple* state, but in reality they are *compound* agents, and contain *active principles* and other constituents, sometimes in considerable number, and having very different actions, which can be separated from each other, and are frequently used for their individual effects. Some of these active principles have been prepared artificially, in the chemical laboratory; while others can be so modified by chemical processes, as to yield products essentially different in their action upon the system, although their chemical composition may be but very slightly altered.

The **active principles** derived from the vegetable kingdom present much variety, and they belong to the following groups:—

a. Alkaloids, which are as a rule most valuable agents, and often extremely powerful, *e.g.* morphia, quinia, strychnia, atropia.

b. Neutral principles. These are usually bitter, and some are very useful in treatment, but others are almost inert; *e.g.* meconine, calumbine, elaterine, digitaline.

c. Organic acids, *e.g.* citric, tartaric, malic, oxalic, tannic and gallic (which are very extensively found in the vegetable kingdom), meconic, valerianic.

d. *Oils*, including (i) *Fixed oils*, such as linseed, olive, castor, and croton oils; and (ii) *Volatile or essential oils*, e.g. oils of rue, lavender, peppermint, and mustard.

e. *Gums*. These are of two kinds, namely, (i) *Arabine*, which is soluble in water; (ii) *Tragacanthine* or *Bassorine*, which swells up in cold water.

f. *Resins and their varieties*. These include, (i) *Simple resins*, e.g. guaiacum, mastiche. (ii) *Gum-resins*, e.g. myrrh, assafoetida, ammoniacum, scammony. (iii) *Oleo-resins* or *Terebinthinales*, e.g. copaiba, turpentine, canada balsam. (iv) *Balsams*, consisting of resin and benzoic or cinnamic acid, e.g. benzoin, balsam of Peru, and balsam of Tolu.

g. *Starch* and *Saccharine elements*.

h. *Vegetable jelly, pectin, and pectic acid*.

i. *Protein or Albuminoid substances*, including *vegetable albumin, fibrin, casein, and gelatine*.

j. *Extractive matters*. These are principles the nature of which is not definitely known, and which are provisionally grouped together under this term. Their number is becoming progressively less, as researches reveal more clearly what the active principles of plants really are.

k. *Inorganic salts*. Most plants contain inorganic constituents, and these may be of more or less importance, especially salts of the alkalies and lime. Rhubarb contains a considerable quantity of oxalate of lime.

It will be readily understood that the different groups of active principles just indicated are very variously combined in different plants or parts of plants which are employed medicinally. Moreover, they differ greatly in their power and effects upon the system, and in their therapeutic value. It may also be mentioned here that some plants contain elements having no obvious physiological action of importance, but when these elements are

brought into contact with water, a chemical decomposition takes place, which results in the production of very powerful agents. This is illustrated by oil of bitter almonds, and oil of mustard.

5. From the **animal kingdom** only a comparatively few therapeutic agents are obtained, and they may be arranged as follows:—

a. Animals themselves, e.g. cantharides, cochineal, leeches.

b. Parts of animals, altered or prepared in some way, e.g. isinglass, lard, suet, cetaceum.

c. Secretions, either alone or with the glands which form them, e.g. musk, honey, castor.

d. Special preparations obtained from organs or secretions, e.g. cod-liver oil, pepsin, ox-gall, milk-sugar, wax.

e. Eggs. The white and yolk of hens' eggs are used medicinally.

3. GENERAL SCOPE OF MATERIA MEDICA.

It will perhaps help to make the subject more clear, to point out definitely what MATERIA MEDICA actually includes; or, in other words, what it may be necessary to learn about any individual drug? Of course there are great differences in this respect as regards different drugs, some being quite unimportant, and all that is required is that the student should know what they are, and should be able to recognise them when he sees them; while in other instances more or less numerous details have to be acquired, which are of real consequence. The facts which it may be requisite to learn about a drug may be thus summarized:—

a. Its officinal source, i.e. whence it is derived. In the case of drugs obtained from the vegetable kingdom, their *botanical* and *geographical* source must be separately distinguished.

b. Its nature, or what class of substances it belongs to. In relation to the vegetable drugs, it is requisite to learn what part or parts of a plant are officinal, as well as the nature of any special drug obtained from this kingdom.

c. Its mode of preparation. This includes not only the more or less complicated chemical processes by which salts and numerous other medicinal substances are made; but also the methods by which certain drugs are procured in their natural state, or the treatment to which they are subjected afterwards, in order to render them fit for use.

d. Its active principles or chemical composition. The great majority of drugs are more or less complex, and their more important constituents ought to be known. Thus the active principles which the officinal part or parts of a plant contain, and to which they owe their therapeutic efficacy, should be learnt; as well as those of vegetable and animal products. Moreover, it is requisite to be acquainted with the chemical composition or *formula* of the various metallic and other salts or compounds; and with the elementary constitution of the more important organic preparations and principles, such as ether, tannin, morphia, &c.

e. Its chief characters and properties. These include, in the first place, the more obvious characters by which a drug is recognised, and by which it is at once distinguished from all others; and, secondly, the more minute physical and chemical properties which many drugs present, and which have to be ascertained by more or less elaborate investigation. These may explain their therapeutic usefulness; but from a Materia Medica point of view, they are important, inasmuch as they enable substances to be distinguished from each other which cannot be otherwise separated. It may be mentioned here that some medicines present impor-

tant *varieties*, with the distinctive characters of which it is necessary to be acquainted, *e.g.* cinchona, senna, aloes.

f. Its tests, impurities, and adulterations. The tests of a drug are scarcely separable from its other properties, so far as its mere recognition is concerned; but they are also applied in the B.P. to determine its strength and purity. Unfortunately even medicines are liable to be impure or adulterated, either from accident or design, and it is essential to know what impurities or adulterations must be looked for in connection with any particular drug, and how they are to be severally recognised and detected. In some cases their detection is quite easy; but in others elaborate investigation is required, which it is quite beyond the power of the student to carry out.

4. PHARMACY.

A. THE PHARMACOPŒIAL PREPARATIONS.

Having already indicated what the study of Pharmacy includes, it will now be convenient to give an outline of the groups of preparations recognised by the British Pharmacopœia, sufficient to enable the student to understand their general nature; and to have some idea as to how they are made. The officinal preparations of particular drugs will be considered under their respective headings; and the members of the different groups will also be subsequently enumerated. The preparations are here taken in alphabetical order.

I. ACETA—VINEGARS. Solutions of the active principles of certain drugs in either strong or dilute *acetic acid*, with or without the aid of heat.

II. AQUÆ—WATERS. Preparations thus named are of three kinds, namely:—

1. *Aqua Destillata*, or water distilled from its ordinary impurities.

2. *Solutions* of certain substances in distilled water.

3. Preparations made by *distilling* water with parts of plants containing *volatile oil*, or with the volatile oil itself, by which process some of the oil passes over in solution.

III. CATAPLASMATA—POULTICES. Soft and moist preparations, for external and local application. They consist of:—1. The *liquor*, which, with one exception, is boiling water; 2. The *corpus* or *basis*, usually linseed-meal, exceptionally bread or flour; 3. The *accessorium* in most instances, which is an additional medicinal agent, intended to produce particular therapeutic effects. The ingredients are mixed in different ways.

IV. CHARTÆ—PAPERS. Special preparations on paper for external use. There are only two in the Pharmacopœia, and each is prepared in a particular way.

V. CONFECTIONES—CONFECTIONS. Soft, but more or less consistent substances, intended for internal administration, or for forming the basis of pills. They consist of drugs incorporated with *saccharine* substances, these being used either for their preservation, or for rendering them more palatable. Confections are prepared in a variety of ways; and the saccharine material is either *sugar*, *syrup*, or *honey*.

VI. DECOCTA—DECOCTIONS. Solutions of the active principles of vegetable drugs, obtained by *boiling the drug in water* contained in a covered vessel. The principles to be dissolved must be non-volatile. There are exceptions in details in making decoctions, but as a rule the substances are directed to be boiled for 10 *minutes*; to be *strained while hot*; and as much distilled water to be poured

over the contents of the strainer, as will bring the whole up to *one pint*. With two exceptions, all the official decoctions are *simple*.

VII. EMPLASTRA—PLASTERS. Preparations intended for external application. They are variously made, but consist essentially of combinations of substances spread out on some firm material, such as calico or leather, and which are adhesive at the temperature of the body. These substances are mainly *oleo-margarate of lead*, *resin*, *wax*, or *oleaginous* compounds; and with these are mixed, in several instances, *medicinal* agents of a more or less powerful nature.

VIII. ENEMATA—INJECTIONS or CLYSTERS. Liquid preparations intended to be injected into the rectum. Their basis is generally *mucilage of starch*.

IX. ESSENTIÆ—ESSENCES. Solutions of a *volatile oil* (1 part) in *rectified spirit* (4 parts).

X. EXTRACTA—EXTRACTS. In general terms an extract may be defined as a concentrated preparation containing the active principles of a vegetable drug, obtained by evaporating the juice of plants, or solutions of their principles in different menstrua, and in some cases submitting the products to certain processes in order to preserve them. Extracts are of various degrees of consistence, and have on this ground been divided into *fluid*, *semi-solid*, and *hard or dry*. The more practical arrangement of these preparations, however, is as follows:—

A. Fresh or green extracts. This class of extracts are usually prepared thus:—1. *Press the juice* out of certain fresh parts of plants, differing in different cases. 2. Heat this juice to 130° to *coagulate the green colouring matter*; separate by filtration; heat the fluid to 200° , to *coagulate the albumen*, which is also separated by filtration. 3. Evaporate the remaining liquid, at a temperature

not above 140° , to a thin syrupy consistence; add the green colouring matter previously separated; and evaporate to the required consistence.

A few green extracts are prepared by heating the juice at once to 212° , to coagulate the albumen; separating this by filtration; and evaporating the fluid to the required consistence.

B. Aqueous extracts. These are prepared by acting upon either a part of a plant, or a vegetable product, by *distilled water*; and evaporating the fluid to a suitable consistence. The process of abstraction is carried out in different ways in different cases, namely, by:—

1. Digestion in boiling water.
2. Infusion in boiling water, and subsequent boiling.
3. Decoction or boiling.
4. Digestion in cold water.

C. Alcoholic extracts. In this class of extracts the active principles of the drug are dissolved out either by *rectified spirit* alone; *rectified spirit* and *water* used separately; or *proof spirit*. The details of the process differ considerably in the case of individual extracts. The solutions are then evaporated to a proper consistence.

D. Ethereal extracts. *Ether* is used for the purpose of *dissolving out oil* from the drugs, before preparing two extracts belonging to other groups; but in two instances it is employed as the *solvent*, either alone or after the action of rectified spirit.

E. Liquid extracts. These are characterised as follows:—

1. They are of a *fluid* consistence.
2. The active principles are abstracted, in all cases but one, by *water*, usually cold; in one case *ether* is used.
3. After evaporation to a proper consistence, *rec-*

tified spirit is added to prevent decomposition, except in the case of the ethereal extract.

XI. GLYCERINA—GLYCERINES. Solutions of drugs in *glycerine*, in some cases the solution being aided by heat.

XII. INFUSA—INFUSIONS. The chief facts relating to these preparations may be thus summarised:—

1. They are made by *infusing* or *digesting* drugs in distilled water, in a covered vessel.

2. The substances employed are, as a rule, either *bruised*, *sliced*, *cut small*, or *powdered* before being infused. The quantities are variable.

3. *Boiling water* is used, with four exceptions; in two instances cold water is employed, and in the other two water at 120°. The quantity ordered is 10 ounces.

4. The *time* for infusion varies according to the solubility of the active principles of the drug. In most cases it is *one hour*.

5. In every instance except one, the infusion is directed to be *strained* before use.

6. With few exceptions the infusions are quite *simple*.

XIII. INJECTIO—INJECTION. This term is used somewhat indefinitely, but in the B.P. it is confined to the class of *concentrated solutions* of powerful drugs, employed for *hypodermic injection*, of which at present there is but one officinal member—*Injectio Morphicæ Hypodermica*.

XIV. LINIMENTA—LINIMENTS OR EMBROCATIONS. These preparations are characterized as follows:—

1. They are intended for *external* use, being applied to the skin, usually with the aid of friction.

2. Most of them are of more or less *oily consistence*, and they have been designated “very thin ointments.” They all contain either a *fixed oil*, a *volatile oil*, a *concrete oil* (camphor), or a *soap*; and several of them have two or more of these in

combination ; some liniments also contain *rectified spirit*.

3. Some liniments are quite *simple*, others are *compound*; and the simpler liniments form the basis of some of the more complex, active ingredients being added, intended to produce special effects.

4. The exact *mode of preparation* varies, but in many instances it is a mere mixing together of the ingredients.

XV. LIQUORES—SOLUTIONS. It is difficult to give any general account of these preparations, as they are very numerous (39), and present considerable variety. They must, therefore, be studied mainly individually or in groups. They are, with few exceptions, *solutions* of drugs, solid, liquid, or gaseous, in water; or *dilutions* with water. In some instances *acids* (acetic, hydrochloric, nitric) or other ingredients are employed to aid the solution; in one case *ether* is used, in another *chloroform*. In one group *rectified spirit* is added to prevent decomposition. The different solutions are prepared in various ways, the process of dissolving being often aided by heat, pressure, &c.

XVI. LOTIONES—LOTIONS. These are external applications of a liquid character, and such preparations, of a non-official kind, are often employed. In the B.P., however, there are but two recognised—*Lotio Nigra* and *Lotio Flava*, which are respectively precipitates of *mercurous* and *mercuric oxide* with *lime-water*.

XVII. MELLITA—HONEYS. Preparations including *Mel Depuratum*—*purified* or *clarified honey*; and *Mel Boracis*, in which borax is mixed with the preceding. Honey is also an ingredient in the *Oxymels*.

XVIII. MISTURÆ—MIXTURES. This is another group of preparations of which no very definite general description can be given, and each of its

official members must be separately studied. The following are the chief general points:—

1. Mixtures are for *internal* administration.
2. Some are *simple*, but several are of *complex* composition.
3. They consist mainly of substances *suspended* in water, cinnamon-water, rose-water, or milk; partly *dissolved*, and agents are sometimes used to aid solution. Some mixtures are merely *solutions*.
4. The agents used to suspend the drugs are *sugar, syrup, yolk of egg, or gum*. When the drugs suspended are oils or resins, an *Emulsion* is formed.
5. In some instances ingredients for *flavouring* are added to mixtures.

XIX. MUCILAGINES—MUCILAGES. Solutions of *gummy substances* in water; or *starch* boiled so that it is in a "state of excessive hydration." The mucilages are of more or less thick consistence.

XX. OLEA—OILS. These preparations will be more conveniently discussed hereafter. In the meantime it will suffice to state that the official oils may be arranged under the following groups, as regards their mode of preparation:—

1. Oils obtained by *distillation*.
2. Oils obtained by *expression*, sometimes aided by *heat*.
3. Oil extracted by *heat* alone (cod-liver oil).
4. *Solution* of a drug in oil (phosphorated oil).

XXI. OXYMELLITA—OXYMELS. A mixture of *clarified honey* with *acetic acid* (*Oxymel*); or with *acetum scillæ* (*Oxymel scillæ*).

XXII. PILULÆ—PILLS. In this class of preparation a more or less consistent mass or *bolus* is first made, and this is divided into *pills* of suitable size, or according to the dose required. The official pills are numerous (23), and it is important to know their chief ingredients, and in some instances to remember their proportions.

The following general facts may be noted and remembered:—

1. Pills are for *internal* administration.
2. Most of them are of *complex* constitution, and many contain several active drugs. Some ingredients, however, are merely intended to subdivide conveniently the dose of the active drugs, or to give the bolus a suitable consistence.
3. In their *preparation* the rule is to powder the solid ingredients, and then to thoroughly mix them and the other ingredients with some material, so as to form a uniform consistent mass. The materials used for this purpose are chiefly *treaacle*, *hard soap*, and *confection of roses*; exceptionally *syrup*, *confection of hips*, *water*, or *castor oil*. Some pills are made in a special manner, and these have to be separately studied.

XXIII. PULVERES—POWDERS. These scarcely need any definition, and only call for brief notice.

1. They are all more or less *complex*, their ingredients being in most instances all active drugs; but in some cases certain constituents are only used to promote the minute division and intermixture of the more active medicines.

2. They consist of *finely-powdered solids*, the general directions as to their preparation given in the B.P. being “to mix the ingredients thoroughly; pass the powder through a light sieve, rub lightly in a mortar, and preserve in a stoppered bottle.”

XXIV. SPIRITUS—SPIRITS. The preparations thus named may be divided into three groups, namely:—

1. The *alcoholic* group.
2. *Solutions* in, or *mixtures* of various agents with *rectified spirit*, such as camphor, volatile oils, ether, chloroform, etc.
3. *Special preparations*, of a more or less complex nature, each made in a peculiar way.

XXV. SUCCI—JUICES. There are two groups of juices officinal, namely :—

1. The *fresh expressed juices* of certain ripe fruits.

2. *Juices specially prepared*, by pressing them out of fresh bruised plants; adding one measure of *rectified spirit* to every three measures of juice, to preserve it; setting aside for seven days; filtering; and keeping in a cool place.

XXVI. SUPPOSITORIA—SUPPOSITORIES. The following points may be noted with reference to this class of preparations :—

1. They are of somewhat *solid* consistence, but capable of melting at a moderate heat, or of being dissolved; and are made into *small moulds*, of a conical or other suitable shape, for introduction into the rectum.

2. Each suppository contains one or more important *active ingredients*, of which the proportions must be learnt.

3. They are prepared in two ways, namely :—

a. Melt *white wax* and *oil of theobroma* by means of a gentle heat; mix the active ingredients with *benzoated lard* in a mortar; add to the melted portion, and thoroughly mix; pour, when fluid, into suitable moulds, of 15 *grains* capacity.

b. Mix the active ingredients with *glycerine of starch* and *curd soap* in certain proportions; add *starch* to form a paste of suitable consistence; divide into 12 suppositories.

XXVII. SYRUP—SYRUPS. These are liquid preparations for internal administration, useful on account of their sweet and pleasant taste, due to their saturation with sugar, which also serves usually for their preservation. They may be classified according to the following groups :—

1. *Simple syrup*, which is a solution of refined sugar in water in certain proportions.

2. Syrups made by *mixing simple syrup* with cer-

tain *linctures*; or by *dissolving* a drug in a mixture of *syrup* and *water*.

3. Syrups made from refined sugar and various drugs by *special processes*, sometimes very complicated. In this group either cold distilled water, boiling water, rectified spirit, or rectified spirit and water are generally used as solvents. There are two exceptions, in one case the sugar being merely dissolved in *acetum scillæ* (*Syrupus scillæ*); in the other in *lemon-juice* (*Syrupus limonis*), but here *lemon-peel* is also used.

Syrups should be kept in *full bottles*, else the sugar is liable to crystallize. If they contain too little sugar, they are apt to ferment. Their preservation is aided in some instances by certain special precautions.

XXVIII. TINCTURÆ—TINCTURES. This is a very numerous class of preparations (68), and they present considerable variations. The following are the general points to be noted:—

1. Tinctures are *solutions* of drugs or active principles in *menstrua* of a *spirituous* nature, either because these substances are not soluble in water, or because such solutions are unstable, and decompose more or less readily.

2. They are either *simple* or *compound*, the latter containing several ingredients usually. Some constituents are used merely for their taste, for suspending other drugs, or for other special purposes.

3. The solvents employed in different instances are:—

a. *Rectified spirit*, chiefly when drugs contain much *resin* or *volatile oil*.

b. *Proof spirit*, when the principles are partly soluble in water, partly in spirit. This is the *menstruum* most frequently used.

c. In exceptional cases *aromatic spirit of ammonia*; *strong solution of ammonia*, (with rectified or proof

spirit); *spirit of ether*; *tincture of orange peel*; and *tincture of cardamoms* with rectified spirit.

4. Solid drugs made into tinctures are usually directed to be *cut small*, *bruised*, or *coarsely powdered*, etc., before being acted upon by the menstruum. In one instance (*nux vomica*) the drug is directed to be *steamed* until it is well softened, then rapidly dried, and reduced to fine powder.

5. The methods employed in preparing tinctures are as follows:—

a. *Simple mixture* or *solution*.

b. *Maceration* for seven days, with occasional agitation, in a closed vessel; then filtering, and in many cases pressing and straining; and finally adding sufficient spirit to make *one pint*.

c. *Percolation* alone in one instance.

d. *Maceration* and *percolation*.

e. *Special processes*.

XXIX. TROCHISCI—LOZENGES. The points to be noted about these preparations are as follows:—

1. They are *small solid tablets* intended to be sucked, and are a convenient form of administering drugs in small doses, or such as have not a disagreeable taste.

2. Most of them are *simple*, a few *compound*.

3. It is important to learn the *proportions* of the *active preparations* in each lozenge.

4. They are chiefly made up with *refined sugar*, *gum acacia*, *mucilage*, and *water*; some have also *tincture of tolu*. *Extract of liquorice* is used in one instance instead of mucilage; and in another case *rose-water* instead of water.

5. The usual *method of preparation* is to “mix the dry ingredients, and add mucilage and water to form a proper mass. Divide into 720 lozenges, and dry them in a hot-air chamber with a moderate heat.” Some lozenges are prepared in a *special manner*.

XXX. UNGUENTA—OINTMENTS. The main facts relating to ointments may be thus summarized:—

1. They are of a *soft* but more or less *solid* consistence; and are intended for *external* use, being smeared over a surface, applied on lint or other material, or rubbed in.

2. They consist of *fatty* or *unctuous* substances, either *simple*, or *mixed* with various *active drugs*.

3. The *materials* employed in making ointments in different cases are:—

a. Prepared lard.

b. Benzoated lard.

c. Prepared lard and suet.

d. Prepared lard and olive oil.

e. Prepared lard and yellow wax.

f. *Simple ointment*, which consists of a mixture of prepared lard, white wax, and almond oil.

g. White or yellow wax and oil.

h. Yellow wax alone.

4. The *methods of preparation* are very diverse, but they may be thus classified:—

a. *Simple trituration* and thorough *mixing* of the ingredients.

b. *Dissolving* the active drugs in, or mixing them with spirit, water, nitric acid, oil, or other liquids, before mixing them with the firmer constituents.

c. *Melting* wax, resin, concrete oils, fats, etc., by means of a *gentle heat* (usually in a water-bath); then *stirring* thoroughly and constantly while cooling, and at the same time incorporating the dry ingredients in fine powder.

d. *Melting* the ingredients together; and either stirring while cooling; or straining through calico, flannel, or muslin.

e. *Special methods*.

XXXI. VAPORES—INHALATIONS. These are preparations intended to be inhaled by the patient, usually by means of a suitable "Inhaler." Those

which are officinal are each prepared in a particular way, and must be separately studied.

XXXII. VINA—WINES. The following general facts may be noted about these preparations:—

1. They are *solutions* of drugs or active principles in *wine*, which is employed partly on account of its alcohol, partly in some cases on account of its acid. Most are *simple*, a few *compound*.

2. The *solvent* is *sherry-wine* in all but three instances. *Vinum aurantii* is merely a fermenting saccharine solution, to which fresh peel of bitter orange has been added. This wine is used in the preparation of two others; in one *citric acid* being also added to aid solution.

3. The *methods of preparation* are:—

a. Usually by *maceration*; pressing and straining when required; and filtering.

b. Mere *solution* and filtering in some cases.

B. WEIGHTS AND MEASURES.

It is necessary to remember the weights and measures recognized in the B.P., with their abbreviations and signs, and these may conveniently be given here.

Weights { Granum or grain = gr.
 Uncia or ounce = oz. or \bar{z} = 437.5 grains.
 Librum or Pound = lb = 16 ounces or 7000 grains.

Formerly the *drachma* or *drachm*, \mathfrak{z} = 60 grains, and the *scrupulum* or *scruple*, \mathfrak{ss} = 20 grains, were recognized, and these signs are now frequently and legitimately used in prescribing.

Measures { Minimum or minim = m.
 Fluid drachm = fl. \mathfrak{z} = 60 minims.
 Fluid ounce = fl. \bar{z} = 8 fluid drachms.
 Octarius or pint = O = 20 fluid ounces.
 Congium or gallon = C = 8 pints.

In the following pages only the *signs* will be used as a rule, and in the case of fluids, ℥ and ℥ will be employed without the preceding fl., it being understood that these signs represent *measures* and not *weights*.

C. PHARMACEUTICAL OPERATIONS.

Many of the operations or processes connected with pharmacy have been sufficiently defined in discussing the groups of officinal preparations. There remain a few terms which will be frequently employed in these notes, in relation to pharmaceutical processes, and it will be well to indicate their meaning here.

Decantation. The removal of a supernatant liquid from a precipitate or sediment collected at the bottom of a vessel. It is effected by merely pouring it out, or by a syringe, syphon, or pipette.

Destructive Distillation. A process whereby organic bodies, being subjected to a high temperature, air being excluded, lose their original form, and yield new products.

Digestion. The process of dissolving a medicinal substance in a menstruum by the aid of sustained heat for a variable time, at a temperature a little below the boiling point.

Distillation. The process of separating volatile from fixed ingredients in solution. The liquid is heated to a sufficient temperature to produce vapour, and this is then condensed by cold in another part of the apparatus.

Elutriation. The process by which powders of different degrees of fineness are separated from each other. They are suspended and carefully diffused through water, the whole being allowed to stand for different intervals, the fluid being

decanted after each interval. The heaviest particles fall first.

Evaporation. The conversion of fluid into vapour by raising the temperature to various degrees, as may be required.

Filtration and Straining. The separation of solid particles from the fluids in which they are suspended. Straining is conducted rapidly, and is imperfect. Filtering is practised through various media according to circumstances (paper, calico, flannel, &c.), made into *filters*.

Lixiviation. The process used for the separation of the soluble from the insoluble parts of certain bodies. It is a variety of solution by *percolation*.

Maceration. The process of making a solution with a menstruum at the ordinary temperature of the air. The liquid is poured over the medicinal substance, and allowed to remain for a variable period.

Percolation. Filtering in such a way that the liquid shall come in contact with the whole of the contents of the filter, in order to obtain a medicated filtrate. The substance to be acted upon is suspended in the course of the menstruum, which thus dissolves out the required ingredients as it permeates through it.

Precipitation. The process by which a solid substance is separated from a fluid in which it was previously dissolved, either as crystals, amorphous powder, or magma. Usually the precipitate is thrown down.

Saturation. Pharmaceutically this signifies that a liquid has dissolved as much of a solid substance as it is capable of taking up.

Sublimation. The vaporisation of solid volatile substances by heat, by a process analogous to distillation (*dry distillation*), the vapour being afterwards condensed by cold.

Trituration. The pulverization of drugs, as performed by means of a pestle and mortar, &c.

Washing. The removal of impurities from precipitates, crystals, etc., by passing a stream of water or other fluid over them.

SECTION II.

THE INORGANIC KINGDOM.

In the inorganic kingdom we have to deal with drugs belonging to the three sub-divisions already indicated, namely:—1. **Non-metallic**, 2. **Metallic**, 3. **Special Chemical Compounds**. In the following pages however, it is not my intention to separate them thus absolutely, but to adopt a plan of arrangement which I have found practically useful and convenient, bringing together medicinal agents which are allied either pharmaceutically or therapeutically, in the following order:—

I. *Aqua—Water.*

II. *Carbo—Carbon or Charcoal.*

III. *Sulphur Group* { 1. Sulphur—Brimstone.
2. Sulphurous Acid.
3. Sulphuretted Hydrogen and Sulphides.
4. Hyposulphite of Sodium.

IV. *Chlorine and Hypochlorites.*

V. *Iodine and certain Iodides.*

VI. *Bromine.*

VII. *Phosphorus and Hypophosphites.*

VIII. *Acids (with some exceptions).*

IX. *Alkalies* { 1. Ammonium.
2. Potassium.
3. Sodium.
4. Lithium.

- | | | |
|---|---|--|
| X. <i>Alkaline Earths</i> | { | 1. Aluminium. |
| | | 2. Calcium. |
| | | 3. Magnesium. |
| | | 4. Cerium. |
| XI. <i>Ordinary Metals</i> | { | 1. Antimonium—Antimony. |
| | | 2. Arsenicum—Arsenic. |
| | | 3. Argentum—Silver. |
| | | 4. Bismuthum—Bismuth. |
| | | 5. Cadmium. |
| | | 6. Cuprum—Copper. |
| | | 7. Ferrum—Iron. |
| | | 8. Hydrargyrum—Mercury. |
| | | 9. Manganese—Manganese. |
| | | 10. Plumbum—Lead. |
| | | 11. Zincum—Zinc. |
| | | 12. Metals and Solutions in Appen- dix. |
| XII. <i>Special Chemical Products</i> | { | 1. Hydrocyanic Acid. |
| | | 2. Alcohol Group. |
| | | 3. Ether Group. |
| | | 4. Chloroform. |
| | | 5. Hydrate of Chloral. |
| | | 6. Nitrite of Amyl. |
| | | 7. Carbolic Acid and Creosote. |

The consideration of each of the groups just enumerated is carried out according to a tolerably uniform plan, although it has to be varied somewhat in particular cases; and it may help to make the subject clearer by giving at the outset an explanatory sketch of this plan, as indicating the course of procedure which the student may advantageously adopt in learning the drugs belonging to the several groups.

1. A *general summary* of the members of each group is first given, including all the compounds and officinal preparations; the *nature* and *chemical composition* of the more important being also

pointed out. Thus a concise idea is obtained of the drugs belonging to a particular group.

2. The (a) *source*, and (b) *mode of preparation* of the simple drugs, and of what may be termed their "primary compounds," are then considered; the "secondary compounds" or *officinal preparations* being as a rule discussed later on under PHARMACY. In some instances each compound has to be learnt separately, but in others they can be conveniently discussed more or less in groups.

In describing the *mode of preparation* of the different drugs, I have endeavoured to state prominently and distinctly the several parts of the process, when it is at all a complicated one, without entering unnecessarily into details. I have also indicated the proportions of the ingredients ordered to be used. The student, however, need not burden his memory with these proportions, unless he wishes to do so; nor need he learn the exact words in which the preparation is described, but he should endeavour clearly to understand the process, and may then describe it in his own way.

It may be useful to point out here the general methods by which the officinal salts are made, which may help the student in remembering particular drugs. They may be stated as follows:—

a. By the purification of salts, either found in the native state, or produced during certain processes, such as burning wood (carbonate of potash), or the ripening of wine in casks (cream of tartar).

b. By dissolving metals in acids, either strong or diluted.

c. By dissolving oxides or salts, especially carbonates, in acids.

d. By the direct admixture and combination of the elements themselves.

- e. By double decomposition of solutions of salts.
- f. By fusing together solid substances.
- g. By mixing together certain ingredients, and heating them in the dry state, the salt required being sublimed and then condensed.
- h. By processes, more or less complicated and elaborate, each of which must be separately studied.

3. The *characters* and *properties* are next indicated, and I have endeavoured to bring out prominently each of these that is important, and in doing so have found it in several instances convenient to group the drugs or even to tabulate them. It must be insisted upon that the student ought to be quite familiar with the appearance and obvious characters of the solid preparations belonging to the inorganic kingdom, when these are at all striking, such as whether they are in powder or crystals, the size and form of the crystals, the colour, smell, &c. Moreover, the solubility of a substance in different menstrua is often a matter of considerable importance to remember, especially in relation to pharmacy. Other properties in many cases demand special recognition; and, amongst others, the changes to which preparations are liable on exposure to air or light, are frequently of much consequence.

4. The subject of *tests*, which naturally follows, or is hardly separable from what has just been considered, demands a few words of special comment, as this will save much repetition hereafter.

The *objects* for which tests are employed in the B.P., in relation to drugs belonging to the inorganic kingdom, may be thus indicated:—

a. To determine the *nature* of a drug. Each element, whether metallic or non-metallic, has its own peculiar tests; and in the case of salts, the acid present also yields its special tests.

In some instances it is further important to distinguish between different oxides and salts of the same metal, as in the case of iron and mercury.

b. In the course of certain *pharmaceutical processes*, to ascertain whether they are properly completed. Thus in washing precipitates to remove a soluble salt, the washings are tested to determine when they are free from this salt. The same principle is followed in some other cases.

c. To detect *impurities* and *adulterations*, whether resulting from the materials used in preparation, the vessels employed, accidental or intentional admixture, or decomposition.

d. For the *quantitative estimation* of a drug, so as to determine whether it is of proper composition and strength.

The student's knowledge of chemistry ought to have made him quite familiar with the principal tests by which the various drugs are recognized, as described in the B.P., and all that he has to do is to apply this knowledge in each case, in relation to non-metallic elements, metals, acids, oxides, salts, and special preparations. I have therefore felt justified in entirely omitting any reference to these tests in the account given of the different drugs; but it must be understood, once for all, that the student might be fairly required to mention these tests in an examination on *Materia Medica*. Further, I have not as a rule alluded to tests in relation to pharmaceutical processes, because the student can apply the same knowledge here; for instance, I merely state that a "precipitate is washed from such and such a salt," the completion of this process being determined by testing the washings for the salt in question. With regard to impurities and adulterations again, I have deemed it sufficient to mention these, as given in the B.P., because to give their tests in each case would only

be to repeat the same thing over and over again, and the student may easily learn them once for all. A general summary of the chief impurities and their tests will be given immediately.

The *quantitative tests* are of considerable importance in several instances, and I have endeavoured to arrange and group these under a distinct heading in each case.

As regards the *nature* of the tests employed in the B.P., they are mainly:—

- a. The solubility in water or other menstrea.
- b. The effects of heat.
- c. Special chemical tests.

IMPURITIES AND ADULTERATIONS.—The chief impurities or adulterations in the drugs belonging to the inorganic kingdom recognised in the B.P., and their distinguishing tests in different cases, may be thus arranged:—

- | | |
|--|--|
| | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Moistens blotting paper. 2. Loss of weight on drying. 3. Turns anhydrous sulphate of copper blue (in alcohol). 4. Absorbed by chloride of calcium. |
| a. <i>Water</i> . . . | |
| b. <i>Fixed impurities or adulterations</i> — Silica, Alumina, Lime, &c. | Not volatilized by heat. |
| c. <i>Chlorine</i> . . . | Odour. |
| d. <i>Iodine or Iodides</i> . | Blue colour, with mucilage of starch, when iodine is free or liberated. |
| e. <i>Arsenic</i> . . . | Deposit on copper foil when heated with it; other special tests. |

- f. Antimony* . . . Special tests.
- g. Certain Metals—*
 Lead, Copper, Iron, &c. . . { Discoloured or precipitated by H_2S ; and special tests.
- h. Lime* . . . { White precipitate with oxalate of ammonia.
- i. Carbonates* . . . { 1. Effervesce with acids.
 { 2. White precipitate with solution of lime.
- j. Hydrochloric Acid and Chlorides.* { White precipitate with nitrate of silver.
- k. Nitric Acid and Nitrates* . . . { Dark purple colour in contact with protosulphate of iron and sulphuric acid.
- l. Oxalic Acid* . . . { White precipitate with sulphate of lime.
- m. Phosphoric Acid—*
 (In phosphate of iron) . . . { Dissolve in HCl ; add tartaric acid and ammonia, and then solution of ammonio-sulphate of magnesia; a white precipitate is thrown down.
- n. Sulphurous Acid* . . . { 1. Reddens moistened litmus paper.
 { 2. H_2S formed with granulated zinc in hydrochloric acid, which blackens paper moistened with solution of subacetate of lead.
 { 3. Liberates iodine from iodate of potash in acetic acid, which colours starch blue.

- o. Sulphuric Acid and } White precipitate with chlo-
Sulphates . . . (ride of barium.

5. With regard to the *pharmacy* of the drugs belonging to the inorganic kingdom, the plan followed is (*a*) to consider the *officinal preparations*, giving their constituents and their proportions, with any important details as to their preparation; (*b*) to mention other preparations of which they are ingredients, or in making which they are employed; and (*c*) to point out the chief *incompatibles*.

6. As regards the *action* of the drugs, I have, as already intimated, merely stated in a word to what class or classes of therapeutic agents they severally belong, and even in doing this, I have deemed it sufficient, in many instances, to bring groups of drugs together.

AQUA—WATER = H_2O .

Simple water is recognized in the B.P. in two forms, namely:—

1. *Aqua*.—The purest natural water that can be obtained, cleared, if necessary, by filtration—It should be free from colour, smell, taste, and visible impurity. The most pure natural waters are ice from certain lakes, snow-water, and rain-water. All contain more or less organic and inorganic impurities.

2. *Aqua Destillata*—The purest water distilled from a copper still, through a block-tin worm; rejecting the first portion (which carries over the volatile impurities); and stopping the process after about three-fourths have passed over.

The purity of distilled water is tested by:—

a. The absence of any residue on evaporation.

b. The want of any effect upon its transparency or colour by the addition of solution of lime, sulphuretted hydrogen, chloride of barium, nitrate of silver, or oxalate of ammonia.

PHARMACY.—1. As already mentioned, there is a special group of pharmaceutical preparations recognized in the B.P., named *AQUÆ*.

2. *Aqua destillata* is ordered to be employed in making a large number of pharmaceutical preparations and in the following pages it will be understood that *distilled water* is used whenever water is mentioned. Its advantages over natural water are:—a. Its purity. b. That it dissolves more of some substances than ordinary water. c. That there is less liability to decomposition.

CARBO-CARBON-CHARCOAL = C.

OFFICIAL VARIETIES.—There are three forms of carbon in the B. P., namely:—

1. *Carbo Ligni*—*Wood-charcoal*.—Carbon, with about 2 per cent. of alkaline and metallic salts.

2. *Carbo Animalis*—*Animal-charcoal* or *Bone-black*.—About 10 per cent. of carbon, the remainder consisting almost entirely of phosphate of lime, with a little carbonate of lime and iron carbide.

3. *Carbo Animalis Purificatus*—*Purified Animal-charcoal*.—Animal charcoal almost pure, the salts having been removed.

SOURCE AND PREPARATION. 1. *C. Ligni*—Heat to dull redness billets of wood (Poplar, Willow, Oak, Beech, Hazel) in cast-iron cylinders, with a limited supply of air. A residue of from 17 to 25 per cent. remains; while water, gases, and volatile matters pass off.

2. *C. Animalis*—Expose bones of oxen and sheep to red heat, without the access of air. Reduce the residue to powder.

3. *C. Animalis Purificatus*—Act upon animal charcoal for two days with **dilute hydrochloric acid** at a moderate heat; soluble lime-salts are formed; filter, wash and dry the residue; heat to redness in a covered crucible.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES.—The properties of all the varieties of charcoal may be considered together.

1. *Appearance*.—(a) *C. Ligni*, black, brittle, light, porous pieces, presenting the shape and texture of the wood from which derived; (b) *C. Animalis*, a greyish-black, coarse powder; (c) *C. Animalis Purificatus*, a fine black powder.

2. All odourless and almost tasteless.
3. Insoluble in water.
4. Possess great power of absorbing and condensing gases, especially *wood-charcoal*, from its porosity. It acts best when recently made, or when kept in sealed bottles. After a time becomes inert, but its absorbent action is restored after exposure to a dull-red heat.
5. Also absorb odorous and septic matters; and oxidize them by means of oxygen taken up from the atmosphere.
6. Absorb organic colouring matters, alkaloids, bitter principles, &c., from solutions, especially *purified animal charcoal*.

PHARMACY.—1. *Officinal Preparation*.—

Cataplasma Carbonis.—A poultice made with bread, linseed meal, and wood-charcoal, which is half mixed, and half sprinkled over the surface of the poultice.

2. *Purified animal charcoal* is much used in pharmacy as a decolourizing agent in the preparation of alkaloids, &c.; *wood-charcoal* is employed in preparing sulphurous acid.

ACTION.—Antiseptic. Absorbent. Purified animal charcoal is an antidote to certain poisonous alkaloids.

SULPHUR GROUP.

It will be convenient here to consider not only sulphur, but also certain unstable compounds of this element, which are employed for similar or allied therapeutic effects.

I. SULPHUR—BRIMSTONE. S.

GENERAL SUMMARY.—1. *Sulphur Sublimatus*—*Sublimed Sulphur* or *Flowers of Sulphur*.

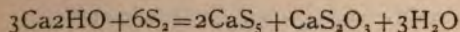
2. *Sulphur Præcipitatum*—*Lac Sulphuris* or *Milk of Sulphur*.

3. *Officinal Preparations*.— $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} a. \text{Confectio Sulphuris.} \\ b. \text{Unguentum Sulphuris.} \end{array} \right.$

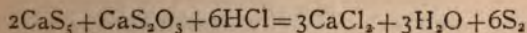
SOURCE AND PREPARATION.—1. *Sulphur Sublimatum*. Heat **virgin** or **native sulphur** or a **sulphide**, and condense the vapour of sulphur which sublimes in a proper chamber.

2. *Sulphur Præcipitatum*. By a complicated process, consisting essentially of the following parts:—

a. Boil $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Sublimed Sulphur.} \\ \text{Slaked Lime.} \\ \text{Water.} \end{array} \right\}$ and filter.



b. Dilute the cooled filtrate with water, and add in successive quantities **diluted hydrochloric acid** until effervescence ceases, and the mixture acquires an acid reaction.



c. Allow the precipitate to settle, decant off the supernatant fluid, and wash the deposit with water, until this ceases to give an acid reaction, and to precipitate with oxalate of ammonia.

d. Collect the precipitate on a calico filter, wash with water, and dry at a temperature not above 120° .

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES.—The two varieties of sulphur have similar properties, except as regards their obvious physical characters.

1. *S. Sublimatum* is a bright or citron-yellow gritty powder, or may be cast into moulds. *S. Precipitatum* is pale yellow or greyish-yellow, soft, and not gritty. Under the microscope it presents opaque globules, without any crystals.

2. Tasteless, and odourless unless heated.

3. No reaction, and no reddening of moistened litmus paper.

4. Insoluble in water, but soluble in bisulphide of carbon, hot oil of turpentine, and slightly in fixed oils, especially on boiling.

5. Entirely volatilized by heat; burns in air with a blue flame, and emits a suffocating odour, SO_2 being evolved.

IMPURITIES.—These are SO_2 ; H_2S ; fixed impurities, especially calcic sulphate, H_2SO_4 being used in preparation; and arsenic as As_2S_3 , which, when agitated with solution of ammonia, filtered, and evaporated, leaves a residue, giving tests of arsenic.

PHARMACY.—I. *Officinal Preparations* :—

| | | | |
|------------------------------|-----|---|-------------------------|
| <i>fectio</i> <i>ris.</i> | Mix | { | Sublimed Sulphur, 4 |
| | | { | Bitartrate of Potash, 1 |
| | | { | Syrup of Orange, 4 |

Sublimed Sulphur, 1
Coated Lard, 4

2. Sublimed sulphur is used in the preparation of
- | | |
|---|---------------------|
| { | Iodide of Sulphur |
| { | Sulphuric Acid |
| { | Sulphurated Potash. |

It is also an ingredient in

Emplastrum Hydrargyri, and

Emplastrum Ammoniaci cum Hydrargyro,

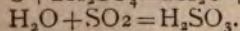
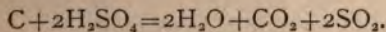
being used as a means of facilitating the subdivision of the mercury.

ACTION.—Laxative. Diaphoretic. Resolvent. Parasiticide. Disinfectant when burnt.

II. ACIDUM SULPHUROSUM—SULPHUROUS ACID. H_2SO_3 .

When sulphur is burnt, sulphurous anhydride gas— SO_2 —is produced, and it is often used therapeutically in this form. The sulphurous acid of the B.P. is a nearly saturated solution of this gas in water = 9.2 per cent. by weight. The SO_2 combines with water to form H_2SO_3 = 11.8 per cent.

SOURCE AND PREPARATION.—By heating **sulphuric acid** with **wood charcoal** in a glass flask. The SO_2 gas is passed through a wash-bottle, and then into distilled water in a cooled receiver.



CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES:—

1. A colourless liquid of sp. gr. 1.040.
2. Strong and pungent sulphurous suffocating odour.

3. Leaves no residue on evaporation.

4. A powerful decolourizing, deodorizing, and disinfecting agent; also arrests fermentation and putrefaction.

5. Gives little or no precipitate with chloride of barium, until solution of chlorine is added = absence of sulphuric acid, which forms by long keeping.

QUANTITATIVE TEST.—34.7 grains mixed with $\frac{3}{4}$ of water and a little mucilage of starch, do not acquire a permanent blue colour with the *Vol. solution of iodine*, until 1000 grain-measures of the latter have been added.

ACTION.—Disinfectant. Antiseptic. Destructive to vegetable life.

III. SULPHURETTED HYDROGEN AND SULPHIDES.

1. *Sulphuretted Hydrogen* = H_2S . This is a powerful agent, and is present in a class of mineral waters—*Sulphuretted Waters*—which smell like rotten eggs. Some of these also contain alkaline sulphides.

In the B.P. it is only inserted in the *Appendix*, for the purpose of testing for various metals. It is used as a gas, prepared by the action of **sulphuric acid** on **sulphide of iron**.

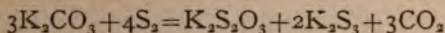
2. *Ammonium Sulphide*. = NH_4HS . This is also only recognized in the *Appendix* of the B.P., in the form of a test-solution, prepared by passing a stream of H_2S into solution of ammonia to saturation, adding solution of ammonia, and preserving in a green-glass stoppered bottle.

3. *Potassa Sulphurata*—*Sulphurated Potash*—*Hepar Sulphuris*—*Liver of Sulphur*. This is the only alkaline sulphide which is officinal in the body of the B.P. It is of uncertain composition, but consists chiefly, (about three-fourths) of potassium sulphide = K_2S_3 , with some hyposulphite, sulphate, and sulphite.

SOURCE AND PREPARATION :—

a. Mix together { **Carbonate of potash.**
 { **Sublimed sulphur.**

and heat in a crucible, first gradually until effervescence ceases, and then to dull redness until they are perfectly fused.



b. Pour out the fused liquid, and cool, air being excluded as much as possible.

c. Break the solid mass into fragments, and preserve in a green-glass, closely-stoppered bottle.

Too much heat causes decomposition of the hyposulphite into sulphate and sulphite.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES :—

1. Irregular amorphous masses or fragments.

2. Greenish, or grey, or liver-brown colour, but readily becomes dull white when exposed to the air, from oxidation, sulphate being formed.

3. Brittle; slightly deliquescent.

4. Strong odour of H_2S , especially when moistened.

5. Disagreeable, alkaline, and acrid taste.

6. Readily soluble in water, forming a yellow solution, with the smell of H_2S ; about three-fourths soluble in rectified spirit.

PHARMACY.—*Officinal Preparation* :—

Unguentum Potassæ { Sulphurated Potash, gr. 30
 Sulphuratæ { Prepared Lard, $\frac{3}{4}$ i

ACTION.—Irritant. Antiseptic. Alterative.

IV. HYPOSULPHITE OF SODA.

Although used therapeutically, this drug is at present only recognised in the *Appendix* of the B.P., as a *volumetric test-solution*, containing 24·8 grains in 1000 grain measures of water, for the purpose of estimating free *iodine*, and thus indirectly determining the amount of *chlorine* in certain compounds.

V. SPECIAL COMPOUNDS.

Two other preparations containing sulphur may be mentioned here, to complete the list, namely:—SULPHURIS IODIDUM, and ANTIMONIUM SULPHURATUM. These will be more conveniently considered under IODINE and ANTIMONY respectively.

CHLORINE GROUP.

GENERAL SUMMARY.—In this group may be included the following, which either contain free chlorine, or readily evolve this gas.

1. *Liquor Chlorig*.—Solution of chlorine gas in about half its volume of water = ·6 per cent. of the solution by weight, or gr. 2·66 to $\frac{3}{4}$ i.

2. *Calx Chlorata*—*Chlorinated lime*.—A mixture of calcium hypochlorite (CaCl_2O_2), calcium chloride, and some lime = about 30 per cent. of chlorine.

a. *Liquor Calcis Chloratæ*.

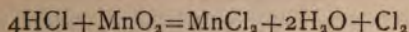
b. *Vapor Chlorig*.

3. *Liquor Sodæ Chloratæ*.—Solution of sodic hypochlorite (NaClO), sodium chloride, and sodic bicarbonate.

a. *Cataplasma Sodæ Chloratæ*.

I. LIQUOR CHLORI—SOLUTION OF CHLORINE.

SOURCE AND PREPARATION.—By heating gently **hydrochloric acid, black oxide of manganese,** and **water**; passing the liberated chlorine gas through water in a wash-bottle; and receiving into a large bottle containing water, and kept cool, which is then shaken till all the gas is absorbed. Keep in a green glass bottle, in a cool place.



CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES:—

1. A yellowish-green liquid.
2. Strong odour of chlorine; acrid, and very irritating to the air-passages.
3. Leaves no residue on evaporation.
4. Powerful bleacher, disinfectant, and deodorant, replacing hydrogen in many organic compounds.
5. The solution is readily decomposed in the light, forming HCl and O .

QUANTITATIVE TEST.—20 Grains of iodide of potassium, dissolved in $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 of water, and added to $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 or 439 grains of liquor chlori, the mixed solution acquires a deep-red colour, which requires for its discharge 750 grain-measures of *Vol. solution of hyposulphite of soda*.

ACTION. — Stimulant. Disinfectant. Antiseptic.
Dose— m 10 to 20.

II. CALX CHLORATA—CHLORINATED LIME.

SOURCE AND PREPARATION.—By exposing **slaked lime**, loosely spread out in a proper vessel, to the action of **chlorine gas**, so long as it is absorbed.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES:—

1. A dull or dirty-white powder.
2. Feeble odour of chlorine; the CO_2 in the air slowly liberating hypochlorous acid, which immediately decomposes, free Cl being given off. The addition of an acid causes these changes to take place rapidly.
3. Partially soluble in water; the solution is alkaline.
4. Possesses the bleaching and other properties of chlorine in less degree.

QUANTITATIVE TEST.—10 Grains mixed with 30 grains of iodide of potassium, dissolved in $\frac{3}{4}$ of water, and acidulated with 3 2 of HCl, produce a reddish solution, which requires for the discharge of its colour at least 850 grain-measures of *Vol. solution of hyposulphite of soda*.

ACTION.—Disinfectant.

PHARMACY.—1. *Officinal Preparations:*—

a. Liquor Calcis Chloratæ { Chlorinated lime, 1
Distilled water, 10

Triturate and shake well together for three hours, and strain.

A clear solution; sp. gr. 1.335; containing 13 grains of available chlorine in $\frac{3}{4}$ 1.

b. Vapor Chlori.—This is simply made by moistening calx chlorata with water, and inhaling the vapour from a suitable apparatus; or the gas may merely be allowed to pass into the atmosphere for disinfecting purposes.

III. LIQUOR SODÆ CHLORATÆ.

PREPARATION. — Dissolve **sodic carbonate** in water, and pass **chlorine** gas into the solution until it reaches the sp. gr. 1.103. Keep in a stoppered bottle, in a cool and dark place.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES:—

1. A colourless liquid.
2. Alkaline in reaction.
3. Has the smell and properties of chlorine, like Calx chlorata.

QUANTITATIVE TEST.—31 or 70 grains added to $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Iodide of potassium} = \text{gr. } 20 \\ \text{Water} = 34 \end{array} \right\}$, and acidulated with 32 of HCl, the mixture assumes a brown colour, requiring for its discharge 500 grain-measures of *Vol. solution of hyposulphite of soda*.

PHARMACY.—*Officinal Preparation*:—

Cataplasma Sodæ Chloratæ.—A linseed meal poultice made with Liquor sodæ chloratæ.

ACTION.—Disinfectant. Antiseptic. Stimulant.
Dose—m 10 to 20.

IODINE GROUP.

GENERAL SUMMARY.—It may be useful to give here a complete list of the preparations of IODINE, and of the officinal IODIDES and their compounds. Some of the latter will be also considered in this connection, as they are practically employed for the iodine which they contain; others will be more conveniently discussed elsewhere, as they are combinations of iodine with other powerful medicines, and are used therapeutically for their combined effects.

1. *Iodum—Iodine.*
2. *Officinal Preparations*

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| <i>containing free</i> <i>Iodine . .</i> | { | <i>a. Linimentum iodi.</i> <i>b. Liquor iodi.</i> <i>c. Tinctura iodi.</i> <i>d. Unguentum iodi.</i> <i>e. Vapor iodi.</i> |
|---|---|--|
3. *Cadmii Iodidum.*
 - a. Unguentum cadmii iodidi.*
4. *Ferri Iodidum.*
 - a. Syrupus ferri iodidi.*
 - b. Pilula ferri iodidi.*
5. *Hydrargyri Iodidum Viride.*
6. *Hydrargyri Iodidum Rubrum.*
 - a. Unguentum hydrargyri iodidi rubri.*
7. *Plumbi Iodidum.*
 - a. Emplastrum plumbi iodidi.*
 - b. Unguentum plumbi iodidi.*
8. *Potassii Iodidum.*
 - a. Linimentum potassii iodidi cum sapone.*
 - b. Unguentum potassii iodidi.*
9. *Sulphuris Iodidum.*
 - a. Unguentum sulphuris iodidi.*
10. *Test-solutions*

| | | |
|--------------------|---|---|
| <i>in Appendix</i> | { | <i>a. Volumetric solution of iodine.</i> <i>b. Test-solution of iodide of potassium.</i> <i>c. Test-solution of iodate of potash.</i> |
|--------------------|---|---|

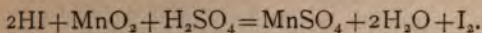
I. IODUM—IODINE. I.

SOURCE AND PREPARATION.—From “kelp,” the burnt ashes of sea-weeds, by the following process:—

1. The salts are dissolved out by water.
2. The solution is concentrated, and certain salts are crystallized out.

3. The remaining solution is treated with **sulphuric acid**. Hydriodic acid is formed; gases escape; and sodic sulphate, mixed with sulphur, crystallizes out.

4. **Black oxide of manganese** is added to the acid solution, which is then heated. The iodine volatilizes, and is condensed in receivers.



CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES:—

1. In scaly or laminar crystals, of variable size.
2. Dark colour, with metallic lustre.
3. Volatile, with a marked and peculiar odour, somewhat like chlorine.
4. Melts when heated; then sublimes entirely, in the form of a beautiful violet-coloured vapour.
5. Soluble in 7000 parts of water; 12 of rectified spirit; 4 of ether; sparingly in glycerine; readily in solution of iodide of potassium; also soluble in chloroform and benzine.
6. Readily penetrates animal textures, and stains the skin yellow.

TESTS AND IMPURITIES.—1. Iodine in solution gives a deep-blue colour with starch.

2. Its impurities and their tests are:—

- a. Water—moistens blotting-paper.
- b. *Iodide of Cyanogen*—first portion that sublimes includes slender colourless prisms, emitting a pungent odour.
- c. Fixed impurities or *adulterations* (charcoal, plumbago, iron, black oxide of manganese, &c.).

3. *Quantitative test*.—1000 grain-measures of *Vol. solution of sodic hyposulphite* required for the complete decolouration of 12·7 grains of iodine, dissolved in $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 of water with 15 grains of iodide of potassium.

II. CADMI IODIDUM—IODIDE OF CADMIUM. CdI_2 .

PREPARATION.—By the direct combination of **iodine** and **cadmium** in presence of water; or by decomposing **sulphate of cadmium** by **iodide of barium**.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES:—

1. Flat micaceous crystals.
2. White, with a pearly lustre.
3. *Solubility*.—1 in $1\frac{1}{2}$ of water; 1 in 2 of rectified spirit; 1 in 3 of glycerine.
4. Melts at 600°F. , forming an amber-coloured fluid. At a dull-red heat iodine-vapour is given off.

QUANTITATIVE TEST.—10 grains dissolved in water, and nitrate of silver added in excess, give a precipitate which, when washed first with water, and afterwards with $\frac{3}{2}$ of solution of ammonia, and dried, weighs 12.5 grains.

PHARMACY.—*Official Preparation*:—

| | | | | |
|-------------------------|---|----------------------|---|---|
| <i>Unguentum Cadmii</i> | { | Iodide of cadmium, 1 | } | n |
| <i>Iodidi</i> | | Simple ointment, 7 | | |

ACTION.—External absorbent.

III. SULPHURIS IODIDUM—IODIDE OF SULPHUR. SI .

PREPARATION:—

1. Rub to-gether { **Iodine**, 4 } in a dry mortar.
 { **Sublimed sulphur**, 1 }
2. Transfer to a flask, and heat, first gently, and afterwards more strongly, until thoroughly liquefied.
3. Allow to cool and solidify; break the flask and reduce the mass to pieces; keep in a well-stoppered bottle.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES:—

1. In crystalline masses.
2. Bluish-black and metallic-looking.
3. Strong odour of iodine.
4. Insoluble in water; soluble in glycerine (1 in 60.)
5. Very unstable. 100 grains boiled in water give off iodine vapour, and 20 grains of sulphur remain.

PHARMACY.—*Official Preparation*:—

Unguentum Sulphuris Iodidi { Iodide of sulphur, gr. 30 } mix.
 { Lard, $\frac{3}{4}$ lb }

ACTION.—External stimulant and absorbent.

BROMINE GROUP.

GENERAL SUMMARY.—It will be well to give a list here of all the officinal compounds containing bromine. They are very limited, namely:—

1. *Bromum—Bromine.*
2. *Solution of Bromine* in the *Appendix*, employed as a *test-solution*.
3. *Ammonii Bromidum.*
4. *Potassii Bromidum.*

Several other bromides, as well as hydrobromic acid, are used therapeutically, but they are not officinal. Only bromine will be further considered here.

BROMUM—BROMINE. Br.

SOURCE AND PREPARATION.—From “bittern,” the liquid left after crystallizing chloride of sodium out of sea-water, and from some saline springs. These contain bromide of magnesium.

1. Pass a current of **chlorine** gas through the liquid. This combines with the magnesium, and sets bromine free.

2. Shake up with **ether**. The bromine is dissolved, and rises to the surface.

3. Purify by converting the bromine into **bromide of potassium**, and decomposing this salt by **black oxide of manganese** and **sulphuric acid**.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES:—

1. A dark brownish-red and heavy liquid.
2. Highly volatile, giving off red fumes at the ordinary temperature; and boils at 117° .
3. Strong and intensely disagreeable acrid odour and taste; the vapour being extremely irritating to the respiratory mucous membrane.
4. Slightly soluble in water (1 in 30); soluble in alcohol and ether.
5. The aqueous solution renders cold starch water yellow; if it contains iodine, it will turn it blue.

PHARMACY.—Bromine is employed in preparing the officinal bromides.

PHOSPHORUS GROUP.

GENERAL SUMMARY.—In this group may be conveniently included:—

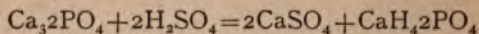
1. *Phosphorus* { *a.* Oleum phosphoratum.
 b. Pilula phosphori.
2. *Calcis Hypophosphis*—*Hypophosphite of Lime*.
3. *Sodæ Hypophosphis*—*Hypophosphite of Soda*.

I. PHOSPHORUS. P.

SOURCE AND PREPARATION.—From bone-ash, which consists chiefly of phosphate of lime, by a somewhat complicated process.

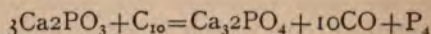
1. Digest the bone-ash with **diluted sulphuric**

acid. Superphosphate and sulphate of lime are formed.



2. Filter and evaporate the solution of superphosphate, when metaphosphate, Ca_2PO_3 is formed.

3. Mix with **charcoal**, and heat. Phosphorus sublimes, and is collected in a receiver filled with cold water.



4. Purify by melting under water, and shaking with a mixture of **bichromate of potash** and **sulphuric acid**.

5. Melt and cast into moulds.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES.—Phosphorus occurs in an *ordinary* and an *allotropic* form, but the former is alone officinal.

1. A soft solid, usually in waxy-looking pipes or moulds.

2. Almost colourless and transparent when fresh, but tends to become opaque and white, or reddish on the surface, from oxidation.

3. Luminous in the dark, and emits white vapours when exposed to the air.

4. Insoluble in water, in which it is kept. Soluble in ether, olive oil, melted fats, naphtha, boiling oil of turpentine, and bisulphide of carbon; sparingly in boiling rectified spirit.

5. Melts at 108° ; highly inflammable, forming when burnt phosphoric anhydride (P_2O_3).

PHARMACY.—I. *Officinal Preparations* :—

a. *Oleum Phosphoratum*.

| | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Phosphorus, gr. $\frac{12}{3}$ | } Dissolve by heating in a |
| Almond oil, $\frac{3}{4}$ = | |
| gr. $\frac{1}{2}$ in $\text{m}5$. | |
| Dose— $\text{m}5$ to 10. | |
| | } water-bath to 180° , and |
| | } frequently shaking. |

- b. Pilula Phosphori.* Melt the phosphorus and
 Phosphorus, gr. 2 balsam in hot water in a
 Balsam of tolu, gr. 120 mortar; then rub together
 Yellow wax, gr. 60 = under water until no par-
 gr. $\frac{1}{18}$ th in gr. 5. ticles of phosphorus are
 visible, at a temperature
 of about 140° , add the
 wax and when soft blend
 all thoroughly together.
- Dose*—gr. 3 to 6.

Should be kept in water; and softened with rectified spirit before it is made into pills.

2. Phosphorus is used for making *acidum phosphoricum dilutum* and *calcis hypophosphis*.

ACTION.—Nervine and general tonic. General stimulant.

II. CALCIS HYPOPHOSPHIS—HYPOPHOSPHITE OF LIME. $\text{Ca}_2\text{PH}_2\text{O}_2$.

SOURCE AND PREPARATION:—

1. Heat **phosphorus** with **calcic hydrate** and **water** until phosphuretted hydrogen gas ceases to be evolved.
2. Filter, and separate any uncombined lime by means of **carbonic anhydride** gas.
3. Evaporate the remaining solution until the hypophosphite crystallizes out. Purify by recrystallization.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES:—

1. In small crystals.
2. White, with a pearly lustre.
3. Soluble in cold and hot water (1 in 8); insoluble in rectified spirit.
4. Bitter nauseous taste.
5. Ignites when heated to redness, giving off phosphuretted hydrogen.

ACTION.—Like Phosphorus.

III. SODÆ HYPOPHOSPHIS—HYPOPHOSPHITE OF SODA. NaPH_2O_2 .

SOURCE AND PREPARATION:—

1. Add **sodic carbonate** to a solution of **calcic hypophosphite** so long as calcic carbonate is precipitated.

2. Filter, and evaporate by the steam-bath to dryness, constantly stirring when it begins to solidify.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES:—

1. A white granular salt.
2. Deliquescent.
3. Very soluble in water (1 in 1); glycerine (1 in 2); sparingly in spirit.
4. Bitter nauseous taste.
5. Ignites at a red heat, and gives off phosphuretted hydrogen.

ACTION.—Like Phosphorus.

THE OFFICINAL ACIDS.

GENERAL SUMMARY.—It will be useful to give here, at the outset, a complete list of the acids recognised in the B.P. as separate preparations.

A. Inorganic Liquid Acids.

1. *A. Hydrochloricum*.—A solution of HCl gas in distilled water = 31·8 per cent. by weight.

2. *A. Hydrochloricum Dilutum* = 10·58 per cent. of HCl , or 36·5 grains in 6 drachms.

3. *A. Nitricum—Aqua Fortis*.—A solution of HNO_3 in water = 70 per cent. by weight, or 60 per cent. of anhydrous N_2O_5 .

4. *A. Nitricum Dilutum* = 14·95 per cent. of anhydrous N_2O_5 .

5. *A. Nitro-hydrochloricum Dilutum*.—A mixture of nitric and hydrochloric acids, with water, also containing free chlorine and nitroxyl-chloride NO_2Cl .

6. *A. Phosphoricum Dilutum*.—A solution of H_3PO_4 in water = 10 per cent. of anhydrous P_2O_5 ; or 35·5 grains in 6 drachms.

7. *A. Sulphuricum*—*Oil of Vitriol*.—A strong acid, containing 96·8 per cent. of H_2SO_4 = 79 per cent. of SO_3 .

8. *A. Sulphuricum Dilutum* = 10·14 of SO_3 , or 40 grains in 6 drachms.

9. *A. Sulphuricum Aromaticum*.—A form of dilute sulphuric acid = 10·91 per cent. of SO_3 , or 33·2 grains in 6 drachms; but also containing other ingredients, namely, rectified spirit, cinnamon, and ginger.

10. *A. Sulphurosum*.— H_2SO_3 . A nearly saturated solution of sulphurous anhydride gas (SO_2) in water = 9·2 per cent. by weight. The SO_2 combines with the water to form H_2SO_3 .

B. Inorganic Solid Acids.

1. *A. Arseniosum*—*White Arsenic*.— As_2O_3 .

2. *A. Boracicum*.—This acid is not in the *body* of the *B.P.*, but a solution in rectified spirit (50 grains in $\frac{3}{4}$ i) is in the *Appendix*, for the purpose of testing for turmeric as an adulteration in rhubarb.

C. Simple Organic Acids.

1. *A. Aceticum*.—A solution of 33 per cent. of $\text{HC}_2\text{H}_3\text{O}_2$; or 28 per cent. of $\text{C}_4\text{H}_6\text{O}_3$.

2. *A. Aceticum Glaciale*.—A concentrated form of acetic acid, containing at least 84 per cent. of $\text{C}_4\text{H}_6\text{O}_3$.

3. *A. Aceticum Dilutum* = 3·63 per cent. of $\text{C}_4\text{H}_6\text{O}_3$; or 16 grains in $\frac{3}{4}$ i.

4. *Acetum*—*Vinegar*.—An acid liquid containing about 4·6 per cent. of anhydrous acetic acid.

5. *A. Citricum*—*Citric Acid*.— $\text{H}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O}_7 + \text{H}_2\text{O}$.
6. *A. Tartaricum*—*Tartaric Acid*.— $\text{H}_2\text{C}_4\text{H}_4\text{O}_6$.
7. *A. Oxalicum*.— $\text{H}_2\text{C}_2\text{O}_4 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$, a *volumetric solution* in the *Appendix*, to test the strength of various preparations.

D. Special Organic Acids.

1. *A. Benzoicum*—*Benzoic Acid*.— $\text{HC}_7\text{H}_5\text{O}_2$.
2. *A. Carbolicum*—*Carbolic Acid*.— $\text{HC}_6\text{H}_5\text{O}$.
3. *A. Gallicum*—*Gallic Acid*.— $\text{H}_3\text{C}_7\text{H}_3\text{O}_8, \text{H}_2\text{O}$.
4. *A. Hydrocyanicum Dilutum*—*Prussic acid*.—A solution of HCN gas in water = 2 per cent.
5. *A. Tannicum*—*Tannic Acid*.— $\text{C}_{27}\text{H}_{22}\text{O}_{17}$.

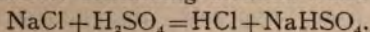
This list includes all the acids separately recognized in the B.P., but there are others which form important constituents of certain drugs; while some non-official acids (salicylic, lactic, &c.) are also much employed therapeutically at the present time.

Many of the acids just enumerated present considerable differences from each other, as regards their actions and uses; and the only characters they possess in common are that they have almost all a more or less acid reaction, and that they combine with bases to form salts. For practical purposes, therefore, it will be better only to treat further here of those which are used for their properties as acids, the others being more conveniently referred to in other portions of these notes, to which they appropriately belong. *Sulphurous Acid* has already been considered (see p. 39).

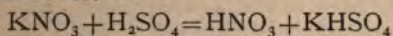
The ordinary acids may be discussed under certain groups.

I. THE STRONG LIQUID INORGANIC ACIDS.

SOURCE AND PREPARATION.—1. *Hydrochloric*.—By the action of **sulphuric acid**, diluted with **water**, upon **chloride of sodium** in a glass flask, aided by heat. The gas is passed through a wash-bottle to remove all traces of H_2SO_4 , and then into a cooled receiver containing distilled water.



2. *Nitric*.—By heating equal weights of **sulphuric acid** and **nitrate of potash** in a glass flask, and collecting the liberated acid in a receiver. It is heated to expel nitrous acid, which also passes over.



3. *Sulphuric*. By a complicated process, described at length in chemical works, but essentially as follows:—

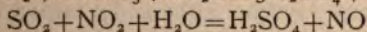
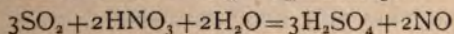
Pass into a leaden chamber containing water:—

a. SO_2 , made by burning **sulphur** or **iron pyrites**.

b. Nitric acid fumes, produced by the action of **sulphuric acid** on **nitrate of potash**.

c. Steam and air.

The SO_2 takes up O from the HNO_3 , and becomes SO_3 , which combines with water to form H_2SO_4 , while nitric oxide—NO, is produced. This takes up O from the air, and becomes converted into peroxide of nitrogen— NO_2 , which again yields O to fresh SO_2 , becoming reduced to NO, and this process goes on indefinitely, the NO acting as a carrier of O from the air to the SO_2 . An intermediate compound of uncertain nature is supposed to be formed between NO , SO_2 , and H_2O .



At a sp. gr. of 1.5 the sulphuric acid is drawn

off; evaporated in shallow leaden pans to sp. gr. 1·72; and lastly concentrated in glass or platinum retorts to sp. gr. 1·84.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES.—The chief facts to be remembered under this head respecting the strong acids may be thus summarized:—

1. In *appearance* they should be colourless and transparent liquids, but are usually more or less coloured from impurities. Sulphuric acid has a somewhat oily consistence.

2. Intensely acid in taste and reaction.

3. Readily combine with water. Hydrochloric and nitric acids emit pungent and acrid suffocating vapours, combining with the atmospheric moisture. Sulphuric acid absorbs water very rapidly, with condensation and elimination of much heat.

4. Powerfully corrosive, especially sulphuric acid, which chars and blackens many organic substances.

5. Sp. gr. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Hydrochloric, } 1\cdot160. \\ \text{Nitric, } 1\cdot420. \\ \text{Sulphuric, } 1\cdot843. \end{array} \right.$

6. Neutralizing power:—

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| <i>Hydrochloric</i> , 114·8 gr. | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Neutralize 1000 grain-} \\ \text{measures of } Vol. \text{ sol.} \\ \text{of soda} = 40 \text{ grains of} \\ \text{NaHO.} \end{array} \right.$ |
| <i>Nitric</i> , 90 gr. | |
| <i>Sulphuric</i> , 50·6 gr. | |

7. Dissipated by heat, leaving no residue.

IMPURITIES.—1. All the acids are liable to contain fixed impurities, such as earthy matters, metals, &c.

2. The chief special impurities to which each acid is liable, are as follows:—

a. Hydrochloric.—Sulphuric acid or sulphates; metals; arsenic; sulphurous acid.

b. Nitric.—Hydrochloric acid; sulphuric acid.

c. Sulphuric.—Sulphate of lead; arsenic; nitric acid.

ACTION.—Caustic or Escharotic.

II. DILUTE INORGANIC ACIDS.

PREPARATION. — 1. The *simple dilute acids* are made by gradually adding distilled water to the strong acid, in such proportions, that in each case the mixture measures a certain bulk when cooled to 60° F., as follows:—

| | Acid. | Diluted. |
|-----------------------|-------|----------|
| a. Hydrochloric . . . | 8 ... | 26½ |
| b. Nitric | 6 ... | 31 |
| c. Sulphuric | 7 ... | 83½. |

2. *Acidum Nitro-Hydrochloricum Dilutum.*

- a. Mix { **Hydrochloric acid**, 4
 { **Nitric acid**, 3

and allow to remain for 24 hours in a bottle, the mouth of which is partially closed. This is for the liberation of chlorine.

b. Add **water**=25, in successive portions, shaking the bottle after each addition.

3. *Acidum Sulphuricum Aromaticum.*

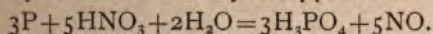
- a. Mix gradually { **Sulphuric acid**, 3
 { **Rectified spirit**, 40

- b. Add { **Cinnamon powder**, 2
 { **Ginger powder**, 1¼

c. Macerate for 7 days, and filter.

4. *Acidum Phosphoricum Dilutum.*—This acid is prepared by a somewhat complicated process, but essentially it consists of the following parts:—

a. Act by **diluted nitric acid** upon **phosphorus** in a retort, distilling slowly by a gentle heat, and returning the distillate at intervals until the phosphorus has entirely disappeared.



b. Evaporate the liquid in porcelain and platinum vessels, until orange-coloured vapours are no longer formed.

c. Dilute what remains with distilled water to the proper strength.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES.—1. With regard to the diluted preparations of the strong mineral acids already considered, it will be sufficient to remember the following facts:—

a. They are all colourless, except *acidum sulphuricum aromaticum*, which is deep-red.

b. They present the usual acid taste and other properties.

c. The sp. gr. and neutralizing power of the diluted acids are as follows:—

| | Sp. Gr. | Neutralizing Power, |
|-----------------------------------|---------|-------------------------------|
| | | In each case 6 fluid |
| <i>Hydrochloric</i> | 1·052 | drachms require for |
| <i>Nitric</i> | 1·101 | neutralization 1000 |
| <i>Sulphuric</i> | 1·094 | grain-measures of <i>Vol.</i> |
| | | <i>solution of soda.</i> |
| <i>Nitro-hydrochloric</i> | 1·070 | { 6 fluid drachms = about |
| | | { 900 grain-measures. |
| <i>Aromatic Sulphuric</i> | 0·927 | { 6 fluid drachms = about |
| | | { 830 grain-measures. |

2. *Dilute Phosphoric Acid* calls for separate notice.

a. A colourless liquid.

b. Odourless; has an agreeable acid taste.

c. Sp. gr. 1·080.

d. Evaporated it leaves a residue, which melts at a low red heat, and on cooling exhibits a glassy appearance.

IMPURITIES.—Metals; sulphuric, hydrochloric, or nitric acid; metaphosphoric acid, which gives a precipitate with solution of albumen.

QUANTITATIVE TEST.—fl. 36 poured upon 180 grains of oxide of lead in fine powder, leave after evaporation a residue which, heated to redness, weighs 215·5 grains.

ACTION.—Refrigerant. Tonic. Astringent. Stomachic. External irritant or stimulant.

III. SIMPLE ORGANIC ACIDS.

A. ACETIC ACID GROUP.

SOURCE AND PREPARATION:—

1. *Acidum Aceticum*. Prepared as follows:—

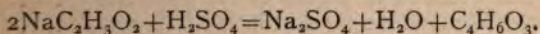
a. Subject wood to destructive distillation at a heat of low redness in iron retorts.

b. Decant the crude pyroligneous acid in the distillate from the tar, and re-distil.

c. Neutralize the acetic acid which comes over with **carbonate of soda**, and purify by re-crystallization.

d. Distil the purified **acetate of soda** with **sulphuric acid** and **water**. If the product contains sulphurous acid, it must be re-distilled with **bichromate of potash** or **black oxide of manganese**, when the SO_2 is converted into H_2SO_4 .

2. *Acidum Aceticum Glaciale*.—Carefully heat **acetate of soda**, to drive off its water of crystallization; and distil this anhydrous acetate with **sulphuric acid**. Should the product contain SO_2 , it must be treated as indicated under acetic acid.



3. *Acidum Aceticum Dilutum*.

Mix { **Acetic acid**, 1
 Water, 7

4. *Acetum—Vinegar*.—An acid liquid prepared from malt and unmalted grain, by acetous fermentation. The fermenting liquor is allowed to trickle slowly through wood-shavings contained in tall vats, which have small side holes near the bottom, through which the air circulates, and thus a large surface is exposed to its action. The process is one of oxidation of alcohol by the oxygen of the air, thus:— $\text{C}_2\text{H}_6\text{O} + \text{O}_2 = \text{C}_2\text{H}_4\text{O}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O}$.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES.—1. All this group are clear and colourless liquids, except vinegar, which is brown. Glacial acetic acid forms prismatic crystals at 34° F., and remains crystallized at 48° .

2. Have a more or less pungent acetous odour, according to their strength.

3. Various degrees of acid taste and reaction.

4. The glacial acid is corrosive to organic substances.

| 5. | Sp. gr. | Neutralizing power. Volumetric solution of soda. |
|----------------|---------|---|
| <i>Acetic</i> | 1.044 | { 182 grains = 1000 grain-measures. |
| <i>Glacial</i> | 1.065-6 | { 60 grains = 990 grain-measures. |
| <i>Dilute</i> | 1.006 | { 440 grains or 1 fluid ounce = 313 grain-measures. |
| <i>Vinegar</i> | 1.017-9 | { 445.4 grains or 1 fluid ounce = at least 402 grain-measures. |

The relative strengths of the three forms of acetic acid in the B.P. are

| |
|---------------------|
| { Glacial . . . 1 |
| { Acetic . . . 3 |
| { Dilute, nearly 24 |

6. The glacial acid dissolves camphor, gum, resin, and volatile oil.

IMPURITIES.—1. In the different forms of acetic acid the chief impurities liable to be present are sulphurous, sulphuric, and hydrochloric acids; and metals.

2. Vinegar is allowed by law to have $\frac{1}{1000}$ th part of sulphuric acid added, in order to preserve it; beyond this amount it is an adulteration. Metals are also liable to be present.

PHARMACY.—1. *Acetic acid* is used in making

some of the officinal acetates; and is contained in the following preparations:—

Acetum cantharidis.

Extractum colchici aceticum.

Linimentum terebinthinæ aceticum.

Liquor ammoniæ acetatis.

Liquor epispasticus.

Oxymel.

2. *Dilute acetic acid* is contained in:—

Acetum scillæ.

Liquor morphiæ acetatis.

3. *Glacial acetic acid* is contained in:—

Acetum cantharides.

Mistura creasoti.

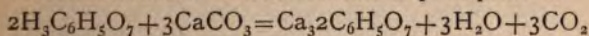
ACTION.—Irritant. Vesicant. Refrigerant. Astringent. Glacial acid is Escharotic.

B. CITRIC ACID. $\text{H}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O}_7$, H_2O .

SOURCE AND PREPARATION.—From lemon- or lime-juice, by the following process:—

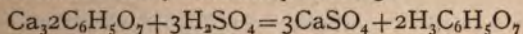
1. Boil the juice, to coagulate the albuminous constituents.

2. Add **prepared chalk** gradually, until effervescence ceases. Citrate of lime is precipitated.



3. Collect the precipitate on a filter, and wash with *hot* water until it is colourless, to remove sugar and malate of lime.

4. Decompose by boiling gently with **sulphuric acid** and **water**, constantly stirring.



5. Separate the solution of citric acid from the precipitated calcium sulphate by filtration; wash the precipitate with distilled water, and add the washings to the solution; concentrate by evaporation, and set aside to crystallize; purify by re-crystallization.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES :—

1. Crystalline, primary form = right rhombic prism.

2. Transparent and colourless.

3. Pleasant, acid taste.

4. Soluble in $\frac{3}{4}$ th its weight of cold water, $\frac{1}{2}$ its weight of boiling water, in rectified spirit (10 in 15) and in glycerine (1 in 2); not in ether. The aqueous solution decomposes on keeping into acetic and carbonic acids, and becomes mouldy.

5. Decomposed by heat, aconitic acid and a little charred matter being left, but disappears completely when burnt with free access of air. Readily oxidized by nitric acid.

IMPURITIES.—Fixed impurities; tartaric acid; oxalic acid; and sulphuric acid.

QUANTITATIVE TEST = POWER OF NEUTRALIZATION.—

A solution of citric acid in distilled water in the proportion of 1 to 14, corresponds to lemon-juice, which is about 35 grains in $\frac{3}{4}$ l.

a. 70 grains dissolved in water = 1000 grain-measures of *Vol. solution of soda*.

b. For practical purposes it is well to know the neutralizing power of citric acid with regard to certain officinal salts, thus :—

| | | | |
|--|---------------------|---|--|
| 17 grains of citric acid = fl. $\frac{3}{4}$ ss of lemon-juice. } | neutralize about | { | 24 $\frac{1}{4}$ gr. Bicarbonate of potash. |
| | | | 20 „ Carbonate of potash. |
| | | | 20 $\frac{1}{2}$ „ Bicarbonate of soda. |
| | | | 34 $\frac{3}{4}$ „ Carbonate of soda. |
| | | | 14 $\frac{1}{2}$ „ Carbonate of ammonia. |
| | | | 11 $\frac{3}{4}$ „ Carbonate of magnesia. |

PHARMACY.—1. Citric acid is necessarily present in *Succus Limonis*, and in *Syrupus Limonis*, which contains lemon-juice.

2. It is employed in the preparation of all the *officinal citrates* or their solutions.

3. It is an ingredient in *Vinum Quiniæ*, where it aids materially in dissolving the quinine.

4. Citric acid is much employed in making effervescent draughts.

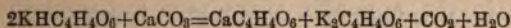
5. *Incompatibles*.—Tartrate of potash, alkaline carbonates, acetates, and sulphurets.

ACTION.—Refrigerant.

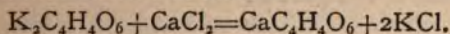
C. TARTARIC ACID. $\text{H}_2\text{C}_4\text{H}_4\text{O}_6$

SOURCE AND PREPARATION.—From bitartrate of potash, by essentially a similar process to that by which citric acid is prepared, but with difference of detail.

1. Boil **cream of tartar** with water, and gradually add **prepared chalk**, constantly stirring. Tartrate of lime and neutral tartrate of potash are formed.

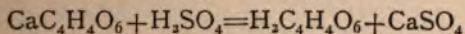


2. When effervescence has ceased, add solution of **chloride of calcium**, to convert the tartrate of potash into tartrate of lime.



3. Separate the tartrate of lime, and wash with distilled water until it is tasteless.

4 Decompose by boiling with **diluted sulphuric acid**, constantly stirring.



5. Filter; evaporate the solution to crystallization; purify by re-crystallization.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES:—

1. Crystalline—oblique rhombic prisms.
2. Colourless and transparent.
3. Strongly acid taste.
4. Soluble in water (10 in 8); in rectified spirit (1 in 5). The aqueous solution becomes mouldy on keeping, and acetic acid is formed.
6. Modified by heat, and burns away with free access of air.

IMPURITIES.—Lime; metals; oxalic acid.

QUANTITATIVE TEST=POWER OF NEUTRALIZATION.

- a. 75 grains dissolved in water=1000 grain-measures of *Vol. solution of soda*.
- b. 100 grains = 133 grains of bicarbonate of potash.

PHARMACY.—1. Tartaric acid is not directly employed in any pharmaceutical preparation, but it is contained in the alkaline tartrates, tartarated antimony, and tartarated iron.

2. It was formerly much employed in making effervescent draughts, but its place is now taken by citric acid.

3. *Incompatibles*.—Salts of potash, lime, mercury, and lead; vegetable astringents.

4. In the appendix there is a test-solution of

| | | |
|---------------|---|----------------------|
| tartaric acid | { | Tartaric acid, 1. |
| | | Distilled water, 8. |
| | | Rectified spirit, 2. |

ACTION.—Refrigerant.

AMMONIUM.

GENERAL SUMMARY.—The preparations of ammonia may be arranged according to the following plan:—

- A. Solutions of Gaseous Ammonia = NH_3 in Water.
1. *Liquor ammoniæ fortior*.—Stronger solution of ammonia = 32.5 per cent. of NH_3 , or 15.83 grains in fl. 3 i.
 2. *Liquor ammoniæ*.—Solution of ammonia = 10 per cent. of NH_3 , or 5.2 grains in fl. 3 i.
- B. Solutions of Salts in Water.
1. *Liquor ammoniæ acetatis*.—"Mindererus' spirit."—Solution of acetate of ammonia = $\text{NH}_4\text{C}_2\text{H}_3\text{O}_2$.
 2. *Liquor ammoniæ citratis*.—Solution of citrate of ammonia = $3\text{NH}_4\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O}_7$.
 3. *Liquor bismuthi et ammoniæ citratis*.—A solution of citrate of ammonia and bismuth, with some nitrate of ammonia. See BISMUTH.
- C. Salts.
1. *Ammoniæ benzoas*— $\text{NH}_4\text{C}_7\text{H}_5\text{O}_2$.
 2. *Ammoniæ carbonas*.—A mixture of acid ammonic carbonate, with ammonic carbamate— $2\text{NH}_4\text{HCO}_3, (\text{NH}_3)_2\text{CO}_2$.
 3. *Ammoniæ nitras*— NH_4NO_3 .
 4. *Ammoniæ phosphas*— $(\text{NH}_4)_2\text{HPO}_4$.
 5. *Ammonii bromidum*— NH_4Br .
 6. *Ammonii chloridum*—*Sal ammoniac* = NH_4Cl .

D. Special Official Preparations.

1. *Linimentum ammoniacæ.*
2. *Spiritus ammoniæ aromaticus—Sal volatile.*—A spirituous solution of ammonia, neutral carbonate of ammonia, and oils of nutmeg and lemon.
3. *Spiritus ammoniæ fetidus.*—A spirituous solution of ammonia with oil of assafoetida.

E. Test-Solutions in Appendix.

1. *Carbonate*, $\frac{3}{4}$ ad $\frac{3}{4}$ 10.
2. *Chloride*, $\frac{3}{4}$ i ad $\frac{3}{4}$ 10.
3. *Oxalate*, $\frac{3}{4}$ ad $\frac{3}{4}$ 20.
4. *Sulphide*, made with solution of ammonia and H_2S .
5. Solution of ammonia is also contained in:—
Solution of ammonio-nitrate of silver.
Solution of ammonio-sulphate of copper.
Solution of ammonio-sulphate of magnesia, with chloride of ammonium.

SOURCE AND PREPARATION.—The following table will indicate from what sources the compounds of ammonia are severally derived.

The groups of *officinal preparations* and *test-solutions* are omitted.

1. From *Ammoniacal liquor*, a waste product of the manufacture of gas, } Ammonii chloridum.

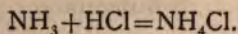
2. From *Ammonium Chloride*. { *a.* Liquor ammoniæ fortior.
 b. Ammoniæ carbonas.
3. From *Liquor Ammonia Fortior*. { *a.* Liquor ammoniæ.
 b. Liquor ammoniæ citratis.
 c. Ammoniæ phosphas.
4. From *Liquor Ammonia*. { *a.* Liquor bismuthi et ammoniæ citratis.
 b. Ammoniæ benzoas.
 c. Ammonii bromidum.
5. From *Carbonate of Ammonia*. { *a.* Liquor ammoniæ acetatis.
 b. Ammoniæ nitras.

The actual preparation of these compounds can be more easily remembered according to another plan, as follows:—

A. Salts.

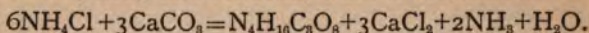
1. *Chloride*.—This is the preparation of ammonia first obtained, and it is the ultimate source of all the rest.

a. Neutralize the **ammoniacal liquor** of gas-works with **hydrochloric acid**; a tarry solution of ammonium chloride is formed, CO_2 and H_2S being given off.



b. Evaporate, crystallize, and purify by sublimation. It forms hemispherical cakes, which are broken into pieces. For medicinal use it should be re-crystallized.

2. *Carbonate*.—Mix **ammonium chloride** with **chalk**, heat, and condense what is volatilized.



The remaining salts are made by neutralizing the respective acids, and evaporating, thus:—

Neutralized by

3. *Benzoate* } **Liquor ammoniæ.**
4. *Bromide* }

5. *Nitrate*.—**Carbonate of ammonia.**

6. *Phosphate*.—**Liquor ammoniæ fortior.**

The following are the special points to be noted as to the preparation of each of these salts.

Benzoate.—Dissolve **benzoic acid** in slight excess of **solution of ammonia**, and evaporate slowly.

Bromide.—Saturate **hydrobromic acid** with **solution of ammonia**, and evaporate.

Nitrate.—Saturate **dilute nitric acid** with **carbonate of ammonia**, evaporate to dryness, and fuse the residue.

Phosphate.—*a.* Add **dilute phosphoric acid** to the **stronger solution of ammonia**, until it remains slightly alkaline.

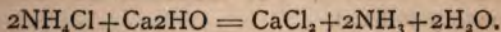
b. Evaporate, adding more ammonia from time to time, to prevent formation of acid phosphate.

c. Dry the crystals quickly on filtering paper on a porous tile.

B. Solutions.

1. *Liquor Ammonice Fortior.*

a. Heat { **Ammonium chloride**
Slaked lime.



- b.* Pass the liberated gas (NH_3) into water, to saturation, under pressure.
2. *Liquor Ammonia.*
- Mix { **Liquor ammonia fortior**, 1
Water, 2
3. *Liquor Ammonia Acetatis.*
- a.* Add gradually powdered **carbonate of ammonia** ($\frac{3}{3} 3\frac{1}{2}$) to **acetic acid**, ($\frac{3}{3} 10$) until a neutral solution is formed.
- b.* Dilute with water = O $2\frac{1}{2}$
4. *Liquor Ammonia Citratis.*
- a.* Dissolve { **Citric acid**, $\frac{3}{3} 3$
Water, O 1.
- b.* Add **strong solution of ammonia** to neutralization.
5. *Liquor Bismuthi et Ammonia Citratis.*—(See BISMUTH).

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES.—These may also be conveniently considered under the two divisions of:—A. **Salts**; B. **Solutions**.

A. Salts.

The salts of ammonia have the following properties in common:—

1. White or colourless; and crystalline.
2. Neutral in reaction, except the *carbonate*, which is alkaline.
3. Volatilized and sublimed by heat, except the *nitrate*, which first fuses, and is then decomposed into nitrous oxide gas (N_2O) and H_2O . This salt is introduced into the B.P. to make N_2O .

The other properties may be arranged in a tabular form:—

| | CRYSTALS. | SOLUBILITY. | ODOUR AND TASTE. | CHANGES. |
|----------------------|--|--|---|--|
| 1. <i>Benzoate.</i> | Laminar. Colourless. | Water = 1 in 5. Rectified spirit = 1 in 18. | Balsamic odour. | None. |
| 2. <i>Carbonate.</i> | Crystalline masses. Translucent. | Water = 1 in 4. Sparingly in spirit. Glycerine = 1 in 5. Boiling water dissolves but decomposes it. Freely soluble in acids, with effervescence. | Strongly ammoniacal and pungent odour; acrid taste. | On exposure to air, loses its odour; a white opaque powder forms = acid carbonate. |
| 3. <i>Nitrate.</i> | Confused crystalline masses. | Water = 4 in 3. Spirit = 1 in 11. | Bitter and acrid taste. | Deliquescent. |
| 4. <i>Phosphate.</i> | Large prisms. Transparent. | Water = 1 in 2. Insoluble in rectified spirit. | No odour. | On exposure to air, loses water and ammonia, and effloresces, becoming opaque. |
| 5. <i>Bromide.</i> | Small crystals. | Water = 1 in 14. Rectified spirit = 1 in 13. | No odour. Pungent, saline, disagreeable taste. | Liable to decompose, and to become slightly yellowish. |
| 6. <i>Chloride.</i> | Fibrous masses; translucent; tough, and difficult to powder. | Water = 1 in 3. Rectified spirit = 1 in 55. Glycerine = 1 in 5. | Odourless. Strong, pungent, and saline taste. | None. |

B. Solutions.

1. *Liquor Ammoniacæ Fortior* } These have the same
 2. *Liquor Ammoniacæ* } properties, only differing in strength.

a. Colourless liquids.

b. Strong odour of ammonia, and the stronger solution emits pungent fumes.

c. Acrid taste.

d. Marked alkaline reaction.

e. *Sp. gr.* { *Liq. Amm. Fortior* = 0.890
 { *Liq. Ammoniacæ* = 0.959.

f. Entirely dissipated with heat.

3. *Liquor Ammoniacæ Acetatis* } These have also simi-
 4. *Liquor Ammoniacæ Citratis* } lar properties.

a. Colourless solutions.

b. No odour; saline taste.

c. Neutral in reaction.

IMPURITIES.—The only preparations to which the B.P. alludes in reference to this matter, are as follows:—

a. *Liquor Ammoniacæ*.—Carbonates; lime; metals; sulphides; chlorides; sulphates.

b. *Nitrate*.—Chlorides and sulphates.

c. *Bromide*.—Iodide.

QUANTITATIVE TESTS:—

| | |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>Liquor Ammon. Fort.</i> 52.3 gr. | } Neutralized by 1000 grain- measures of <i>Vol.</i> <i>solution of oxalic</i> <i>acid.</i> |
| 2. <i>Ammoniacæ Carbonas</i> { 59 gr. in { 3 1 of { water. | |

3. *Ammoniacæ Phosphas*.—20 grains dissolved in water, and solution of ammonio-sulphate of magnesia added, a crystalline precipitate falls = *Ammonio-phosphate of magnesia*, which, when well washed

upon a filter with solution of ammonia, diluted with an equal volume of water, dried, and heated to redness, leaves 16.8 grains = *pyro-phosphate of magnesia*.

PHARMACY.—I. *Officinal preparations* :—

a. *Linimentum Ammoniacæ*.

Mix { Solution of ammonia, 1 } = A semi-solid
Olive oil, 3 } cream.

b. *Spiritus Ammoniacæ Aromaticus*.

| | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Carbonate of ammonia, 3 8 | } Distil to 7 pints. Colourless. Sp. gr. = .870 |
| Strong solution of ammonia, 3 4 | |
| Volatile oil of nutmeg, 3 4 | |
| Oil of lemon, 3 6 | |
| Rectified spirit, O 6 | |
| Water, O 3. | |

Dose = m 20 to 30.

c. *Spiritus Ammoniacæ Fætidus*.

Macerate for 24 hours { Assafoetida, 1 ½
and distil { Rectified spirit, 15

Add strong solution of ammonia = 2 to the distillate, and make up with spirit to 20.

Colourless, but becomes yellow by keeping.

Dose = 3 ½ to 3 i.

2. The other preparations in which ammonia or its compounds are contained, include :—

a. *Liquor Ammoniacæ Fortior*. { (i.) *Linimentum Camphoræ Compositum*.
(ii.) *Tinctura Opii Ammoniata*.

b. *Liquor Ammoniacæ*—*Tinctura Quiniæ Ammoniata*.

- c. *Spiritus Ammonia Aromaticus*. { (i.) Tinctura Guaiaci Ammoniata.
(ii.) Tinctura Valerianæ Ammoniata.
- d. *Ammonii Chloridum*. { Liquor Hydrargyri Perchloridi, to aid solution.

3. *Incompatibles*.—The chief incompatibles to be mentioned in relation to the preparations of ammonia are as follows:—

a. *Carbonate*.—Acids and acidulous salts; earthy salts; lime-water.

b. *Benzoate*.—Acids; persalts of iron; liquor potassæ.

c. *Bromide*.—Acids and acidulous salts; spirit of nitrous ether.

d. *Chloride*.—Alkalies, alkaline earths, and their carbonates; lead and silver salts.

e. *Liquor ammonia acetatis*.—Acids; alkalies and their carbonates; lime-water; lead and silver salts.

ACTION.—The actions of the different preparations of ammonia may be thus summarized:—

1. *Solutions of Ammonia*.—According to strength may be external escharotic, vesicant, rubefacient, or stimulant. Local antidote to poison of wasps, spiders, etc. Internally, well-diluted, antacid, and absorbs gas in stomach. Diffusible stimulant, (also by inhalation through nostrils; and injection into a vein in extreme cases). Antispasmodic. *Dose*.— \mathfrak{m} 10 to 20 of *Liquor ammonia*.

2. *Carbonate*.—Stimulant by inhalation through nostrils, as "smelling-salts." Internally, antacid in stomach; antispasmodic; diffusible stimulant; stimulant expectorant; diaphoretic; emetic. *Dose*. gr. 3 to 10 usually; emetic, gr. 20 to 30.

3. { *Spiritus Ammoniac Aromaticus* } Stimulant. Anti-
 { *Spiritus Ammoniac Fætidus* } spasmodic.

4. { *Liquor Ammoniac Acetatis* } Diaphoretic, Diure-
 { *Liquor Ammoniac Citratis* } tic. Refrigerant.
 Dose.—3 2 to 6.

5. *Benzoate*.—Diuretic, and makes urine more acid. Hepatic stimulant. Dose.—gr. 10 to 20.

6. *Bromide*.—Sedative. Soporific. Deadens laryngeal sensibility. Dose.—gr. 5 to 20.

7. *Chloride*.—Expectorant. Diaphoretic. Diuretic. Alterative. Cholagogue. Emmenagogue. Antineuralgic. External stimulant and resolvent. Dose.—gr. 5 to 20 or 30.

8. *Phosphate*.—Diaphoretic. Hepatic stimulant. Dose.—gr. 5 to 20.

POTASSIUM.

GENERAL SUMMARY.—The preparations of potassium recognised in the B.P. are very numerous, and the following classification may help in remembering them.

Forms of Potash.

- a. *Potassa Caustica*—Caustic potash, or *Potassic Hydrate* = KHO .
- b. *Liquor Potassæ*. A solution of Potassic Hydrate = 5.84 per cent., or 27 grains in fl. $\frac{3}{4}$ i.

Inorganic Salts.

- a. *Potassæ Carbonas*—Carbonate of potash = K_2CO_3 , with about 16 per cent. of water of crystallization.
- b. „ *Bicarbonas*—Bicarbonate of Potash = KHCO_3 .
- c. „ *Bichromas*—Bichromate of Potash = $\text{K}_2\text{Cr}_2\text{O}_7$.
- d. „ *Chloras*—Chlorate = KClO_3 .
- e. „ *Nitras*—Nitrate of Potash, Nitre, or *Saltpetre* = KNO_3 .
- f. „ *Permanganas*—Permanganate of Potash = KMnO_4 .
- g. „ *Prussias Flava*—Yellow prussiate—*Ferrocyanide of Potassium* = $\text{K}_4\text{FeC}_6\text{N}_6, 3\text{H}_2\text{O}$.
- h. „ *Sulphas*—Sulphate = K_2SO_4 .
- i. *Potassii Bromidum*—Bromide of Potassium = KBr .
- j. „ *Iodidum*—Iodide of Potassium = KI .
- k. *Potassa Sulphurata*—*Hepar Sulphuris*—*Liver of Sulphur* (see SULPHUR).

3. **Organic Salts.** {
- a. *Potassæ Acetas*—Acetate of Potash = $\text{KC}_2\text{H}_3\text{O}_2$.
 - b. „ *Citras*—Citrate of Potash = $\text{K}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O}_7$.
 - c. „ *Tartras*—Tartrate—Soluble Tartar = $\text{K}_2\text{C}_4\text{H}_4\text{O}_6$.
 - d. „ *Tartras Acida*—Acid Tartrate—Cream of Tartar = $\text{KHC}_4\text{H}_4\text{O}_6$.
 - e. *Soda Tartarata* = Tartrate of Soda and Potash. (See SODIUM).
4. **Special solutions.** {
- a. *Liquor Potassæ Effervescens*—Potash Water.
 - b. *Liquor Arsenicalis* (see ARSENIC).
 - c. *Liquor Potassæ Permanganatis*—Solution of Permanganate of potash. *Condy's fluid*.
5. **Soap . . .** *Sapo Mollis*—Soft Soap.
6. **Special Official Preparations.** {
- a. *Linimentum Potassii Iodidi cum Sapone*.
 - b. *Unguentum Potassii Iodidi*.
 - c. *Trochisci Potassæ Chloratis*.
 - d. *Unguentum Potassæ Sulphuratæ*.
7. **Test-Solutions in Appendix.** {
- a. *Solution of Acetate of Potash*, $\frac{\text{Z}}{3}$ ss to $\frac{\text{Z}}{3}$ 5.
 - b. „ *Iodide of Potassium*, $\frac{\text{Z}}{3}$ 1 to $\frac{\text{Z}}{3}$ 10.
 - c. „ *Iodate of Potash*.
 - d. „ *Red Prussiate of Potash*, $\frac{\text{Z}}{3}$ $\frac{1}{4}$ to $\frac{\text{Z}}{3}$ 5.
 - e. „ *Yellow Prussiate of Potash*, $\frac{\text{Z}}{3}$ $\frac{1}{4}$ to $\frac{\text{Z}}{3}$ 5.
 - f. Volumetric solution of *Bichromate of Potash* = 14.75 grains in 1000 grain-measures.

SOURCES AND PREPARATION.—The sources of the officinal potassium-compounds may be sketched as follows:—

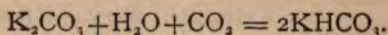
1. *Native, or artificially produced during certain processes.*
 - a. *Carbonate*—*Pearl-ash*, from lixiviated wood-ashes.
 - b. *Nitrate*, from nitre-soils in India.
 - c. *Acid Tartrate*, from argol—red or crude tartar, a deposit in wine-casks.
2. From *Carbonate*
 - a. *Liquor Potassæ.*
 - b. *Potassæ Acetas.*
 - c. „ *Bichromas.*
 - d. „ *Carbonas.*
 - e. „ *Chloras.*
 - f. „ *Citras.*
 - g. „ *Prussias Flava.*
 - h. *Potassa Sulphurata.*
 - i. *Liquor Arsenicalis.*
3. From *Liquor Potassæ.*
 - a. *Potassa Caustica.*
 - b. *Potassii Bromidum.*
 - c. „ *Iodidum.*
4. From *Bicarbonate*—*Liquor Potassæ Effervescens.*
5. From *Nitrate* and *Carbonate*—*Potassæ Sulphas.*
6. From *Bitartrate*—*Soda Tartarata.*
7. From *Carbonate* and *Bitartrate*—*Potassæ Tartras.*
8. From *Caustic Potash* and *Chlorate* } *Potassæ Permanganas.*

The actual modes of making those preparations of potassium, which it is necessary to consider here, will now be pointed out, according to the following plan:—

A. CARBONATES.

1. *Carbonate*—**Pearl-ash** or lixiviated wood-ash is treated with its own weight of **water**, while briskly agitating, and the solution is evaporated to dryness.

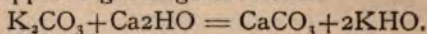
2. *Bicarbonate*. Pass **carbonic acid gas** through a strong solution of **carbonate of potash** for a week.



Crystals are gradually deposited, which are washed, drained, and dried on filtering paper by exposure to air. More crystals are yielded by concentration.

B. FORMS OF POTASH.

1. *Liquor Potassæ*.—By the action of **slaked lime** on solution of **carbonate of potash**. Decant or draw off by means of a syphon, and keep in well-stoppered green-glass bottles.



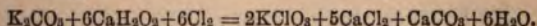
2. *Potassa Caustica*. Boil **liquor potassæ** in a silver or clean iron vessel, until it becomes of oily consistence, and a drop on a warm glass rod solidifies on cooling. Pour into moulds; and when solid and still warm put into stoppered bottles.

C. INORGANIC SALTS PREPARED FROM CARBONATE.

1. *Bichromate*.—Roast **chrome iron ore** with a mixture of **carbonate of potash** and **chalk** in a furnace through which a current of air passes. Yellow chromate is formed, which is treated with **sulphuric acid**, when the bichromate or red chromate is produced.

2. *Chlorate*.—*a*. Pass **chlorine gas** into a mixture of excess of **slaked lime** and **carbonate of potash**, triturated with water, so as to be slightly moist.

b. Boil with water for twenty minutes, filter, and evaporate until a film forms on the surface; set aside to cool and crystallize; purify by dissolving in boiling distilled water, and re-crystallization.



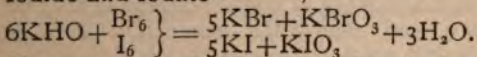
3. *Yellow Prussiate*.—Fuse horns, hoofs, etc. with **carbonate of potash**, in an iron pot; lixiviate in water; and crystallize.

D. SALTS PREPARED FROM LIQUOR POTASSÆ.

1. *Bromide*. } These salts are prepared on the
2. *Iodide*. } same plan, namely:—

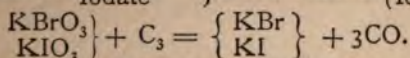
a. Add { **Bromine**
Iodine } respectively to **Liquor potassæ**, with constant agitation, until a permanent brown tint is observed.

Bromide and Bromate,
Iodide and Iodate } are formed:—



b. Evaporate to dryness; powder finely; and mix intimately with powdered **wood-charcoal**.

c. Melt in a red-hot iron crucible, and then pour out contents. $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Bromate} \\ \text{Iodate} \end{array} \right\} \text{converted into } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Bromide.} \\ \text{Iodide.} \end{array} \right.$



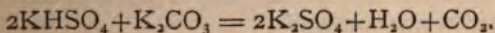
d. When cool, dissolve in water, filter, crystallize, drain, dry, and evaporate for more crystals.

E. SPECIAL INORGANIC SALTS.

1. *Nitrate*.—Treat **nitre-soils**, containing nitrate of potash mixed with nitrate of lime, with **wood-ashes** or **carbonate of potash**, and dissolve out the soluble nitrate of potash. Crystallize, and purify by re-solution and re-crystallization.

2. *Sulphate*.—*a*. Dissolve in water the residuum left after the action of sulphuric acid on nitre, in making nitric acid = **acid sulphate of potash**.

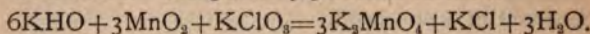
b. Neutralize with **carbonate of potash**, and crystallize.



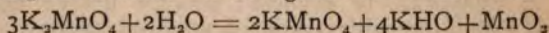
3. *Permanganate*. By a complicated process:—

a. Mix { **Chlorate of potash**, powdered, $\frac{3}{4}$ 3½. } ;
 add { **Black oxide of manganese**, $\frac{3}{4}$ 4. } ;
 add { **Caustic potash**, $\frac{3}{4}$ 5 } to these in a porcelain vessel; and evaporate to dryness in a sand-bath, stirring diligently.

b. Powder the mass; put into a covered crucible, and expose to a dull-red heat for an hour, or until semi-fused. *Manganate of potash* is formed.



c. Cool; powder; boil with $\text{O}1\frac{1}{2}$ water; decant; boil again with $\text{O}\frac{1}{2}$ of water; decant again; mix the liquors, and neutralize accurately with **dilute sulphuric acid**. *Permanganate* is thus formed.

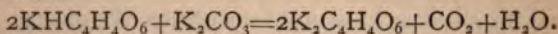


d. Evaporate; crystallize; drain, and purify the crystals by re-solution, straining through asbestos, re-crystallization, draining, and drying over sulphuric acid.

F. ORGANIC SALTS.

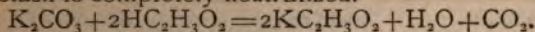
1. *Acid Tartrate*.—Purify **argol**, by means of **charcoal** and **clay**, from tartrate of lime and colouring matter. Dissolve, and re-crystallize by evaporation. The purest crystals are skimmed off the surface during evaporation, hence called *cream of tartar*.

2. *Tartrate*.—a. Gradually add **acid tartrate** to a boiling solution of **carbonate of potash**, and boil for a few minutes. The liquid must be quite neutral.



b. Filter; crystallize by concentration and evaporation; drain, and dry the crystals by exposure to air in a warm place.

3. *Acetate*.—*a*. Add **carbonate of potash** gradually to excess of **acetic acid**, so that the potash is completely neutralized.



b. Filter; acidulate if necessary; evaporate to dryness; liquefy cautiously; allow to cool and solidify; when still warm break into fragments, and put into stoppered bottles.

4. *Citrate*. *a*. Neutralize a solution of **citric acid** with **carbonate of potash**.

b. Filter; evaporate to dryness, stirring constantly after a pellicle has begun to form, till the salt granulates.

c. Triturate in a dry warm mortar; and preserve in stoppered vessels.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES.—The properties of the preparations of potassium not alluded to elsewhere, may be described under the following groups:—

1. **Caustic Potash.**

- a*. In hard moulds or sticks = size of pencil.
- b*. White colour and opaque; often coloured.
- c*. Very deliquescent.
- d*. Very soluble in water (2 in 1) and alcohol.
- e*. Powerfully alkaline.
- f*. Corrosive; dissolves animal tissues.
- g*. Melts below red heat to an oily liquid.

2. **Liquor Potassæ.**

- a*. A colourless liquid; sp. gr. = 1.058.
- b*. Strongly alkaline reaction.
- c*. Intensely acrid and caustic taste.
- d*. Readily attracts CO_2 from the air; and dissolves lead from white glass bottles.

3. **White or Colourless Salts.**—These are all *crystalline*, but the *carbonate*, *citrate*, *tartrate*, and often the *acid tartrate* are in a powdery or granular form, the crystals being very small. They are inodorous. Their prominent characters may be arranged in a tabular form:—

| | CRYSTALS. | REACTION. |
|--------------------------|---|---|
| 1. <i>Acetate.</i> | Foliateous and satiny masses. | Neutral. |
| 2. <i>Bicarbonate.</i> | Right rhombic prisms. Large; transparent. | Neutral. |
| 3. <i>Carbonate.</i> | Powdery=grains; white and rather opaque. | Alkaline, and somewhat caustic. |
| 4. <i>Chlorate.</i> | Rhomboidal plates or tabular crystals = 4- or 6-sided; transparent. | Neutral. |
| 5. <i>Citrate.</i> | Crystalline powder. | Neutral. |
| 6. <i>Nitrate.</i> | Six-sided prisms; striated. In masses or fragments; white and opaque. | Neutral. |
| 7. <i>Sulphate.</i> | Six-sided prisms, ending in six-sided pyramids. Transparent; very hard. | Solution should be neutral. |
| 8. <i>Tartrate.</i> | Small; 4- or 6-sided prisms; colourless. | Neutral. |
| 9. <i>Acid Tartrate.</i> | Finely gritty white powder; or fragments of cakes, crystallized on one surface. | Acid. |
| 10. <i>Bromide.</i> | Cubical; colourless; semi-transparent. | Neutral. |
| 11. <i>Iodide.</i> | Cubical. Opaque. | Solution should be neutral, but generally alkaline. |

| TASTE. | SOLUBILITY. | CHANGES. |
|----------------------|--|--|
| | Very soluble in water (3 in 1), and alcohol. | Very deliquescent. |
| and feebly alka- | Cold water (1 in 3). Boiling water (1 in 1). Insoluble in alcohol. | Not deliquescent. When heated, carbonate is left. |
| alkaline, and ic. | Readily in water (1 in $\frac{3}{4}$). Insoluble in alcohol. | Very deliquescent. Loses 16 per cent. of weight with red heat. |
| and saline. | Cold water (1 in 16). Boiling water (1 in 2). | Liquefies with heat; gives off O, and KCl remains. |
| acid, and saline. | Water (10 in 6). Glycerine (1 in 2). Insoluble in proof spirit. | Deliquescent. |
| r; cooling and e. | Cold water (1 in 4). Boiling water (1 in $2\frac{1}{2}$). Sparingly in alcohol. | Melts with heat, and is cast into moulds= <i>Sal prunella</i> . Heated to redness, gives off O, and is changed into nitrite. |
| and saline. | Cold water (1 in 10). Boiling water (1 in 4). Insoluble in alcohol. | Not deliquescent. Decrepitates strongly when heated. |
| saline, and bitter- | Water (10 in 8)= <i>Soluble tartar</i> . Insoluble in alcohol. | Somewhat deliquescent. Decomposed by heat. |
| it, acid. | Cold water (1 in 200). Boiling water (1 in 16). Insoluble in alcohol. | Heat evolves an odour of burnt sugar; a black residue remains. |
| it, and saline. | Water (1 in 2). Rectified spirit (1 in 90). | Somewhat liable to de- composition. |
| acid, and bitter- | Water (4 in 3). Rectified spirit (1 in 16). | Very liable to decom- pose, becoming yel- lowish, and evolving odour of iodine. |

4. Coloured Crystalline Salts.

Excluding *Potassa Sulphurata* (see SULPHUR), the only coloured salts of potash recognised in the body of the B. P. are as follows:—

| | CRYSTALS. | ODOUR AND TASTE. | SOLUBILITY. | CHANGES. |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------|--|---|--|
| 1. <i>Bichromate.</i> | Large; red; four-sided; transparent. | | Water (1 in 10). | Fuses and decomposes by heat. |
| 2. <i>Permanganate</i> | Slender; prismatic; dark purple. | No odour. Sweetish and astringent taste. | Water (1 in 16). Solution has a rich purple colour. | Powerful oxidiser. When heated, O is evolved, and black residue remains. |
| 3. <i>Yellow Prussiate.</i> | Large; yellow. | | Water (1 in 4). Insoluble in alcohol. | |

In the *Appendix* the *Red prussiate* is mentioned, which is in garnet-red crystals, forming a green solution in water.

IMPURITIES.—The chief of these are as follows:—

a. *Liquor Potassæ*.—CO₂, lime, sulphates, chlorides, and alumina.

b. *Acetate*.—Metallic impurities.

c. *Carbonate*.—Traces of silica, sulphate, and chloride are usually present.

d. *Chlorate*.—Chlorine, chloride, lime.

e. *Nitrate*.—Sulphates and chlorides.

f. *Sulphate*.—Lime.

g. *Bromide*.—Iodide.

h. *Iodide*.—Iodate, chlorine, and carbonates.

QUANTITATIVE TESTS.—These may be divided into two groups, namely:—

1. **Power of Neutralization.**

2. **Special Tests.**

1. Power of Neutralization.

Grain-measures
of Vol. sol. of
oxalic acid.

- a. *Caustic Potash*—56 grains = at least 500
 b. *Liquor Potassæ*—fl. $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 or 462.9 grains = 482
 c. *Bicarbonate*—50 grains, exposed to }
 low red heat, leaves $34\frac{1}{2}$ grains = } = 500
 carbonate.
 d. *Carbonate*—83 grains = at least 980
 e. *Citrate*—102 grains } Heated to red-
 f. *Tartrate*—113 grains } ness till gas
 g. *Acid Tartrate*—188 } ceases to be } = 1000.
 grains. } evolved; car-
 } bonate remains.)

2. Special Tests.

a. *Bromide*—10 grains require for complete decomposition 840 grain-measures of *Vol. solution of nitrate of silver*.

b. *Permanganate*—5 grains dissolved in water require, for complete decoloration, a solution of 44 grains of granulated sulphate of iron, acidulated with 2 fluid drachms of diluted sulphuric acid.

PHARMACY.—1. *Officinal preparations*.

The officinal preparations of potassium-compounds, not considered elsewhere, are as follows:—

- a. *Liquor Potassæ Effervescens* { Bicarbonate of potash, gr. 30.
 { Water, O 1.

Dissolve; filter; and pass in pure CO_2 by pressure of 7 atmospheres.

- b. *Liquor Potassæ Permanganatis*— { Permanganate of }
 Intense purple { potash, gr. 4. } Dissolve.
 { Water, $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 }

- c. *Linimentum Potassii Iodidi cum Sapone*. { Dissolve { Hard soap, $1\frac{1}{2}$ }
 Should be { by water { Water, 7 }
 freshly pre- { bath { }
 pared. { Iodide of potassium, $1\frac{1}{2}$ } Mix the
 { Glycerine, 1 } solu-
 { Water, 3 } tions.
 { Add Oil of Lemon $\frac{1}{8}$, and mix tho-
 roughly.

- d. *Unguentum Potassii Iodidi*—White. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Iodide of potassium, gr. 64} \\ \text{Carbonate of potash, gr. 4} \\ \text{Water, 3 i} \\ \text{Prepared lard, 3 i} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{Dissolve} \\ \text{and mix} \\ \text{tho-} \\ \text{roughly} \\ \text{with} \end{array}$

The carbonate is introduced to prevent the ointment from turning yellow.

- e. *Trochisci Potassæ Chloratis* = gr. 5 in each, made in the ordinary way with $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Refined sugar.} \\ \text{Gum arabic.} \\ \text{Mucilage.} \\ \text{Water.} \end{array} \right.$

2. The other preparations in which the compounds of potassium are contained, or in making which they are used, are as follows:—

- a. *Bichromate*.—Used in making *valerianate of soda*.
b. *Yellow prussiate*.—Used in making *dilute hydrocyanic acid*.

- c. *Iodide* contained in $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{(i) } \textit{Linimentum Iodi.} \\ \text{(ii) } \textit{Liquor Iodi.} \\ \text{(iii) } \textit{Tinctura Iodi.} \\ \text{(iv) } \textit{Unguentum Iodi.} \end{array} \right.$

- d. *Carbonate* contained in $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{(i) } \textit{Decoctum Aloes Compositum.} \\ \text{(ii) } \textit{Enema Aloes.} \\ \text{(iii) } \textit{Liquor Arsenicalis.} \\ \text{(iv) } \textit{Mistura Ferri Composita.} \end{array} \right.$

- e. *Sulphate* contained in $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{(i) } \textit{Pilula Colocynthis Composita.} \\ \text{(ii) } \textit{Pilula Colocynthis et Hyoscyami.} \\ \text{(iii) } \textit{Pulvis Ipecacuanhæ Compositus.} \end{array} \right.$

- f. *Acid Tartrate*, an important ingredient in $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{(i) } \textit{Confectio Sulphuris.} \\ \text{(ii) } \textit{Pulvis Jalapæ Compositus.} \end{array} \right.$

Also used in preparing *Antimonium tartaratum* and other preparations.

3. *Incompatibles*.—The incompatibles requiring special notice are as follows:—

a. Liquor Potassæ.—Acids, acidulous salts; preparations of ammonia; metallic salts; preparations of belladonna, stramonium, and hyoscyamus.

b. Bromide.—Acids, acidulous salts; metallic salts.

c. Iodide.—Acid preparations; spirit of nitre; vegetable preparations containing starch; decoction of liquorice.

ACTION.—The action of the different compounds of potassium may be thus stated:—

1. *Caustic Potash*.—Strong caustic or escharotic.

2. *Liquor Potassæ*.—External detergent; milder escharotic; stimulant. Internally, antacid; gastric sedative; diuretic; alterative. *Dose*.—℥ 15 to 60, well-diluted.

3. *Carbonate and Bicarbonate*.—Carbonate is an external detergent. Internally both are antacid; diuretic; alterative; antilithic. Carbonate is rarely given. Potash-water has similar actions, and is a gastric sedative and refrigerant. *Dose*.—*Carbonate*, gr. 5 to 12. *Bicarbonate*, gr. 10 to 60. *Potash-water*, ʒ 5 to 10.

4. *Acetate*.—Diuretic. Remote antacid. Purgative. *Dose*.—gr. 10 to 60 or more.

5. *Citrate*.—Refrigerant. Diaphoretic. Remote antacid. Antilithic. Antiscorbutic. *Dose*.—gr. 20 to 60.

6. *Bromide*.—Sedative. Hypnotic. Antispasmodic, Alterative. Anaphrodisiac. Deadens sensibility of larynx. *Dose*.—gr. 5 to 60.

7. *Iodide*.—Alterative. Absorbent. Anti-syphilitic. Diuretic. Emmenagogue. *Dose*.—gr. 2 to 10, 20, or more.

8. *Chlorate*.—Local refrigerant; much used as an application to mouth and throat in diphtheria, aphthæ, etc. Internally, diuretic; refrigerant; stimulant. *Dose*.—gr. 10 to 20; of *Trochisci*, 1 to 6.

3. Organic Salts.

- a. *Sodæ Acetas*—Acetate of Soda=
 $\text{NaC}_2\text{H}_3\text{O}_2, 3\text{H}_2\text{O}$.
- b. „ *Citro-Tartras Effervescens*—
Effervescent Citro-Tar-
trate of Soda. An agglu-
tination of bicarbonate of
soda with citric and tar-
taric acids, by means of
water of crystallization.
- c. „ *et Potassæ Tartras—Soda Tar-
tarata*—Tartarated Soda,
Rochelle Salt= $\text{NaKC}_4\text{H}_4\text{O}_6$
 $4\text{H}_2\text{O}$.
- d. „ *Valerianas*—Valerianate of
Soda = $\text{NaC}_6\text{H}_9\text{O}_2$.

4. Special Solutions.

- a. *Liquor Sodæ Effervescens*—Soda
Water.
- b. *Liquor Sodæ Arseniatis*. (See
ARSENIC).
- c. *Liquor Sodæ Chloratæ*. (See
CHLORINE).

5. Soaps.

- a. *Sapo Durus*—Hard Soap.
- b. *Sapo Animalis*—Curd Soap.

6. Special Official Preparations.

- a. *Trochisci Sodæ Bicarbonatis*, gr. 5
in each.
- b. *Cataplasma Sodæ Chloratæ*.
- c. *Glycerinum Boracis*.
- d. *Mel Boracis*.

7. Test-Solutions in Appendix.

- a. *Solution of Acetate of Soda*, $\frac{3}{4}$
to $\frac{3}{5}$.
- b. *Solution of Phosphate of Soda*,
 $\frac{3}{5}$ 1 to $\frac{3}{5}$ 10.
- c. *Volumetric Solution of Soda*, gr. 40
in 1000 grain-measures.
- d. *Volumetric Solution of Hyposul-
phite of Soda*.

SOURCES AND PREPARATION.—Following a similar plan to that adopted in the case of potassium, the sources of the sodium-compounds may be thus indicated:—

1. *Native* {
 - a. Chloride*—Sea-water and certain springs; and solid, as rock-salt.
 - b. Nitrate*—Native in soils in Peru, Chili, and other parts of South America.
 - c. Borax*—Spontaneous deposit by evaporation on the shores of certain lakes in Thibet, and imported from India as “tincal” or “crude borax”; also prepared from boracic acid, obtained from the lagoons in Tuscany.

2. *From Chloride* {
 - Carbonate*—This salt was formerly obtained from “kelp”; and is also found native, as an efflorescence on the borders of large lakes near Tripoli.

3. *From Carbonate* {
 - a. Dried Carbonate of Soda.*
 - b. Liquor Sodæ.*
 - c. Bicarbonate.*
 - d. Acetate.*
 - e. Arseniate (see ARSENIC).*
 - f. Biborate (partly).*
 - g. Hypophosphite (see PHOSPHORUS).*
 - h. Phosphate.*
 - i. Soda Tartarata.*

4. *From Bicarbonate* {
 - a. Effervescent Citro-tartrate.*
 - b. Liquor Sodæ Effervescens.*

5. *From Liquor Sodæ* {
 - a. Caustic Soda.*
 - b. Valerianate*

6. *From Carbonate and Chloride*—Sulphate.

bonate, and lead to its crystallization on the apparatus).

C. Forms of Soda.

1. *Liquor Sodæ*.—By the action of **slaked lime** on solution of **carbonate of soda**, by a process similar to that by which *Liquor potassæ* is made.

2. *Caustic Sodæ*.—From **Liquor sodæ**, by a similar process to that in which *Caustic Potash* is prepared.

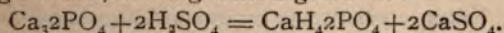
D. **Other inorganic salts**.—Some of these are considered in other parts of these notes, and only the following need be alluded to here:—

1. *Borax*.—This salt is either prepared by purifying “tincal” or “crude borax”; or by saturating the **boracic acid** of Tuscany with **carbonate of soda**.

2. *Nitrate*.—The “Peruvian” or “Chilian” nitre is purified by making a watery solution, and crystallizing.

3. *Phosphate*.—The preparation of this salt is complicated, but the process may be thus described in outline:—

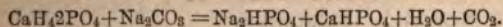
a. Act on **bone-ash** by **sulphuric acid**, in a large vessel, stirring with a glass rod.



The acid phosphate of calcium remains in solution, the calcic sulphate being mainly precipitated.

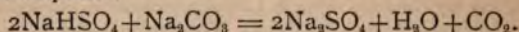
b. Then follows a process of digesting with water; filtering through calico; washing the calcic sulphate on the filter; concentrating the filtrate; and filtering again after standing 24 hours.

c. Heat to near the boiling point, and add a solution of **carbonate of soda**, till it ceases to form a precipitate, and the liquid has a feeble alkaline reaction; phosphate of soda remains in solution.



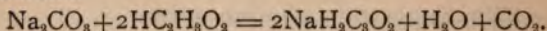
d. Filter, evaporate, crystallize, and dry the crystals rapidly, and without heat, on filtering paper on porous bricks. Preserve in stoppered bottles.

4. *Sulphate*.—The residue left in the preparation of HCl from NaCl by the action of H_2SO_4 is **acid sulphate of soda** $= NaHSO_4$. Neutralize this with **carbonate of soda**; and crystallize out the neutral sulphate.



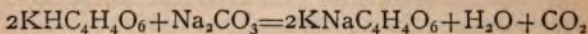
E. Organic Salts.

1. *Acetate*.—Add **carbonate of soda** to **acetic acid** until effervescence ceases, and evaporate the solution.



2. *Effervescent Citro-Tartrate*.—Heat a mixture of **bicarbonate of soda**, powdered **tartaric acid**, and **citric acid** to between 200° and 220° . When they begin to aggregate, stir constantly until they assume a granular form. Separate by sieves.

3. *Tartarated Soda*.—*a.* Add gradually **acid tartrate of potash** to a boiling solution of **carbonate of soda**, and boil for a few minutes, adding one or the other to neutralization.



b. Filter, concentrate by evaporation, and crystallize.

Valerianate.—In making this salt, valerianic acid is first prepared by oxidation of amylic alcohol (fousel oil), and the acid is neutralized by Liquor Sodæ. The essential parts of the process are as follows:—

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|------------------------------------|
| <p><i>a.</i> Distil in a matrass until about half a gallon has passed over into the condenser, a mixture of</p> | { | <p>Sulphuric acid, $\frac{3}{4} 6\frac{1}{2}$ Water, $\frac{3}{4} 10$ Bichromate of potash, $\frac{3}{4} 9$ Water, $0 3\frac{1}{2}$ Amylic alcohol, $\frac{3}{4} 4$</p> | } | <p>Dissolved with gentle heat.</p> |
|---|---|---|---|------------------------------------|

b. Saturate the distilled liquid accurately with **solution of soda**; remove any oil which floats on the surface; evaporate till watery vapour ceases to escape; and then raise the heat cautiously, so as to liquefy the salt.

c. When cooled and solidified, break into pieces, and immediately put into a stoppered bottle.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES.—The compounds of sodium, like those of potassium, may be considered in certain groups, as regards their characters and properties.

A. Caustic Soda.—Characters similar to those of caustic potash, except—

a. Most frequently in whitish or greyish-white fragments or cakes; may be cast into sticks, like those of caustic potash.

b. Less deliquescent.

c. Less caustic.

B. Liquor Sodæ.—Similar characters to liquor potassæ. Sp. gr. = 1.047.

C. White Powders or Granules.

1. *Dried Carbonate.*—A white powder; other characters like the carbonate.

2. *Bicarbonate.*

a. An opaque powder, or small irregular scales.

b. Saline, slightly alkaline taste; not caustic or unpleasant.

c. Soluble in water (1 in 10).

3. *Effervescent Citro-Tartrate.*

a. White grains.

b. Soluble in water with effervescence.

D. White or Colourless Crystals.—The prominent characters of this group may be arranged in a tabular form:—

| | CRYSTALS. | REACTION. |
|----------------------------|---|-------------------|
| 1. <i>Acetate.</i> | Colourless and transparent. | Neutral. |
| 2. <i>Borax.</i> | Large 6-sided prisms, flattened. Semi-transparent. | Weakly alkaline |
| 3. <i>Carbonate.</i> | Laminar crystals of rhombic shape; colourless and transparent. | Strongly alkaline |
| 4. <i>Nitrate.</i> | Obtuse rhombohedra; colourless. | Neutral. |
| 5. <i>Phosphate.</i> | Large oblique rhombic prisms terminating by four converging planes; transparent. | Faintly alkaline. |
| 6. <i>Sulphate.</i> | 6-sided oblique rhombic prisms; transparent. | Neutral. |
| 7. <i>Chloride.</i> | Small, white, crystalline grains; or transparent cubic crystals. | Neutral. |
| 8. <i>Tartarated Soda.</i> | Prisms, or halves of prisms, of right rhombic order; generally 8-sided. Large. Transparent. | Neutral. |

| TASTE. | SOLUBILITY. | CHANGES. |
|------------------------------|---|--|
| and bitter. | Very soluble in water. | Slowly efflorescent. Decomposed by heat, carbonate remaining. |
| | Water (1 in 22). Boiling Water (1 in 2). Glycerine (1 in 1), and this agent aids solution in water. Insoluble in rectified spirit. | Slightly efflorescent. Heat causes aqueous fusion, and the liquid cools to a transparent glass bead. |
| alkaline, and acid taste. | Water (1 in 2). Dilute acids, with effervescence. Insoluble in rectified spirit. | Effloresces and crumbles. Aqueous fusion with heat, and then dries up, losing 63 per cent. by weight. |
| ; and saline. | Water (1 in 2). | Slightly deliquescent. Deflagrates with heat. |
| ; mild. | Water (1 in 5). Insoluble in rectified spirit. | Efflorescent. Loses 63 per cent. of weight by heat. |
| saline, and r. | Water (1 in 3), and measures $3\frac{1}{2}$. Insoluble in rectified spirit. | Effloresces. Loses 55.9 per cent. of weight by heat. |
| lly salt or e. | Water (1 in $2\frac{3}{4}$). Slightly in rectified spirit; not in pure alcohol. | Should not deliquesce, but often does a little, from presence of impurities. |
| , and slightly r. | Water (1 in $1\frac{1}{2}$). Insoluble in rectified spirit. | Heated, leaves an alkaline residue = carbonate. |

E. Valerianate.—This salt has special characters:—

- a.* In dry white masses.
- b.* Has no alkaline reaction.
- c.* Entirely soluble in rectified spirit.
- d.* Gives out a powerful odour of valerian on adding sulphuric acid.

IMPURITIES.—The chief are as follows:—

a. Liquor Sodæ.—Carbonic acid; lime and magnesia; usually a trace of sulphate and chloride.

b. Carbonate and Bicarbonate.—Sulphate and chloride; usually contain a trace.

c. Chloride—Sulphate; magnesia.

QUANTITATIVE TESTS.—These may be considered on the same plan as in the case of potassium.

Grain measures
of Vol. solution
of oxalic acid.

a. Power of Neutralization.

- | | |
|---|----------|
| (i) Caustic Soda, 40 grains . . . | = 900 |
| (ii) Liquor Sodæ, 1 fl 3 or 458 grains | = 470 |
| (iii) Bicarbonate, 84 grains, exposed to red heat, leave 53 grains = carbonate. | } = 1000 |
| (iv) Carbonate, 143 grains | |
| (v) Dried Carbonate, 53 grains | } = 960 |
| (vii) Tartarated Soda, 141 grains, heated to redness till gases cease to escape, leave alkaline residue = carbonate. | |
| | } = 1000 |

b. Special Tests.—Only one salt calls for notice in this connection.

Sulphate.—100 grains dissolved in distilled water acidulated with hydrochloric acid, give with solution of chloride of barium a white precipitate, which, when washed and dried, weighs 72.2 grains.

PHARMACY—I. *Officinal Preparations.* The preparations of sodium-compounds not considered elsewhere are:—

a. *Liquor Sodæ Effervescens* { Bicarbonate of soda, gr. 30.
Water, O i. } Dissolve, filter, and pass in pure CO_2 by pressure of 7 atmospheres.

b. *Trochisci Sodæ Bicarbonatis*, made in the ordinary way = 1 gr. in each lozenge.

c. *Glycerinum Boracis*. Colourless; keeps well. { Powdered borax, 1
Glycerine, 4 } Rub well together until dissolved.

d. *Mel Boracis* { Finely powdered borax, 1
Clarified honey, 7 } Mix.

2. The other preparations in making which the sodium-compounds are used, are as follows:—

a. *Acetate*.—Is merely used in making Glacial Acetic Acid, Ferri Arsenias, Ferri Phosphas, and Syrupus Ferri Phosphatis.

b. *Nitrate*.—Used only to prepare Sodæ Arsenias.

c. *Liquor Sodæ*.—Used in making Sulphurated Antimony.

d. *Valerianate*.—Used in making Valerianate of Zinc.

3. *Incompatibles*.—These merely include any drugs which the student's knowledge of chemistry teaches him are chemically incompatible with sodium, or with the acids contained in the several salts.

ACTION.—The actions of the sodium-compounds which are employed medicinally, excluding those having special actions, may be thus indicated:—

1. *Caustic Soda*.—Caustic; less powerful than caustic potash.

2. *Liquor Sodæ*.—Caustic. Antacid. Dose.— $3\frac{1}{2}$ to 1.

3. *Carbonates*.—External antacid. Carbonate slightly caustic. Saturated solution of carbonate

used for burns. Internally, antacid; antilithic; stimulant to gastric secretion; alterative. *Doses*.—Carbonate, gr. 3 to 10. Bicarbonate (usually given internally) gr. 10 to 30. Liquor Sodæ Effervescens, $\frac{3}{4}$ 10. Trochisci Sodæ Bicarbonatis, 1 to 6.

4. *Acetate*.—Mild diuretic; seldom used.

5. *Borax*.—Local sedative. Diuretic. Antacid. Emmenagogue. *Dose*.—gr. 10 to 60.

- | | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 6. <i>Phosphate</i> . <i>Dose</i> .— $3\frac{1}{2}$ to $\frac{3}{4}$ 1. | } Diuretic in smaller doses. |
| 7. <i>Sulphate</i> . <i>Dose</i> .— $3\frac{1}{2}$ to $\frac{3}{4}$ 1. | |
| 8. <i>Tartarated Soda</i> . <i>Dose</i> .— $3\frac{1}{2}$ to $\frac{3}{4}$ $\frac{1}{2}$ | } Purgative in larger doses. |
| 9. <i>Citro-Tartrate</i> . <i>Dose</i> .—3 1 to $\frac{3}{4}$ $\frac{1}{2}$ | |

10. *Valerianate*.—Nervine tonic and Antispasmodic; seldom used. *Dose*.—gr. 1 to 5.

LITHIUM.

The officinal preparations of lithium are only three in number, and the principal facts required to be known about them may be conveniently given in a tabular form.

| NAME. | PREPARATION. | PROPERTIES. |
|--|---|---|
| 1. <i>Lithiæ Carbonas</i> — <i>Carbonate of Lithia</i> = Li_2CO_3 . | By the action of carbonate of ammonia on sulphate or chloride of lithium . The chloride is made by dissolving native hydrate in HCl. | a. White powder or minute crystalline grains. b. Alkaline reaction. c. Soluble in water (1 in 100); solubility increased by CO_2 . Insoluble in alcohol. |
| 2. <i>Lithiæ Citras</i> — <i>Citrate of Lithia</i> = $\text{Li}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O}_7$. | a. Dissolve by heat, Carbonate of Lithia , gr. 50 in { Citric Acid , gr. 90 (100 Squire). Water , $\frac{3}{4}$ l. b. Evaporate to a viscid liquid. c. Dry at 240° , and pulverise. | a. White amorphous powder. b. Deliquescent. } B.P. c. Soluble in water (1 in $2\frac{1}{2}$). (Squire says is crystalline, and not deliquescent). |
| 3. <i>Liquor Lithiæ Effervescens</i> — <i>Lithia Water</i> . | Like potash and soda water. Contains gr. 10 of carbonate in O 1. | A clear, colourless liquid. |

QUANTITATIVE TESTS AND IMPURITIES.

1. *Lithiæ Carbonas*—Ten grains, neutralized with H_2SO_4 , and heated to redness = 14·86 grains, which when redissolved in distilled water, yield no precipitate with oxalate of ammonia or solution of lime = absence of lime, magnesia, and alumina.

2. *Lithiæ Citras*—Twenty grains, burned at a low red heat, with free access of air, leave 10·6 grains = carbonate.

ACTION.—Antacid. Diuretic. Antilithic. Solvent of uric acid.

Dose.—Carbonate, gr. 3 to 6; Citrate, gr. 5 to 10; Liquor Lithiæ Effervescens, $\frac{3}{4}$ 5 to 10.

ALUMINIUM.

Only certain forms of *Alum* are officinal, and they may be considered in a tabular arrangement.

| NAME. | SOURCE AND PREPARATION. | PROPERTIES. |
|--|--|--|
| 1. <i>Alumen</i> , <i>Alum</i> , <i>Sulphate of Alumina</i> and <i>Ammonia</i> = $\text{NH}_4\text{Al}(\text{SO}_4)_2 \cdot 12\text{H}_2\text{O}$. | From <i>alum-schist</i> or <i>ore</i> .—A mixture of alumina with ferric sulphide. <i>a.</i> Roast the schist, and then expose to the air. <i>c.</i> Sulphuric anhydride and ferrous sulphide are formed. The former combines with the alumina = $\text{Al}_2(\text{SO}_4)_3$; the latter is changed to ferrous sulphate. <i>b.</i> Lixivate, by which the sulphates are dissolved out; and evaporate, in order to crystallize out the ferrous sulphate. <i>c.</i> Add a concentrated solution of sulphate of ammonia to the remaining liquid; and crystallize the alum. Purify by re-solution and re-crystallization. | <i>a.</i> Crystalline masses, with faces of regular octahedron. <i>b.</i> Colourless and transparent. <i>c.</i> Acid, sweet, and astringent taste. <i>d.</i> Soluble in water (1 in 10); boiling water (10 in 8); glycerine (1 in 4). Insoluble in rectified or proof spirit. <i>e.</i> Strongly acid reaction. <i>f.</i> Slightly efflorescent in dry air. <i>g.</i> Melts with heat in its own water of crystallization, which is afterwards driven off. Strongly heated, is decomposed, and loses its acid. <i>h.</i> Impurity = iron. <i>i.</i> Forms insoluble compounds with albumin, fibrin, casein, and gelatin. |
| 2. <i>Alumen Exsiccatum</i> — <i>Dried or Burnt Alum</i> = Alum deprived of its water of crystallization = 47 per cent. by weight. | Heat alum in a porcelain capsule till it liquefies; raise the heat not above 400° , and continue till aqueous vapour ceases to be disengaged. Reduce the residue to powder. | <i>a.</i> A white spongy mass, or powder. <i>b.</i> Insoluble in water; but takes up water of crystallization slowly, with evolution of heat. |

ACTION.—Powerful astringent. Purgative and emetic in large doses. Dried alum is slightly escharotic, and only used externally. Alum is given for hooping-cough. *Dose.*—Gr. 10 to 20 or more.

CALCIUM.

GENERAL SUMMARY.—The officinal calcium-compounds may be conveniently arranged thus:—

1. **Forms of Lime.**
 - a. *Calx*—Quicklime = CaO .
 - b. *Calcis Hydras*—Slaked Lime = CaH_2O_2 .
2. **Solutions of Lime.**
 - a. *Liquor Calcis*—Lime-water.—A solution of slaked lime in water = about gr. $\frac{1}{2}$ in $\frac{3}{4}$ j.
 - b. *Liquor Calcis Saccharatus*.—A saccharine solution of lime = 711 grains in $\frac{3}{4}$ j.
3. **Forms of Carbonate** = CaCO_3 .
 - a. *Creta*—Chalk.
 - b. *Creta Præparata*—Prepared chalk.
 - c. *Calcis Carbonas Præcipitata*.—Precipitated Carbonate of Lime.
4. **Other Salts.**
 - a. *Calx Chlorata* (see CHLORINE).
 - b. *Calcii Chloridum*—Chloride of Calcium = CaCl_2 .
 - c. *Calcis Hypophosphis* = $\text{Ca}_2\text{PH}_2\text{O}_2$ (see PHOSPHORUS).
 - d. *Calcis Phosphas*—Phosphate of Lime. = $\text{Ca}_3\text{P}_2\text{O}_8$.
5. **Special Officinal Preparations.**
 - a. *Mistura Cretæ*—Chalk Mixture.
 - b. *Pulvis Cretæ Aromaticus*.
 - c. *Pulvis Cretæ Aromaticus cum Opio*.
 - d. *Hydrargyrum cum Cretâ*—Grey Powder (see MERCURY).
 - e. *Linimentum Calcis*.
 - f. *Liquor Calcis Chloratæ* (see CHLORINE).

6. **Test-solutions in Appendix.** { *a. Solution of Chloride of Calcium = $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to $\frac{3}{4}$ 10.*
b. Saturated Solution of the same.

SOURCE AND PREPARATION.—The sources of the preparations of calcium may be thus tabulated :—

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| A. Native. | <i>Creta—Chalk.</i> |
| B. From Chalk. | { 1. <i>Calx—Lime.</i> 2. <i>Creta Præparata, or Prepared Chalk.</i> 3. <i>Calcii Chloridum.</i> |
| C. From Lime. | <i>Calcis Hydras—Slaked Lime.</i> |
| D. From <i>Calcic Hydrate.</i> | { 1. <i>Calx Chlorata (see CHLORINE).</i> 2. <i>Calcis Hypophosphis (see PHOSPHORUS).</i> 3. <i>Liquor Calcis—Lime-Water.</i> 4. <i>Liquor Calcis Saccharatus.</i> |
| E. From Chloride. | <i>Calcis Carbonas Præcipitata.</i> |
| F. Special, from <i>Bone-Ash.</i> | { <i>Calcis Phosphas.</i> |

The actual preparation of these compounds may be discussed as follows :—

A. Lime and its Solutions.

1. *Lime*.—By calcining **chalk**, the CO_2 being thus expelled— $\text{CaCO}_3 = \text{CaO} + \text{CO}_2$.

2. *Slaked Lime*.—Act upon **lime** by **water** in a metal vessel. When vapour ceases to be disengaged, set aside to cool; then sift and preserve in well-stoppered bottles. Should be recently prepared.

3. *Liquor Calcis*.—Saturate **distilled water** with **slaked lime**. Decant or draw off with a syphon when using the solution.

4. *Liquor Calcis Saccharatus.*

Digest for some hours, with occasional agitation, and strain

| | |
|---|---------------------|
| { | Slaked lime, 1 |
| | Refined sugar, 2 |
| | Distilled water, 20 |

B. Forms of Carbonate.

1. *Chalk*.—This is merely impure native carbonate of lime.

2. *Creta Præparata*.—**Chalk** is reduced to fine powder, elutriated, and dried in small cones.

3. *Calcis Carbonas Præcipitata.*

a. Mix solutions in boiling water of

| | | |
|---------------------------|------------------|--------------------|
| Calcium chloride, | $\frac{3}{3} 5$ | } Each in 2 pints. |
| Carbonate of soda, | $\frac{3}{3} 13$ | |

b. Collect the precipitate on a calico filter; wash away the NaCl with boiling water; and dry at 212° .

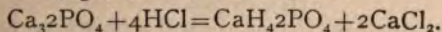
C. Other Salts.

1. *Chloride*.—*a*. Neutralize **chalk** with **hydrochloric acid**, adding a little of the **solution of chlorinated lime** and **slaked lime**, to peroxidize and precipitate any iron present.

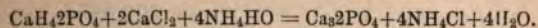
b. Filter; evaporate the liquid until it is solid; and dry at about 400°.

2. *Phosphate*. This process is rather complicated.

a. Dissolve bone-ash, $\frac{3}{4}$ in $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Hydrochloric acid, } 36 \\ \text{Water, } 01. \end{array} \right.$



b. Filter; add **water**=O I, and then **solution of ammonia**, until the mixture is alkaline.



c. Wash the precipitate with boiling water, to remove NH_4Cl ; dry not above 212° .

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES.—This part of the subject may be considered thus:—

1. **Calx—Lime.**

- a. Hard, compact, flaky masses.
- b. Whitish, or white when pure.
- c. When well sprinkled with water, rapidly absorbs it, cracks, splits up, evolves much heat, and crumbles to powder.
- d. Solubility in $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{at } 32^{\circ} = 13.25 \text{ grains.} \\ \text{3 20 of } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{at } 60^{\circ} = 11.2 \text{ } \\ \text{water.} \end{array} \right. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{at } 212^{\circ} = 6.7 \text{ } \end{array} \right. \end{array} \right.$

2. **Calcis Hydras—Slaked Lime.**

- a. White, bulky powder.
- b. Strongly alkaline reaction.
- c. Caustic taste.
- d. Soluble in water (1 in 900); much more soluble in glycerine, and with sugar.

3. **Solutions of Lime.**

- a. Colourless, but the saccharated solution is liable to become brownish by keeping.
- b. Alkaline reaction.
- c. Readily absorb CO_2 from the air, and become covered with a film of carbonate of lime.

4. **Carbonates.**

- a. *Appearance* $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{(i) Chalk—irregular whitish masses.} \\ \text{(ii) Prepared Chalk—white cone-shaped masses, or in powder—minute crystals.} \\ \text{(iii) Precipitated Carbonate—white crystalline powder.} \end{array} \right.$

- b. Insoluble in water; soluble in dilute acids, with effervescence.

5. **Chloride.**

- a. Agglutinated masses.
- b. White; semi-transparent.
- c. Very deliquescent; rapidly absorbs water; a powerful desiccating agent.
- d. Soluble in water (1 in 2), and can be crystallized in prisms; in rectified spirit (1 in 4).
- e. Bitter, acrid, and saline taste.

6. **Phosphate.**

- a. Very light, white, amorphous powder.
- b. Insoluble in water; soluble in HCl, without effervescence.

IMPURITIES.—As given in the B.P., these are :—

- 1. *Lime*—Carbonate and phosphate.
- 2. *Slaked lime*—Carbonate.
- 3. *Carbonates*—Phosphate and chloride.
- 4. *Chloride*—Hypochlorite or chlorine, evolved on addition of HCl.
- 5. *Phosphate*—Carbonate.
- 6. *Solutions of lime*—Carbonate.

QUANTITATIVE TESTS.—These only refer to the power of Neutralization.

- | | |
|---|-----------------|
| 1. Liquor Calcis, $\frac{3}{4}$ 10 | = at least 200. |
| 2. Liquor Calcis } Saccharatus } $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 or 460.2 grs. | |
- Grain-measures
of Vol. sol. of
oxalic acid.

PHARMACY.—I. *Official Preparations.*—Those necessary to notice here are :—

- a. *Linimentum Calcis* { Solution of lime, 1 } Mix.
= a thickish cream { Olive oil, 1 }
- b. *Mistura Cretæ* { Prepared chalk, 1 } Mix
Dose— $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 2. { Gum acacia, 1 } by tri-
{ Syrup, 2 } tura-
{ Cinnamon Water, 30 } tion.

- c. *Pulvis Cretæ Aromaticus*. { Prepared chalk, 11
Cinnamon, 4
Nutmeg, 3
Saffron, 3
Cloves, $1\frac{1}{2}$
Cardamoms, 1
Refined sugar, 25 } Mix in powders.
= dark fawn colour.
Chalk=1 in 4 nearly.
Dose—gr. 15 to 60.
- d. *Pulvis Cretæ Aromaticus cum Opio*. { Aromatic Powder
of chalk, 39
Powdered opium, 1 } Mix, and pass through a sieve.
= dark fawn colour.
Dose—gr. 10 to 40.

2. Calcium compounds are employed in pharmacy as follows:—

- a. *Slaked lime* used in making chlorate of potash.
 - b. *Chalk* used in making CO_2 .
 - c. *Precipitated carbonate* contained in Trochisci Bismuthi.
 - d. *Prepared chalk* contained in Hydrargyrum cum Cretâ.
 - e. *Phosphate* contained in Pulvis Antimonialis.
 - f. *Chloride of calcium* is frequently employed as a desiccating agent.
3. *Incompatibles*.—Those calling for notice are:—
- a. *Calcic hydrate*.—Mineral and vegetable acids; alkaline and metallic salts; tartar emetic.
 - b. *Carbonates*.—Acids; Sulphates.

ACTION.—The action of the preparations of calcium used therapeutically, and not noticed elsewhere, are easily summarized thus:—

1. *Solution of lime*.—Antacid. Gastric sedative. Astringent. Supplies lime to system. *Linimentum Calcis* is used as an application to burns and scalds.

Dose—of *Liquor*, $3\frac{1}{2}$ to 4; of *Liquor Saccharatus*, $\text{m}15$ to 60.

2. *Carbonates*.—Antacid. Astringent, especially *Creta Præparata*. Used externally to burns. *Dose*—gr. 1 to 60 or more (see OFFICIAL PREPARATIONS).

3. *Phosphate*.—Alterative. Special nutrient to bones, in rickets, &c. *Dose*—gr. 10 to 40.

CERIUM.

There is only one officinal compound of this metal, namely:—

Cerii Oxalas or *Oxalate of Cerium* = $\text{CeC}_2\text{O}_4, 3\text{H}_2\text{O}$.

PREPARATION.—Precipitate the **chloride** or other soluble salt of **cerium** by **oxalate of ammonia**.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES:—

1. A white granular powder.
2. Insoluble in water.
3. Decomposed by dull-red heat to a reddish-brown powder = CeO and CeO_2 . 10 grains incinerated lose 5.2 grains in weight.

ACTION.—Gastric sedative.

Dose—gr. 1 to 2.

MAGNESIUM.

GENERAL SUMMARY.—The preparations of magnesium in the B.P. are easily remembered thus:—

1. **Forms of Magnesia** = $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} a. \text{ Magnesia.} \\ b. \text{ Magnesia Levis—Light Magnesia.} \end{array} \right.$
 MgO.

2. **Forms of Carbonate** = $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} a. \text{ Magnesiae Carbonas—Carbonate of Magnesia.} \\ b. \text{ Magnesiae Carbonas Levis—Light Carbonate of Magnesia.} \end{array} \right.$
 $(\text{MgCO}_3)_3\text{MgO, } 5\text{H}_2\text{O.}$

3. **Magnesiae Sulphas**—Sulphate of Magnesia,
Epsom Salts = $\text{MgSO}_4, 7\text{H}_2\text{O.}$
a. Enema Magnesiae Sulphatis.

4. **Solutions.** $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} a. \text{ Liquor Magnesiae Carbonatis—Fluid Magnesia.—A solution of acid carbonate of magnesia = 13 grains of carbonate, or 5 grains of magnesia in } \frac{3}{4} \text{ i.} \\ b. \text{ Liquor Magnesiae Citratis—Limonade Purgative.—Solution of citrate of magnesia.} \end{array} \right.$

SOURCES AND PREPARATION.—The sources of the magnesium-compounds may be thus tabulated:—

1. From *Magnesian Lime-stone* or *Dolomite* = $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Carbonate of lime and} \\ \text{magnesia.} \end{array} \right\} \text{ Sulphate.}$

2. From *Sulphate.* $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{ Carbonate.} \\ 2. \text{ Light Carbonate.} \\ 3. \text{ Liquor Magnesiae Carbonatis.} \end{array} \right.$

3. From *Carbonates*. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{ Magnesia.} \\ 2. \text{ Light Magnesia.} \\ 3. \text{ Liquor Magnesiae Ci-} \\ \text{tratis.} \end{array} \right.$

Their actual preparation is as follows:—

1. **Sulphate**.—Act upon **magnesian lime-stone** by **sulphuric acid**; filter from the insoluble calcic sulphate; evaporate to crystallization.

2. **Carbonates**.—*a*. The substances used in preparing the two carbonates are the same in each case, namely:— $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Sulphate of magnesia, } \frac{3}{4} \text{ 10.} \\ \text{Carbonate of soda, } \frac{3}{4} \text{ 12.} \end{array} \right.$

There are important differences however, in the earlier part of the process, and they may be thus contrasted:—

| CARBONATE. | LIGHT CARBONATE. |
|---|--|
| (i). Mix two <i>boiling</i> and <i>strong</i> solutions, each salt having been previously dissolved in 1 pint of boiling water. | (i). Mix two <i>cold</i> and <i>much diluted</i> solutions, each salt having been previously dissolved in half a gallon of cold water. |
| (ii). Evaporate to dryness in a sand-bath; and digest with boiling water (O 2) for half an hour. | (ii). Boil for 15 minutes in a porcelain dish. |

b. After this, in each case precipitate on a calico filter; wash from sulphate of soda; and dry not above 212° , else the CO_2 will be driven off.

3. **Magnesias**.—The two forms of magnesia are prepared from their respective **carbonates**, by exposing to a low red heat in a crucible, until a small quantity, *taken from the centre*, and cooled, does not effervesce with dilute sulphuric acid, showing that all the CO_2 has been driven off.

4. **Liquor Magnesiae Carbonatis.**

- a. Add { **Carbonate of soda**, $\bar{3} 2\frac{1}{2}$ } to
 { **Water**, $O \frac{1}{2}$ }
 { **Sulphate of magnesia**, $\bar{3} 2$ }
 { **Water**, $O \frac{1}{2}$, heated to boiling point.
- b. Boil until CO_2 is no longer evolved.
- c. Collect and wash the precipitated carbonate.
- d. Mix with **water** $O 1$, and saturate with CO_2 gas under slight pressure.
- e. Filter after 24 hours, and again pass in CO_2 gas.

5. **Liquor Magnesiae Citratis.**

- a. Dissolve **carbonate** { **Citric acid**, gr. 200
of magnesia, gr. 100, in { **Water**, $\bar{3} 2$.
- b. Filter into a strong half-pint bottle.
- c. Add { **Syrup of Lemons**, $\bar{3} \frac{1}{2}$ }
 { **Water**, nearly to fill the bottle.
- d. Put in crystals of **bicarbonate of potash**, gr. 40; secure the cork with a wire; and shake until dissolved.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES.—These may be readily summed up thus:—

1. **Magnesias and Carbonates.**

- a. All are apparently white powders, but the *carbonate* is minutely granular, and the *light carbonate* contains slender prisms intermixed.
- b. The *light* forms are much the more bulky, in the case of the *magnesias* the volumes corresponding to similar weights being $= 3\frac{1}{2}$ to 1.
- c. Very sparingly soluble in water, more in *cold* than in *boiling* water.
- d. Soluble in dilute acids, the carbonates with effervescence.
- e. The *magnesias*, when moistened, are alkaline to test-paper.

2. Sulphate.

- a. Minute crystals=rhombic prisms.
- b. Colourless and transparent.
- c. Soluble in water (10 in 13), and the solution is condensed to 18. Insoluble in alcohol.
- d. Strongly bitter and unpleasant taste.
- e. Slowly effervesces when exposed to the air.

3. Liquores.—Clear and colourless solutions.

IMPURITIES.—As given in the B.P., these are:—

- 1. *Magnesia*—Lime; sulphate; CO_2 .
- 2. *Carbonate*—Lime; sulphate.
- 3. *Sulphate*—Lime; iron.

QUANTITATIVE TESTS.

1. *Carbonates*.—50 grains calcined at a red heat are reduced to 22 grains.

2. *Sulphate*.—The precipitate obtained by adding carbonate of soda to boiling solution of 100 grains, when well-washed, dried, and heated to redness=16.26 grains.

PHARMACY—I. *Officinal Preparation*:—

Enema Magnesie Sulphatis—

Dissolve { Sulphate of magnesia, $\frac{3}{4}$ i
 Mucilage of starch, $\frac{3}{4}$ i5
 Add Olive oil = $\frac{3}{4}$ i, and mix.

2. The other preparations in which the compounds of magnesium are contained are as follows:—

a. *Light magnesia* contained in Pulvis Rhei Compositus.

b. *Sulphate* { (i). Mistura Sennæ Composita.
 (ii). Test-Solution of Ammonio-sulphate of Magnesia in the Appendix.

3. *Incompatibles*.—Those requiring notice include:—

a. *Magnesia*.—Acids.

b. *Sulphate*.—Lime-water; alkaline carbonates; acetate of lead; nitrate of silver.

ACTION.—1. The *magnesias* and their *carbonates* are antacid.

2. All the preparations of magnesia are more or less aperient, the *sulphate* being a valuable saline aperient.

Doses.—Of the *Magnesias* and *Carbonates*, as antacids, gr. 10 to 20; as aperients, gr. 30 to 60. Of *Sulphate*, $\frac{3}{4}$ to 4. Of *Liquor Magnesie Carbonatis*, $\frac{3}{4}$ to 2. Of *Liquor Magnesie Citratis*, $\frac{3}{4}$ to 10.

ANTIMONIUM—ANTIMONY.

GENERAL SUMMARY.—The B.P. preparations containing antimony are:—

1. **Antimonium Nigrum—Black Antimony** = **Antimonious Sulphide**, Sb_2S_3 .
2. **Antimonium Sulphuratum—Sulphurated Antimony.**—A mixture of SbS_3 with a variable amount of *antimonious oxide*, Sb_2O_3 , generally about 12 per cent.
3. **Antimonii Oxidum—Oxide of Antimony** = Sb_2O_3 .
4. **Antimonium Tartaratum — Tartarated Antimony** or **Potassio-tartrate of Antimony—Tartar Emetic** = $\text{K}(\text{SbO})\text{C}_4\text{H}_4\text{O}_6, \text{H}_2\text{O}$.
5. **Liquor Antimonii Chloridi**—“Butter of Antimony.”—A solution of *Antimonious Chloride* (SbCl_3) in *Hydrochloric acid*.

- | | | |
|--|---|---|
| 6. Special Official Preparations. | { | a. <i>Pulvis Antimonialis</i> —Antimonial powder. A modification of James's powder. |
| | | b. <i>Vinum Antimoniale</i> —Antimonial wine. |
| | | c. <i>Unguentum Antimonii Tartarati</i> —Ointment of Tartarated Antimony. |

SOURCES AND PREPARATION.—The following table indicates the sources of the compounds of antimony:—

1. *Native*.—Antimonium Nigrum.
2. From $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} a. \text{Antimonium Sulphuratum.} \\ b. \text{Liquor Antimonii Chloridi.} \end{array} \right.$
Black Sulphide.
3. From *Liquor Antimonii Chloridi*.—Antimonii Oxidum.
4. From the *Oxide*.—Antimonium Tartaratum.

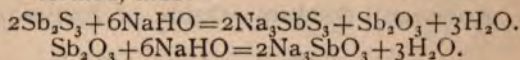
Their actual preparation is as follows :—

1. **Black Antimony.**—Fuse the **native sulphide**, to purify from siliceous matter; and reduce to fine powder.

2. **Sulphurated Antimony.**

a. Boil for two hours, {
with frequent stir-
ring, adding water { **Black antimony**, $\frac{3}{10}$.
occasionally { **Solution of soda**, $O4\frac{1}{2}$.

A double sulphide, and a double oxide are formed, thus :—

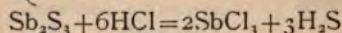


b. Strain through calico, and *before it cools* add gradually **diluted sulphuric acid** to slight excess. Sulphate of sodium is formed, and sulphurated antimony is precipitated.

c. Collect on a calico-filter; wash with water from sulphate of sodium; dry under 212° .

3. **Liquor Antimonii Chloridi.**

Dissolve by {
the aid of { **Black antimony**, $\text{lb } 1$
heat { **Hydrochloric acid**, $O4$. } Boil
down to
2 pints.



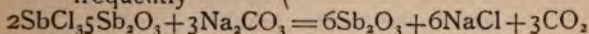
The H_2S gas escapes through a flue.

4. **Oxide of Antimony.**

a. Mix { **Liquor antimonii chloridi**, $\frac{3}{16}$.
thoroughly { **Distilled water**, $C 2$.

b. Repeat a series of processes of allowing the precipitate to subside; removing the liquid by a syphon; adding water; agitating; and again allowing to subside. *Oxychloride of Antimony*, $2SbCl_3, 5Sb_2O_3$, is thus formed.

- c. Add, and leave in {
 contact for half { **Carbonate of soda**, $\frac{3}{2}$ 6.
 an hour, stirring { **Distilled Water**, O 2.
 frequently



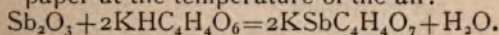
- d. Collect the deposit of oxide of antimony on a calico filter; wash away the chloride of sodium with boiling distilled water; and dry under 212° .

5. **Tartarated Antimony—Tartar Emetic.**

- a. Make a { **Oxide of antimony**, $\frac{3}{2}$ 5 } Set aside
 paste with { **Finely-powdered cream** } for 24
 water of { **of tartar**, $\frac{3}{2}$ 6. } hours.

- b. Add **water**=O 2, and boil for a quarter of an hour, stirring frequently.

- c. Filter; set aside to crystallize; evaporate for further crystals; and dry on filtering paper at the temperature of the air.



CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES.—The properties of the preparations of antimony may be thus described:—

1. **Black Antimony.**

- a. A greyish-black, crystalline powder.
 b. Insoluble in water; soluble almost entirely in boiling HCl, giving off H_2S .
 c. Fuses below red heat.

2. **Sulphurated Antimony.**

- a. A bright orange or golden-red powder.
 b. Odourless; slight taste.
 c. Insoluble in water or spirit; readily soluble in caustic soda; also in HCl, evolving H_2S , a little sulphur being deposited.
 d. Partially decomposed on exposure to light and air, with separation of sulphur.
 e. Burns with a greenish-blue flame, giving off SO_2 , and a greyish oxide remains.

3. Oxide of Antimony.

- a. A greyish-white powder.
- b. Insoluble in water or spirit; soluble in hydrochloric, acetic, and tartaric acids; and in the caustic alkalies.
- c. The solution in HCl, when dropped into water, gives a white precipitate—*Oxychloride of antimony*.
- d. Fusible at a low red heat.

4. Tartarated Antimony.

- a. Crystalline=rhombic octahedra, with triangular facets.
- b. Colourless and transparent.
- c. Slight metallic taste.
- d. Efflorescent, and becomes opaque on exposure.
- e. Soluble in cold water (1 in 15), boiling water (1 in 2), partially in proof spirit, not in alcohol.
- f. The aqueous solution has an acid reaction, and decomposes readily, with the formation of algæ.
- g. Decrepitates and then decomposed by heat, becoming blackened.

5. Liquor Antimonii Chloridi.

- a. A yellowish-red heavy liquid.
- b. Gives a white precipitate of oxychloride when dropped into water.
- c. Destructive to organic tissues.

IMPURITIES.—The *oxide of antimony* is apt to contain arsenic. Higher oxides may also be present, which do not dissolve when boiled with excess of acid tartrate of potash.

QUANTITATIVE TESTS.

1. *Sulphurated Antimony*.—60 grains dissolved in HCl, and dropped into water, give a white precipitate, which, when washed and dried, weighs about 53 grains.

2. *Tartarated Antimony*.—20 grains dissolve without residue in fl $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 of distilled water at 60°, and the solution gives with H₂S an orange precipitate, which, when washed and dried at 212°, weighs 9·91 grains.

3. *Liquor Antimonii Chloridi*.—1 fluid drachm mixed with a solution of tartaric acid ($\frac{3}{4}$ in $\frac{3}{4}$ 4 of water) forms a clear solution, which, if treated with H₂S, gives an orange precipitate, weighing, when washed and dried at 212°, at least 22 grains.

PHARMACY.—1. *Officinal Preparations* :—

a. *Pulvis Antimonialis*. { Oxide of antimony, 1 } Mix.
Dose—gr. 2 to 6. { Phosphate of lime, 2. }

b. *Unguentum Antimonii Tartarati*. { Tartarated antimony, $\frac{3}{4}$ } Mix.
{ Simple ointment, $\frac{3}{4}$ 1. }

c. *Vinum Antimoniale*. { Tartarated antimony, gr. 40 }
{ Sherry wine, O 1. }

2. *Antimonium Sulphuratum* is contained in *Compound Calomel Pill* (Plummer's Pill).

3. *Incompatibles*.—These are important in the case of *Tartar Emetic*, the chief being alkalies; lead-salts; gallic and tannic acids; and vegetable astringents generally.

ACTION.—1. *Liquor Antimonii Chloridi*.—A powerful caustic; not used internally.

2. *Oxide and Sulphurated Antimony*.—Diaphoretic. Alterative.

3. *Tartar Emetic*.—External pustulant. Diaphoretic. Sedative expectorant. Depressant. Emetic.

Doses.—Of *Oxide*, gr. 1 to 3. Of *Sulphurated Antimony*, gr. 1 to 5. Of *Tartar Emetic*, as diaphoretic or expectorant, gr. $\frac{1}{10}$ to $\frac{1}{6}$; as depressant, gr. $\frac{1}{4}$ to 1; as emetic, gr. 1 to 3; *Vinum Antimoniale* in proportion.

ARGENTUM—SILVER.

There are only two compounds of silver in the body of the B.P., and they may be described thus:—

| NAME. | SOURCE AND PREPARATION. | PROPERTIES AND TESTS. |
|---|--|---|
| 1. <i>Argentum Nitras</i> — <i>Nitrate of Silver</i> — <i>Lunar Caustic</i> = AgNO_3 . | <p>a. Add { Nitric acid, 32½ { Water, 55 to refined silver, 33, and dissolve with gentle heat.</p> <p>b. <i>Decant</i>; evaporate the liquid; and set aside to crystallize.</p> <p>c. Drain and dry the crystals by exposure to air, avoiding contact with organic substances.</p> <p>d. Fuse the crystals, and run the liquid into moulds.</p> | <p>a. In tabular right rhombic prisms, or cylindrical rods.</p> <p>b. Colourless or white.</p> <p>c. Soluble in water (gr. 100 in m50); also in rectified spirit.</p> <p>d. Darkens on exposure to light, and stains the neck of the containing bottle.</p> <p>e. 10 grains with water and HCl yield a precipitate of chloride of silver = 8.44 grains, when thoroughly washed and dried. The filtrate should leave no residue on evaporation = absence of Nitrate of Potash or Soda.</p> |
| 2. <i>Argentum Oxidum</i> — <i>Oxide of Silver</i> = Ag_2O . | <p>a. Pour { Nitrate of silver, 31 { Water, 34 into Liquor calcis, O 3½</p> <p>b. Shake well, and set aside to allow the deposit to settle.</p> <p>c. <i>Draw off</i> the fluid; collect the deposit on a filter; wash; and dry under 212°.</p> | <p>a. An olive-brown or black powder.</p> <p>b. Insoluble in water; slightly in ammonia; completely in nitric acid.</p> <p>c. Decomposes in contact with organic matters.</p> <p>d. Heated to redness, 116 grains leave 108 of pure silver.</p> |

Test-Solutions in Appendix.

1. *Volumetric Solution of Nitrate of Silver* = 17 grains in 1000 grain-measures.

2. *Solution of* { Nitrate of Silver, $\frac{3}{4}$.
Ammonio-Nitrate { Solution of Ammonia, $\frac{3}{2}$.
of Silver. { Water, $\frac{3}{10}$.

INCOMPATIBLES.—The incompatibles of *nitrate of silver* include alkalies and their carbonates; chlorides; acids (except nitric and acetic); and iodide of potassium; solutions of arsenic; and astringent infusions. The *oxide* is liable to explode when prescribed with creosote or chlorides in pill, and before mixing must be diffused through some simple powder.

ACTION.—*Nitrate of silver* is a local caustic, vesicant, stimulant, or astringent, according to its strength and mode of application. Internally, both *nitrate* and *oxide* are astringent, and nervine tonic. The nitrate is liable to produce a dark line on the gums, followed by discolouration of the skin.

Dose.—Of *Nitrate*, gr. $\frac{1}{6}$ to $\frac{1}{3}$, or more; of *Oxide* gr. $\frac{1}{2}$ to 2 in pill.

ARSENICUM—ARSENIC.

GENERAL SUMMARY. — The B.P. preparations which contain arsenic may be conveniently remembered thus :—

1. **Acidum Arseniosum—Arsenious Acid or White Arsenic** = As_2O_3 .

2. **Salts.**

- { a. *Ferri Arsenias*—*Arseniate of Iron*
= $\text{Fe}_3\text{O}_2 (\text{AsO}_4)$. This salt is usually a mixture of Ferrous and Ferric Arseniate.
b. *Sodæ Arsenias*—*Arseniate of Soda*
= $\text{Na}_2\text{HAsO}_4, 7\text{H}_2\text{O}$.

3. **Liquores or Solutions.**

The first two solutions contain gr. 4 of arsenic in fl $\frac{3}{4}$ i; the last gr. 4 of arseniate of soda in fl $\frac{3}{4}$ i, being about half the strength.

- { a. *Liquor Arsenicalis*—*Fowler's Solution*. A coloured solution of arsenious acid in water, aided by carbonate of potash, with some arseniate of potash.
b. *Liquor Arsenici Hydrochloricus*.—A diluted solution of arsenic trichloride = AsCl_3 . Similar to *De Valangin's solution*, but about three times stronger.
c. *Liquor Sodæ Arseniatis*.—A solution of *Arseniate of Soda*.

SOURCES AND PREPARATION.—This part of the subject may be best considered according to the following plan :—

1. From *Natural Arseniurets*.—Arsenious Acid.

2. From *Arsenious Acid*. { a. *Liquor Arsenicalis*.
b. *Liquor Arsenici Hydrochloricus*.
c. *Sodæ Arsenias*.

3. From *Sodæ Arsenias*. { a. *Liquor Sodæ Arseniatis*.
b. *Ferri Arsenias*.

The actual preparation of these compounds is as follows:—

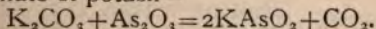
1. **Arsenious Acid—White Arsenic.**

- a.* By roasting natural arseniurets, especially arsenical cobalt and mispickel (FeSAs), previous to smelting, the arsenious acid which is formed being collected in chambers through which the flues pass.
- b.* It is purified by sublimation and re-sublimation, heating it in a porcelain capsule, covered with a glass flask filled with cold water. The vapour of arsenious acid condenses on the bottom of the flask.

2. **Liquor Arsenicalis—Fowler's Solution.**

- a.* Dissolve by the aid of heat { **Arsenious acid**, gr. 80
Carbonate of potash, gr. 80
Distilled water, $\frac{3}{4}$ 10.
- b.* When cool, add { **Compound tincture of lavender**, $\frac{3}{4}$ 5
Distilled water, ad O i.

Arsenious acid is more soluble with carbonate of potash, and this is gradually decomposed, forming arseniate of potash=



The *tincture of lavender* is added for colouring and flavouring purposes, so that this preparation may be recognized and distinguished from the other solutions.

3. **Liquor Arsenici Hydrochloricus.**

- a.* Boil until dissolved, { **Arsenious acid**, gr. 80
Hydrochloric acid, $\frac{3}{4}$ 2
Distilled water, $\frac{3}{4}$ 4.
- b.* Add **Water** to O i.

4. **Sodæ Arsenias—Arseniate of Soda.**

- a.* Mix thoroughly in a mortar finely powdered and dry { **Arsenious acid**, $\frac{3}{4}$ 10
Nitrate of soda, $\frac{3}{4}$ 8½
Carbonate of soda, $\frac{3}{4}$ 5½.

b. Expose to a dull-red heat in a covered crucible, until effervescence has ceased, and they are thoroughly melted.

c. Pour out on a clean flag-stone, and when solid, but still warm, put into boiling water ($\frac{3}{4}$ 35), stirring diligently.

d. Filter; crystallize; drain and dry the crystals rapidly on filtering paper; and enclose in stoppered bottles.

Decomposition.—The *arsenious acid* is converted by the nitrate of soda into *arsenic acid*, which expels the CO_2 from the carbonate, and forms *pyro-arsenate of soda*:— $\text{As}_2\text{O}_3 + \text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3 + 2\text{NaNO}_3 = \text{Na}_4\text{As}_2\text{O}_7 + \text{CO}_2 + \text{N}_2\text{O}_3$.

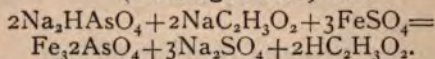
Solution in water converts this into the officinal salt:— $\text{Na}_4\text{As}_2\text{O}_7 + \text{H}_2\text{O} = 2\text{Na}_2\text{HAsO}_4$.

5. **Liquor Sodæ Arseniatis.**

Dissolve { **Anhydrous arseniate of soda**, dried
by a heat not over 300° , gr. 4
Water, $\frac{3}{4}$ 1.

6. **Ferri Arsenias—Arseniate of Iron.**

a. Mix two solutions { **Sulphate of iron**, $\frac{3}{4}$ 9 }
{ **Boiling water**, O 3. }
{ **Dried arseniate of soda**, $\frac{3}{4}$ 4 }
{ **Acetate of soda**, $\frac{3}{4}$ 3 }
{ **Boiling water**, O 2. }



b. Collect the precipitate on a calico filter, and wash completely from sulphate of soda.

c. Squeeze between folds of strong linen in a screw-press, and dry on porous bricks in a warm air-chamber under 100° .

The *acetate of soda* is used to prevent the liberation of free sulphuric acid, in which ferrous arseniate is soluble.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES.

1. **Arsenious Acid.**—When freshly prepared this substance is transparent and vitreous; it is sometimes in the form of a white powder; and it also forms crystals. As usually seen arsenious acid used medicinally presents the following characters;—

- a.* In small masses or fragments, very heavy.
- b.* White, opaque, shiny, like pieces of porcelain or marble.
- c.* Stratified, the layers presenting different degrees of opacity.
- d.* Odourless, and tasteless, but leaves a faint sweetish after-impression
- e.* Soluble in cold water (1 in 100); boiling water (1 in 20); freely in glycerine; slightly in alcohol.
- f.* Entirely volatilizes at a temperature not exceeding 400° , without melting. Sublimes in octahedral crystals. When sprinkled on red-hot coals, it emits an alliaceous or garlic-like odour.

g. A solution preserves matters from putrefaction.

2. **Salts.**—These may be arranged in a table.

ARSENATE OF SODA.

- a.* In crystalline prisms.
- b.* Colourless; transparent.
- c.* Efflorescent.
- d.* Soluble in water, the solution being alkaline.
- e.* Heated to 300° loses 40·38 per cent. of its weight = water of crystallization.

ARSENATE OF IRON.

- a.* Amorphous powder.
- b.* Usually grey or greenish, having changed from its original white colour by keeping, owing to oxidation.
- c.* Tasteless.
- d.* Insoluble in water; soluble in hydrochloric acid.

3. **Solutions.**—Their characters are as follows;—

LIQUOR
ARSENICALIS.LIQUOR ARSENICI
HYDROCHLORICUS.LIQUOR SODÆ
ARSENIATIS.

- a.* Pale pink colour.
- b.* Alkaline reaction.

- a.* Colourless.
- b.* Acid reaction.

- a.* Colourless.
- b.* Alkaline reaction.

IMPURITIES.

1. In *arsenious acid* gypsum and chalk may be present, which do not volatilize with heat.

2. *Arseniate of iron* is liable to contain a sulphate, indicated by the solution in hydrochloric acid diluted giving a white precipitate with chloride of barium.

QUANTITATIVE TESTS.

1. *Arsenious Acid*.—4 grains, dissolved in boiling water with 8 grains of bicarbonate of soda, discharge the colour of 808 grain-measures of *Vol. solution of iodine*.

2. *Arseniate of Iron*.—20 grains dissolved in an excess of hydrochloric acid diluted with water, continue to give a blue precipitate with ferrocyanide of potassium, until at least 170 grain-measures of *Vol. solution of bichromate of potash* have been added = 2.85 grains of iron in the *ferrous* state.

3. *Arseniate of Soda*.—10 grains of the *dried salt*, heated with 53 grain-measures of *Vol. solution of soda*, continue to give a precipitate with *Vol. solution of nitrate of silver* until 1613 grain-measures have been added.

PHARMACY.—1. There are no *officinal preparations* of arsenic, besides those already considered. It may be remarked, however, that it is frequently given with other medicines, and a special preparation—*Liquor Arsenici et Hydrargyri Hydriodatis* or *Donovan's solution*, was formerly in the Dublin Pharmacopœia.

2. *Incompatibles*.—These are lime-water; magnesia; salts of iron; and astringent matters.

ACTION.—Arsenious acid is a local escharotic. Internally all the preparations of arsenic are alterative; general and nervine tonics; and anti-periodic. They affect the alimentary canal and respiratory passages, being irritant in large doses. Best given *after meals*. Doses—Of *arsenious acid*, gr. $\frac{1}{60}$

to $\frac{1}{12}$; *Liquor Arsenicalis* or *Hydrochloricus*, $\text{m}2$ to 8; *Sodæ Arsenias*, gr. $\frac{1}{16}$ to $\frac{1}{8}$; *Liquor Sodæ Arseniatis*, $\text{m}5$ to 10; *Ferri Arsenias*, gr. $\frac{1}{16}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$. The doses should be very gradually increased, commencing with the smallest.

BISMUTHUM—BISMUTH.

GENERAL SUMMARY.—This group includes:—

1. **Bismuthum**.—The impure metal.
2. **Bismuthum Purificatum**.—Purified bismuth.
3. **Bismuthi Oxidum—Oxide of Bismuth** = Bi_2O_3 .

4. **Salts**

| | |
|---|---|
| { | <i>a. Bismuthi Carbonas</i> .—Carbonate of Bismuth = $2(\text{Bi}_2\text{CO}_3), \text{H}_2\text{O}$. <i>b. Bismuthi Subnitras</i> .—White Bismuth = $\text{BiNO}_3, \text{H}_2\text{O}$. (i). <i>Trochisci Bismuthi</i> = gr. 2 of subnitrate in each. |
|---|---|

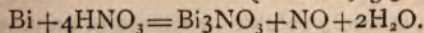
5. **Liquor Bismuthi et Ammoniae Citratis**.—A mixed solution of citrate of bismuth and citrate of ammonia, with some nitrate of ammonium = gr. 3 of *oxide of bismuth* in 3 i.

SOURCES AND PREPARATION.—This part of the subject may be discussed thus:—

A. From **Purified Bismuth**.

1. **Carbonate**
 2. **Subnitrate**
- } In the earlier part of the process these two compounds of bismuth are prepared in the same way.

a. Add **bismuth**, $\text{z} 2$ by { **Nitric acid**, $\text{z} 4$.
degrees to { **Water**, $\text{z} 3$.



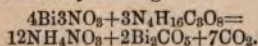
b. When effervescence has ceased, apply heat nearly to the boiling-point for ten minutes, and decant the solution.

c. Evaporate and concentrate to $\frac{3}{4}$ 2.

From this point the preparation of the two salts differs, as follows:—

CARBONATE.

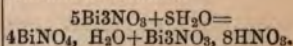
d. Add the concentrated solution in small quantities at a time to a cold filtered solution of { **Carbonate of ammonia**, $\frac{3}{4}$ 6
{ **Water**, O 2
constantly stirring.



e. Collect the precipitate on a calico-filter; wash until the washings are tasteless; dry, first by slight pressure, and finally at a temperature not exceeding 150° .

SUBNITRATE.

d. Pour the solution into **Water** = C $\frac{1}{2}$. Subnitrate is precipitated, and supernitrate remains in solution.



e. Decant the fluid; add to the precipitate, **Water** = C $\frac{1}{2}$; stir well; decant in 2 hours; collect and drain the precipitate on a calico filter; press and dry under 150° .

3. Liquor Bismuthi et Ammoniae Citratis.—

The earlier parts of the process by which this solution is prepared are similar to those of the salts just described, the only difference being in the proportion of ingredients, namely:—

Bismuth, $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 in { **Nitric acid**, $\frac{3}{4}$ 2.
{ **Water**, $\frac{3}{4}$ 1.

The further preparation is as follows:—

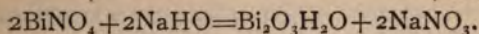
d. Add { **Citric acid**, $\frac{3}{4}$ 2 } to the concentrated
{ **Water**, $\frac{3}{4}$ 4 } solution.

e. Add gradually **solution of ammonia** until the precipitate first formed (Bi_2O_3) is dissolved, and the solution is neutral or slightly alkaline. Dilute to O 1.

(Bi_2O_3 is freely soluble in citrate of ammonia).

B. From **Subnitrate**.1. **Oxide**.

- a. Mix $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Subnitrate of bismuth, lb 1} \\ \text{Solution of soda, O 4} \end{array} \right\}$ and boil for five minutes



- b. Allow it to cool, and the precipitate to subside.
 c. Decant; wash the precipitate to remove nitrate of soda; and dry by the heat of a water-bath.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES.—These are easily summed up thus:—

1. **Oxide** and **Salts** $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Carbonate.} \\ \text{Subnitrate.} \end{array} \right.$

- a. All powders, the carbonate very fine, the subnitrate in minute crystalline scales.
 b. Colour $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Oxide, dull lemon-ycellow.} \\ \text{Carbonate and subnitrate, white.} \end{array} \right.$
 c. Insoluble in water or alcohol.
 d. Soluble in nitric acid, diluted with half its volume of water, the carbonate with effervescence.
 e. Blackened by H_2S .

2. **Liquor Bismuthi et Ammoniae Citratis**.

- a. A colourless solution.
 b. Neutral or slightly alkaline.
 c. Saline and slightly metallic taste.

IMPURITIES.—Lead; chlorides; arsenic; nitrates in the carbonate.

QUANTITATIVE TEST.

Liquor Bismuthi.—Fl. 3 3 mixed with $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 of water, and treated with H_2S in excess, yield a black precipitate, which, when collected, washed, and dried, weighs 9·9 grains.

PHARMACY.—1. *Officinal Preparation*:—

Trochisci Bismuthi.—Made in the usual way with

gum, etc., except that **rose-water** is used, each lozenge containing :—

Subnitrate of bismuth, gr. 2.

Carbonate of magnesia, gr. $2\frac{2}{3}$.

Precipitated carbonate of lime, gr. $3\frac{1}{2}$.

2. *Incompatibles*.—The subnitrate is incompatible with the alkalies and their carbonates.

ACTION.—Local sedative and astringent. Cosmetic. Internally, gastric sedative; astringent to alimentary canal; blacken the stools. *Dose*.—Of *oxide* and *salts*, gr. 5 to 15 or 20; *liquor*, $3\frac{1}{2}$ to 1; *trochisci*, 1 to 6.

CUPRUM—COPPER.

GENERAL SUMMARY.—The B. P. only recognizes the following :—

1. **Cuprum—Copper**.—(Copper-wire is used in making Spiritus Ætheris Nitrosi).

2. **Cupri Sulphas—Sulphate of Copper—Bluestone** = $\text{CuSO}_4\cdot 5\text{H}_2\text{O}$.

- | | |
|-------------------------|---|
| 3. In Appendix . | <p>a. <i>Copper-foil</i> = pure metallic copper, thin and bright.</p> <p>b. <i>Anhydrous Sulphate of Copper</i> = CuSO_4.—A yellowish-white powder, which becomes blue when moistened with water.</p> <p>c. <i>Solution of Acetate of Copper</i>—made with subacetate, acetic acid, and water.</p> <p>d. <i>Solution of Ammonio-Sulphate of Copper</i>—made with sulphate of copper, solution of ammonia and water.</p> |
|-------------------------|---|

Cupri Sulphas—Sulphate of Copper.

This is the only preparation that needs to be noticed specially, and the facts relating to it may be given in a tabular form.

| SOURCE AND PREPARATION. | CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES. |
|---|---|
| By heating copper and sulphuric acid together; dissolving the product in water; and evaporating to crystallization. | <p>a. Large crystals = oblique prismatic.</p> <p>b. Deep-blue colour; clear.</p> <p>c. Strong styptic, metallic taste.</p> <p>d. Soluble in water (1 in 3); in glycerine (1 in 4).</p> <p>e. Solution reddens litmus.</p> <p>f. Effloresces slightly in air.</p> <p>g. Loses water by heat = 400°, becoming anhydrous and white; rapidly absorbs water again, and resumes blue colour.</p> <p>h. Liable to contain iron and other impurities.</p> |
| $\text{Cu} + 2\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4 =$ $\text{CuSO}_4 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} + \text{SO}_2$ <p>Also by roasting copper pyrites on a large scale.</p> | |

INCOMPATIBLES.—Alkalies and their carbonates; lime-water; mineral salts (except sulphates); iodides; and most vegetable astringents.

ACTION.—Escharotic. Internal and external astringent. Nervine tonic. Emetic. *Dose.*—gr. $\frac{1}{3}$ to 2; as emetic, gr. 5 to 10.

CADMIUM.

There is only one officinal compound of cadmium, namely, the *Iodide*, which is described under iodine (*see* IODINE).

FERRUM—IRON.

GENERAL SUMMARY.—The officinal compounds of Iron are very numerous, and their arrangement presents some difficulty, but the following seems the most convenient:—

- | | |
|--------------------------|--|
| 1. Forms of Iron. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. <i>Iron-wire</i>, soft or wrought. b. <i>Ferrum Redactum</i>—<i>Reduced Iron</i>. Iron, with a variable amount of magnetic oxide (Fe_3O_4), and sometimes sulphide. |
| 2. Oxides. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. <i>Ferri Oxidum Magneticum</i> — Magnetic Oxide of Iron = Fe_3O_4, with some Fe_2O_3, and about 20 per cent. of water. b. <i>Ferri Peroxidum Hydratum</i> — Hydrated Peroxide of Iron = $\text{Fe}_2\text{O}_3, \text{H}_2\text{O}$. c. <i>Ferri Peroxidum Humidum</i> — Moist Peroxide of Iron, containing about 86 per cent. of water uncombined. |
| 3. Simple Salts. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. <i>Ferri Arsenias</i>. (See ARSENIC). b. <i>Ferri Carbonas Saccharata</i> — Saccharated Carbonate of Iron = FeCO_3, with some Fe_2O_3, mixed with sugar. c. <i>Ferri Iodidum</i>—Iodide of Iron = FeI, with about 18 per cent. of water, and a little FeO. d. <i>Ferri Phosphas</i>—Phosphate of Iron = $\text{Fe}_3\text{P}_2\text{O}_8$. e. <i>Ferri Sulphas</i>—Sulphate of Iron — Copperas = $\text{FeSO}_4, 7\text{H}_2\text{O}$. f. <i>Ferri Sulphas Exsiccata</i>—Dried Sulphate of Iron = Fe_2SO_4. g. <i>Ferri Sulphas Granulata</i> — Granulated Sulphate of Iron = $\text{Fe}_2\text{SO}_4, 7\text{H}_2\text{O}$. |

4. **Compound or Scaly Salts.** {
- a. *Ferri et Ammonice Citras*, of uncertain composition.
 - b. *Ferrum Tartaratum*—*Ferri Potassio-Tartras*— $\text{K}_3\text{Fe}(\text{C}_4\text{H}_4\text{O}_6)_3$.
 - c. *Ferri et Quiniae Citras*.—Citrate of iron, quinine, and ammonia; the iron being in both the ferrous and ferric states.
5. **Liquores or Solutions.** {
- a. *Liquor Ferri Perchloridi Fortior*.—Solution of $\text{Fe}_2\text{Cl}_6 = 31.728$ grains in 3 i.
 - b. *Liquor Ferri Perchloridi*.—A diluted solution = 1 to 3.
 - c. *Liquor Ferri Pernitratitis*. Solution of $\text{Fe}_26\text{NO}_3 = 7.865$ grains in 3 i.
 - d. *Liquor Ferri Persulphatis*.
6. **Tinctures.** {
- a. *Tinctura Ferri Perchloridi*.
 - b. *Tinctura Ferri Acetatis*.
7. **Special Official Preparations.** {
- a. *Emplastrum Ferri*; made from Peroxide.
 - b. *Mistura Ferri Aromatica*—*Heberden's Ink*, containing Tannate of Iron; made from Iron-wire.
 - c. *Mistura Ferri Composita*—*Griffith's Mixture*, containing Hydrated Ferrous Carbonate.
 - d. *Pilula Ferri Carbonatis*, gr. 1 in $1\frac{1}{4}$.
 - e. „ *Ferri Iodidi*, gr. 1 in 3.
 - f. *Syrupus Ferri Iodidi*, gr. $4\frac{1}{3}$ in 3 i.
 - g. „ *Ferri Phosphatis*, gr. 1 in 3 i.
 - h. *Trochisci Ferri Redacti*, gr. 1 in each.
 - i. *Vinum Ferri*, made from Iron-wire.
 - j. „ *Ferri Citratis*, gr. 1 in 3 i.

8. In **Appendix** — $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} a. \text{ Ferri Sulphidum, FeS; for mak-} \\ \text{ing H}_2\text{S gas.} \\ b. \text{ Test-Solution of Sulphate of Iron} \\ \text{=gr. 10 in } \frac{2}{3} \text{ I.} \end{array} \right.$

SOURCES AND PREPARATION.—The sources of the iron-compounds are as follows:—

1. *Native*—Sulphide.

- | | | | |
|------------------------------|---|---|--|
| 2. From <i>Iron-Wire.</i> | { | <i>Salts</i> | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} a. \text{ Iodide.} \\ b. \text{ Sulphate.} \end{array} \right.$ |
| | | <i>Solutions</i> | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} c. \text{ Liquor Ferri Perchloridi Fortior.} \\ d. \text{ Liquor Ferri Pernitrat.} \end{array} \right.$ |
| | { | <i>Special Officinal Preparations</i> | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} e. \text{ Mistura Ferri Aromatica.} \\ f. \text{ Pilula Ferri Iodidi.} \\ g. \text{ Syrupus Ferri Iodidi.} \\ h. \text{ Vinum Ferri.} \end{array} \right.$ |

3. From *Sulphate*.

- $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} a. \text{ Dried Sulphate.} \\ b. \text{ Granular Sulphate.} \\ c. \text{ Saccharated Carbonate} \\ d. \text{ Arseniate (see ARSENIC).} \\ e. \text{ Phosphate.} \\ f. \text{ Liquor Ferri Persulphatis.} \\ g. \text{ Mistura Ferri Composita.} \end{array} \right.$

4. From *Liquor Ferri Persulphatis*.

(In making the scaly preparations, a form of moist peroxide is produced).

- $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} a. \text{ Humid Peroxide.} \\ \quad (i). \text{ Hydrated Peroxide from this.} \\ b. \text{ Ferri Ammonio-Citras.} \\ c. \text{ Ferrum Tartaratum.} \\ d. \text{ Ferri et Quiniæ Citras.} \\ e. \text{ Tinctura Ferri Acetatis.} \end{array} \right.$

5. From *Sulphate* and *Liquor Ferri Persulphatis*. { *a.* Magnetic Oxide.
 6. From *Peroxide*. { *a.* Ferrum Redactum.

The actual preparation of the compounds requiring to be described here may be considered according to the following plan :—

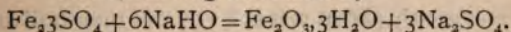
A. Ferrum Redactum.—By placing **peroxide of iron** in the middle part of a gun-barrel, heating this in a furnace, and passing through it a stream of **hydrogen gas** until the oxide is thoroughly reduced; then allowing it to cool, the current of hydrogen gas being still continued.

B. Oxides of Iron.

1. Moist Peroxide.

- a.* Add { **Solution of persulphate**, $\frac{3}{4}$ 4
Water, O 1

gradually to **Liquor sodæ**, $\frac{3}{4}$ 33, stirring constantly and briskly; let it stand for two hours, stirring occasionally.



- b.* Collect the precipitate on a calico filter, and wash from sulphate of soda.

- c.* Enclose *without drying* in a stoppered bottle.

2. Hydrated Peroxide.—Dry the **humid peroxide** under 212° , until it ceases to lose weight.

3. Magnetic Oxide.

- a.* Dissolve { **Sulphate of iron**, $\frac{3}{4}$ $\frac{1}{2}$ };
Water, O 2

add **solution of persulphate**, $\frac{3}{4}$ 2;

mix with **liquor sodæ**, O 4; stir well together; and boil.

- b.* Let it stand 2 hours, stirring occasionally.

- c.* Collect on a calico filter; wash away sulphate of soda; and dry not above 120° .

C. Simple Salts.

1. *Saccharated Carbonate.*

- a. Mix { **Sulphate of iron**, $\frac{3}{2}$ } with
 { **Boiling water**, $C \frac{1}{2}$ }
 { **Carbonate of ammonia**, $\frac{3}{4} 1 \frac{1}{4}$ }
 { **Boiling water**, $C \frac{1}{2}$ }

in a deep cylindrical vessel, briskly stirring.

- b. Cover accurately; set aside for 24 hours; and separate the liquid, by means of a syphon, from the precipitated carbonate of iron.
- c. Pour on more **boiling water** ($C1$); stir; and repeat the above process.
- d. Collect the precipitate on a calico filter; press; rub with **sugar** = $\frac{3}{4} 1$, in a porcelain mortar; and dry under 212° .

(*Boiling water* is used to exclude air; and the *sugar* is mixed to preserve the carbonate against oxidation by the air).

2. *Iodide.* By direct combination.

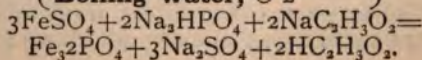
- a. Heat gently { **Iron wire**, $\frac{3}{4} 1 \frac{1}{2}$ } and then boil until
 in a flask for { **Iodine**, $\frac{3}{4} 3$ } the froth is white.
 10 minutes { **Water** $\frac{3}{4} 12$ } (All the I taken up.)

- b. Filter through calico into an iron dish; wash the filter; and boil until a drop taken out on the end of a piece of iron solidifies.

- c. Pour out on a porcelain dish; and break into fragments when solid.

3. *Phosphate.* By double decomposition.

- a. Mix and stir { **Sulphate of iron**, $\frac{3}{4} 3$ } with
 carefully { **Boiling water**, $O 2$ }
 { **Phosphate of soda**, $\frac{3}{4} 2 \frac{1}{2}$ }
 { **Acetate of soda**, $\frac{3}{4} 1$ }
 { **Boiling water**, $O 2$ }



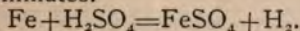
- b.* Separate the precipitate by a calico filter; wash away the sulphate of soda; and dry under 120° (to prevent oxidation).

(The *acetate of soda* is intended to prevent the the liberation of sulphuric acid, which dissolves the phosphate of iron.)

4. *Sulphate*.—By direct action of H_2SO_4 on iron.

- a.* Add **Sulphuric** { **Iron wire**, $\frac{3}{4}$ }
acid, $\frac{3}{4}$ to { **Water**, $0\frac{1}{2}$ }
 in a porcelain capsule.

When disengagement of H has almost ceased, boil for ten minutes.



- b.* Filter; crystallize; and dry the crystals on filtering paper on porous bricks = $\text{FeSO}_4, 7\text{H}_2\text{O}$.

5. *Dried Sulphate*.—Heat the **sulphate**, beginning at 212° , and raising the temperature to 400° , until aqueous vapour ceases to be given off.

6. *Granulated sulphate*.

- a.* Filter the boiling solution of sulphate of iron (see above), into **rectified spirit**, $\frac{3}{8}$, stirring.

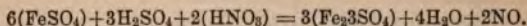
- b.* Decant; and dry the granular crystals on filtering paper on porous bricks, by exposure to the air.

D. Compound { 1. *Ammonio-citrate*.
or Scaly Salts { 2. *Tartarated Iron*.
 { 3. *Citrate of Iron and Quinine*.

These preparations of iron may be considered together, as the earlier and final parts of the process are similar in each case, and this may be conveniently divided into three stages:—

- a.* In the first part of the process a form of moist peroxide of iron is made, by adding gradually diluted **liquor ferri persulphatis** to diluted **liquor ammoniæ**, stirring constantly and briskly;

- c. Concentrate by boiling until the colour changes from black to red ; and so long as the solution gives a blue precipitate with red prussiate of potash, add a few drops of nitric acid, and renew the boiling, to convert all the sulphate into persulphate.



(The NO is absorbed by and blackens any *sulphate* present, but this compound is afterwards decomposed.)

- d. When cold, add water to $\frac{3}{4}$ II.

6. *Tinctura Ferri Acetatis.*

- a. Mix in { **Acetate of potash, 4** } with
a bottle { **Rectified spirit, 20** }
{ **Solution of persulphate of iron, 5** }
{ **Rectified spirit, 16** }
and shake occasionally for an hour.
- b. Filter, and make the filtered liquid up with **rectified spirit = 40.**

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES.—The preparations of iron that need to be noticed under this head may be thus grouped :—

A. **Coloured powders.**

1. *Ferrum Redactum.*

- a. A fine and impalpable powder.
b. Greyish-black, but exhibiting metallic streaks when rubbed with firm pressure in a mortar.
c. Strongly attracted by the magnet.
d. Soluble in hydrochloric acid with effervescence, hydrogen gas being evolved.
e. Readily oxidizes if exposed to damp air.

2. *Oxides of Iron.*—The characters and properties of these preparations may be thus indicated :—

| SPECIAL. | | GENERAL. |
|--------------------|---|--|
| Magnetic oxide. | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} a. \text{ Brownish-black powder.} \\ b. \text{ Strongly magnetic.} \\ c. \text{ Oxidized by heating in air.} \end{array} \right.$ | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} a. \text{ Tasteless.} \\ b. \text{ Insoluble in water.} \\ c. \text{ Soluble in dilute hydrochloric acid, especially the moist peroxide.} \end{array} \right.$ |
| Hydrated Peroxide. | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} a. \text{ Dark-brown or reddish-brown powder.} \\ b. \text{ Not magnetic.} \end{array} \right.$ | |
| Moist Peroxide | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} a. \text{ A moist paste.} \\ b. \text{ Reddish-brown.} \end{array} \right.$ | |

3. *Iodide.*

- a.* A crystalline powder.
- b.* Green, with a tinge of brown.
- c.* Inodorous.
- d.* Soluble in water (1 in 1), forming a slightly green solution, very liable to decomposition, with the deposit of peroxide, and liberation of iodine; soluble in alcohol.
- e.* Deliquescent; extremely prone to oxidation.

4. *Phosphate.*

- a.* An amorphous powder.
- b.* Slate-blue colour, but becomes of a green hue by keeping.
- c.* Insoluble in water; soluble in acids.

5. *Dried Sulphate.*

- a.* A powder of greyish cream colour.
- b.* Other characters as the *Sulphate*.

B. Small lumps or granules.1. *Saccharated Carbonate.*

- a.* Small coherent lumps.
- b.* Originally *white*, but rapidly darkens from oxidation, and as usually seen, is of a grey-brown colour.
- c.* Soluble in warm diluted hydrochloric acid, with effervescence.
- d.* Sweet, and very feeble chalybeate taste.

2. *Granulated Sulphate.*

- a. Small granular crystals.
- b. Pale greenish-blue colour.
- c. Other characters as *Sulphate*, but not so liable to become brown.

C. Evident crystals.1. *Sulphate.*

- a. Oblique rhombic prisms.
- b. Pale greenish-blue colour.
- c. Soluble in water (1 in $1\frac{1}{2}$); insoluble in alcohol and proof spirit.
- d. Styptic taste.
- e. Slightly efflorescent.
- f. Crystals and solution become easily oxidised on exposure to air, the former presenting opaque rusty-coloured spots, the latter forming an ochrey deposit.
- g. Heat expels water of crystallization, and then decomposes the salt.

D. Scaly preparations.

These present the common character that they are in thin transparent scales; their *special* characters may be thus tabulated:—

| | COLOUR. | SOLUBILITY. | REACTION. | TASTE. |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|--|---------------------|--|
| <i>Ammonio-Citrate.</i> | Deep-red. | In water (2 in 1). Almost insoluble in rectified spirit. | Faintly acid. | Slightly sweet and astringent. |
| <i>Tartarated Iron.</i> | Darker = garnet-red. | In water (1 in 4). Sparingly in spirit. | Neutral. | Somewhat sweet, and rather astringent. |
| <i>Citrate of Iron and Quinine.</i> | Greenish, golden-yellow; lustrous. | Water (2 in 1). Somewhat deliquescent. | Very slightly acid. | Bitter and chalybeate. |

E. Solutions and Tinctures.

With regard to these preparations of iron, it will be sufficient to remember that:—

1. They are all *coloured*, as follows:—

- a. *Liquor Ferri Perchloridi Fortior*, orange-brown.
- b. *Liquor Ferri Perchloridi*, pale brown.
- c. *Tinctura Ferri Perchloridi*, light brown.
- d. *Liquor Ferri Pernitratis*, reddish-brown.
- e. *Liquor Ferri Persulphatis*, dark brown.
- f. *Tinctura Ferri Acetatis*, deep brown.

2. They have a more or less astringent taste, especially the perchloride and persulphate, which are highly styptic. The acetate is very palatable.

IMPURITIES.—The impurities liable to occur in the iron-compounds may be thus summarized:—

1. The *ferric* preparations may contain *ferrous oxide*.

2. *Ferrous* salts are very liable to become oxidized, and to contain *ferric oxide*.

3. *Sulphate* may be present in the *saccharated carbonate* and *hydrated peroxide*.

4. *Arsenic* may be present in the *phosphate*; and *copper* in the *sulphate*.

QUANTITATIVE TESTS.

1. **Remains after incineration = peroxide of iron.**

- a. *Moist peroxide* = about 12 per cent.
- b. *Ammonio-citrate* = not less than 27 per cent., and not alkaline to litmus.
- c. *Citrate of quinine and iron* = oxide of iron, which yields nothing to water.
- d. *Tartarated iron*, 50 grains incinerated at a red heat, the product washed with water and again incinerated = 15 grains.
- e. *Liquor Ferri Perchloridi Fortior*, 3 i diluted with water, $\frac{3}{2}$ { treated with excess of solution of ammonia, give a precipitate which, when washed, dried, and incinerated = 15.62 gr. and 2.6 gr. respectively.
- f. *Liquor Ferri Pernitratis*, $\frac{3}{1}$ {

2. Quantitative test for protosalt of iron.

This test is employed to determine the quantity of protosalt in certain compounds of iron. It consists in dissolving the compound in hydrochloric acid; diluting with water; and observing how many grain-measures of *Vol. solution of bichromate of potash* are required to convert the protoxide into peroxide, so that it ceases to give a blue precipitate with red prussiate of potash. In the B.P. this test is applied to the following:—

| Twenty grains of | Grain-measures of Vol. solution of Bichromate of Potash. |
|--------------------------------|--|
| (i) Magnetic oxide | = 208 |
| (ii) Saccharated Carbonate . . | = 230 |
| (iii) Phosphate | = 250 |

3. **Quantitative test for quinine** in citrate of iron and quinine = 50 grains dissolved in $\frac{3}{4}$ of water, and treated with slight excess of ammonia, give a white precipitate, which, when collected and dried = 8 grains (Quinia).

PHARMACY.—1. *Officinal Preparations*. Some of these are of special importance, and these will be first considered.

a. *Mistura Ferri Aromatica* = intense brown.

(i) Macerate for three days in a closed vessel, agitating occasionally, and then filter,

| | |
|---|--------------------------------|
| { | Iron-wire, 2. |
| { | Powdered pale cinchona bark, 4 |
| { | Powdered calumba, 2. |
| { | Bruised cloves, 1. |
| { | Peppermint water, 50. |

(ii) Add { Tincture of orange-peel, 2.
Compound tincture of cardamoms, 12.

(iii) Make up with peppermint water = 64.

b. *Mistura Ferri Composita* = bluish-green; opaque.

(i) Triturate to form a thin paste

| | |
|---|------------------------------|
| { | Powdered myrrh, gr. 60. |
| { | Refined Sugar, gr. 60. |
| { | Carbonate of potash, gr. 30. |
| { | Rose water, a sufficiency. |

(ii) Gradually add, { Spirit of nutmeg, 3 4.
continuing the trituration, { Rose water, about 3 8.

(iii) Dissolve { Sulphate of iron, gr. 25 }
 { Rose water, remainder } and add,
 of, 3 9½
mixing well, and corking the bottle immediately.



(Excess of *carbonate of potash* forms with *myrrh* a saponaceous compound, which suspends the *carbonate of iron* formed. The mixture is very liable to decomposition, but the *sugar* retards this. It should be recently prepared.)

c. *Pilula Ferri Iodidi* = 1 in about 3½.

(i) Agitate in a { Iron-wire, gr. 40 } until the froth
strong stoppered { Iodine, gr. 80 } becomes
ounce-phial { Water, m 50 } white.

(ii) Pour the fluid upon refined sugar, gr. 70 in a mortar; rub briskly; and gradually add powdered liquorice root, gr. 140.

d. *Syrupus Ferri Iodidi* = nearly gr. 4½ in 3 l. Colourless if kept in well-filled bottles.

(i) Digest in { Iron-wire, 1 } and shake together
a flask, at a { Iodine, 2 } until the froth be-
gentle heat { Water, 3 } comes white.

(ii) Filter { Refined Sugar, 28 } Mix; and make
while hot into { Water, 10. } up with water to
hot syrup = { } measure, 3 l½.

(This preparation is best preserved by *suspending a coil of iron-wire* in the bottle containing it. As iodine is set free, it combines with the iron).

e. *Syrupus Ferri Phosphatis* = about gr. 1 in 3 l. Colourless when fresh; becomes brown, and deposits on keeping.

(i) Mix, care- { Granulated sulphate of iron, gr. 224
fully stirring { Water, 3 3.
 { Phosphate of soda, gr. 200.
 { Acetate of soda, gr. 74.
 { Water, 3 4.

(ii) Wash the precipitate on a calico filter with water, from sulphate of soda.

(iii) Press it strongly between folds of bibulous paper; and add diluted phosphoric acid, $\frac{3}{8}$ 5½.

(iv) Filter the solution; add sugar, $\frac{3}{8}$ 8; and dissolve without heat.

The remaining officinal preparations of iron are much more simple in their manufacture, and may be taken in alphabetical order:—

f. Emplastrum Ferri.

Melt { Burgundy pitch, 2 } and stir in
 { Lead plaster, 8 } peroxide of iron, 1.

g. Pilula Ferri Carbonatis.

Mix { Saccharated carbonate, 4.
 { Confection of roses, 1.

h. Trochisci Ferri Redacti = gr. 1 in each. Iron-grey. Made in the usual way with sugar, gum, etc.

i. Vinum Ferri. Intense olive-brown.

Digest for 30 days, with frequent agitation, the bottle being { Fine iron-wire, $\frac{3}{8}$ 1 } The wire must
 uncorked after { Sherry wine, $\frac{3}{8}$ 20. } not be wholly
 each agitation, } immersed.

j. Vinum Ferri Citralis. Deep-brown = gr. 1 in 3 1.

Dissolve and { Citrate of iron and ammonia,
 filter after three } gr. 160
 days { Orange wine, $\frac{3}{8}$ 20.

2. The other preparations in connection with which iron or its compounds are pharmaceutically employed, are as follows:—

a. Iron is used in separating mercury.

b. Sulphide is one of the sources of sulphur.

c. Sulphate is contained in Pil. Aloes et Ferri.

3. *Incompatibles.*—These may be indicated thus:—

a. All the preparations of iron are chemically incompatible with tannic and gallic acids, and vegetable astringents containing them. They are, however, sometimes administered together.

b. There are certain *special* incompatibles of particular preparations, namely:—

Saccharated Carbonate.—Acids and acidulous salts.

Iodide.—Acids and acidulous salts; alkalies and their carbonates; lime-water.

Solutions and Tincture of Perchloride.—Alkalies, lime-water, magnesia, and their carbonates; mucilage decomposes them.

Ammonio-Citrate.—Mineral acids; fixed alkalies.

Tartarated Iron.—Mineral acids; lime-water.

Citrate of Quinine and Iron.—Alkalies and their carbonates.

ACTION.—The action of the preparations of iron may be thus summarized:—

1. All the *solutions of persalts* and the *tincture of perchloride* are powerful external and local astringents and styptics.

Emplastrum Ferri is a useful strengthening plaster.

2. Almost all the preparations of iron may be used as hæmatinics or blood-restorers; and general tonics. Some are useful nervine tonics.

3. Several of the preparations are internal astringents, especially those of the *persalts* and the *sulphate*.

4. *Hydrated peroxide* is used as an antidote in poisoning by arsenic.

5. Certain preparations, namely, the *arsenate*, *iodide*, and *citrate of quinine and iron*, have special actions, due to their several special ingredients.

Doses.—Of *Reduced Iron*, gr. 2 to 6; *Trochisci*, 1 to 6.

Magnetic Oxide, gr. 5 to 10.

Hydrated Peroxide, gr. 5 to 30. *Humid Peroxide*, 3 2 to 4.

Saccharated Carbonate or Pill, gr. 5 to 20.

Iodide, gr. 1 to 5; *Pill*, gr. 3 to 8; *Syrup*, ℥ 20 to 60.

Phosphate, gr. 5 to 10; *Syrup*, 3 i to 4.

Sulphate, gr. 1 to 5; *Dried*, gr. $\frac{1}{2}$ to 3; *Granulated*, gr. 3 to 5.

Tartarated Iron

Ammonio-Citrate

Citrate of Quinine and Iron

} gr. 5 to 10.

Solution or Tincture of Perchloride, ℥ 10 to 30.

Solution of Permanganate, ℥ 10 to 40.

Tincture of Acetate, ℥ 5 to 30.

Mistura Ferri Composita

Mistura Ferri Aromatica

} 3 i to 2.

Vinum Ferri

Vinum Ferri Citratis

} 3 i to 4.

HYDRARGYRUM—MERCURY.

GENERAL SUMMARY.—The preparations of mercury may be arranged thus:—

1. **Hydrargyrum**—Metallic Mercury.2. **Allotropic Forms of Oxide** = HgO .

- a. *Hydrargyri Oxidum Flavum*—Yellow Oxide of Mercury.
- b. *Hydrargyri Oxidum Rubrum*—Red Oxide of Mercury—Red Precipitate.

3. **Salts.**

- a. *Hydrargyri Subchloridum*—Calomel = HgCl .
- b. *Hydrargyri Perchloridum*—Corrosive Sublimate = HgCl_2 .
- c. *Hydrargyri Iodidum Viride*—Green Iodide of Mercury = HgI .
- d. *Hydrargyri Iodidum Rubrum*—Red Iodide of Mercury = HgI_2 .
- e. *Hydrargyri Sulphas*—Sulphate of Mercury = HgSO_4 .
- f. *Hydrargyrum Ammoniatum*—Ammoniated Mercury—White Precipitate = NH_2HgCl .

4. **Officinal Preparations containing finely-divided Mercury.**

For internal use.

- a. *Hydrargyrum cum Creta*—Grey powder = gr. 1 in 3.
- b. *Pilula Hydrargyri*—Blue pill = gr. 1 in 3.

For external use.

- c. *Emplastrum Hydrargyri*.
- d. *Emplastrum Ammoniaci cum Hydrargyro*.
- e. *Linimentum Hydrargyri*.
- f. *Unguentum Hydrargyri*.
- g. *Unguentum Hydrargyri Compositum*—Scott's Ointment.
- h. *Suppositoria Hydrargyri*. Each contains gr. 5 of *Unguentum Hydrargyri*.

4. From *Perchloride*. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} a. \text{ Yellow Oxide.} \\ b. \text{ Red Iodide.} \\ c. \text{ Ammoniated Mercury.} \end{array} \right.$

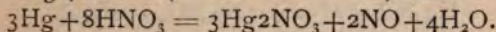
Their actual preparation may be considered according to the following plan:—

A. **Hydrargyrum — Mercury.** — Distil the **sulphide** (cinnabar) with **iron**. The vapour of mercury is condensed. It is purified by redistillation, and washing with dilute hydrochloric acid.

B. **Oxides of Mercury.**

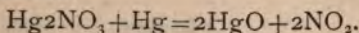
1. *Red or Nitric Oxide.*

- a. Dissolve $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Nitric acid, } \frac{3}{4} \frac{1}{2} \\ \text{Water, } \frac{3}{4} 2 \end{array} \right\}$ and evaporate to dryness.



- b. Thoroughly triturate with **mercury** = $\frac{3}{4} 4$.

- c. Heat in a porcelain dish, with repeated stirring, until acid vapours cease to be evolved.

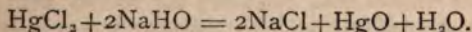


(The *mercury* saves waste of oxygen).

2. *Yellow Oxide.*

- a. Dissolve by $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Perchloride of mercury, } \frac{3}{4} 4. \\ \text{aid of heat } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Water, } 0 \ 4. \end{array} \right. \end{array} \right.$

- b. Add this solution to **liquor sodæ** = $0 \ 2$, and stir.



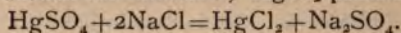
- c. After subsidence, decant the liquid; wash the precipitate thoroughly on a calico-filter; and dry by the heat of a water-bath.

C. **Salts of Mercury.**

1. *Perchloride—Corrosive Sublimate.*

- a. Mix in a mortar finely $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Sulphate of mercury, } 20 \\ \text{Dried chloride of sodium, } 16 \\ \text{Black oxide of manganese, } 1 \end{array} \right.$ powdered

b. *Sublime* this mixture; HgCl_2 passes over.



(The MnO_2 prevents the formation of any calomel= HgCl , by setting free some Cl from the NaCl).

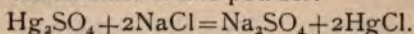
2. *Subchloride*—*Calomel*.

a. Rub together { **Moistened sulphate of mercury,** $\frac{3}{3}$ 10.
until no globules are visible { **Mercury,** $\frac{3}{3}$ 7.

Hg_2SO_4 is formed.

b. Add dried **chloride of sodium** = $\frac{3}{3}$ 5, and thoroughly mix.

c. *Sublime* into a large chamber, so as to get the calomel in fine powder.



d. Wash with boiling water from HgCl_2 , until the washings are not darkened by ammonium sulphide; dry under 212° .

3. *Green Iodide*.—By *direct combination* of iodine and mercury.

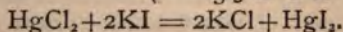
a. Rub in a mortar { **Iodine,** gr. 278 } occasionally moistening with **rectified spirit**, until metallic globules are no longer seen, and the whole becomes green.

b. Dry in a dark room, on filtering paper, by exposure to air. Keep in opaque bottles.

(The *rectified spirit* dissolves the iodine and aids the combination; and by evaporation moderates the temperature).

4. *Red Iodide*.—By *precipitation* from solution of perchloride by iodide of potassium.

a. Mix *boiling* aqueous solutions of { **Perchloride of mercury,** $\frac{3}{3}$ 4 in O 3.
Iodide of potassium, $\frac{3}{3}$ 5 in O 1.



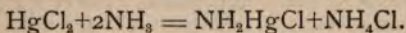
- b.* When cooled to the temperature of the air, decant; collect the precipitate on a filter; wash with cold water; and dry under 212° .

5. *Sulphate*.—By *direct combination*.

Heat $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Mercury, } \frac{3}{2} \text{ O} \\ \text{Sulphuric acid, } \frac{3}{12} \end{array} \right\}$ in a porcelain vessel, stirring constantly until the mercury disappears; then heat further until a white dry salt remains— $\text{Hg} + 2\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4 = \text{HgSO}_4 + \text{SO}_2 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$.

6. *Ammoniated Mercury*.

- a.* Dissolve $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Perchloride of mercury, } \frac{3}{3} \\ \text{Water, O } 3. \end{array} \right\}$ by aid of moderate heat; and *mix with liquor ammoniæ*, $\frac{3}{4}$, constantly stirring.



- b.* Collect the precipitate on a filter; wash with cold water until no NH_4Cl passes through; and dry under 212° .

(If liquor ammoniæ be *added to* the solution of perchloride, a different compound is formed).

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES.—All the mercury compounds have one property in common, namely, that they are entirely *volatilized and sublimed by heat*, or in certain cases they are decomposed. Excluding mercury itself, the other characters of those compounds which need to be noticed here, may be thus arranged:—

1. **Oxides**.—The two officinal oxides of mercury are *chemically* the same, the difference being only physical, and they present the following characters in common:—

- a.* Insoluble in water.
b. Soluble in hydrochloric acid.
c. Decomposed by heat into O and Hg.

The properties in which they differ, may be thus indicated:—

RED OXIDE.

- a.* Orange-red, crystalline scales.
- b.* Not affected by cold oxalic acid.

YELLOW OXIDE.

- a.* Yellow powder.
- b.* Forms an oxalate with cold oxalic acid.

2. **Chlorides.**—It will be useful to contrast the two chlorides, the one character they have in common being that they are both *heavy*.

CALOMEL.

- a.* A dull-white powder; liable to become fawn-coloured by action of light.
- b.* Almost tasteless.
- c.* Insoluble in water, rectified spirit, or ether.

CORROSIVE SUBLIMATE.

- a.* In masses of prismatic crystals; colourless.
- b.* Acrid, metallic taste.
- c.* Soluble in water (1 in 19); boiling water (1 in 3); rectified spirit (1 in 5); ether (1 in 6).
- d.* The watery solution reddens litmus; and is liable to decompose, calomel being deposited.

3. **Iodides.**—These may also be contrasted in a tabular form:—

GREEN IODIDE.

- a.* A dull-green or greenish-yellow powder. Darkens on exposure to light, and after a time minute red specks are seen pervading the mass = HgI_2 .
- b.* Insoluble in water, alcohol, or ether.
- c.* Heated gradually in a test-tube, a yellow sublimate forms = HgI_2 , which becomes red on friction or cooling, while Hg remains at the bottom of the tube. Heated rapidly, it sublimes unchanged.

RED IODIDE.

- a.* A crystalline powder, of a vermilion colour. Crystals are octahedra. Not liable to change with light.
- b.* Almost insoluble in water; sparingly soluble in alcohol; freely in ether, and in solution of iodide of potassium.
- c.* Heated gently on a sheet of paper over a spirit-lamp, it becomes yellow (crystals = rhomboidal prisms), resuming its scarlet colour on cooling. Sublimes at a heat below redness.

4. Sulphate.

- a. A crystalline powder.
- b. White, but made yellow by affusion with water = *Oxysulphate* or *Turpeth Mineral*.
- c. Heavy.

5. Ammoniated Mercury.

- a. An amorphous powder, or sometimes made into small spiral cones.
- b. White and opaque.
- c. Unpleasant metallic taste.
- d. Insoluble in water, alcohol, or ether; soluble in hydrochloric acid.
- e. Entirely volatilized by heat below redness.
- f. Digested with caustic potash, it evolves ammonia.

IMPURITIES.—As recognized in the B.P., the only important impurities are the presence of *mercuric* in *mercurous* salts as follows:—

1. *HgI₂* in the green iodide, indicated by:—

(i) Solubility in ether.

(ii) Gives a magenta colour with aniline at a boiling heat.

2. *HgCl₂* in *Calomel*. Warm ether shaken up with it in a bottle, leaves a residue on evaporation = corrosive sublimate.

PHARMACY.—I. *Officinal Preparations*.

These may conveniently be considered under three groups:—

A. Preparations containing free Mercury.

a. *Emplastrum Hydrargyri* = Blue.

(i) Add sublimed sulphur, gr. 6 gradually to heated olive oil, 3 i, stirring till they unite.

(ii) Add mercury, ʒ 3, and triturate till its globules disappear.

(iii) Add to the mixture lead plaster, ʒ 6, previously liquefied, and mix thoroughly.

b. *Emplastrum Ammoniaci cum Hydrargyro* = Brownish lead colour. Made in the same way

as *Emplastrum Hydrargyri*, except that instead of lead plaster, ammoniacum, $\frac{3}{4}$ 12, previously liquefied, is finally added.

c. Linimentum Hydrargyri = Lead-coloured cream. Melt ointment of mercury in an equal quantity of liniment of camphor; gradually add an equal quantity of solution of ammonia, and shake well together. *Mercury* = 1 in 6.

d. Pilula Hydrargyri = Blue.

- (i) Rub $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Mercury, 2} \\ \text{Confection of roses, 3} \end{array} \right\}$ until globules are no longer visible.
- (ii) Add powdered liquorice = 1, and mix well.

e. Suppositoria Hydrargyri.

- (i) Melt together $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Benzoated lard, gr. 20.} \\ \text{White wax, gr. 20.} \\ \text{Oil of theobroma, gr. 80.} \end{array} \right.$

(ii) Add ointment of mercury, gr. 60; stir till well mixed; and immediately pour into moulds = gr. 15 each.

Mercurial ointment = gr. 5 in each suppository.

f. Unguentum Hydrargyri = Lead colour.

Rub to- $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Mercury, 16} \\ \text{Prepared lard, 16} \\ \text{Prepared suet, 1} \end{array} \right\}$ together until metallic globules cease to be visible.

g. Unguentum Hydrargyri Compositum = Lead colour.

- (i) Melt yellow wax, 3, and add olive oil, 3.
- (ii) When the mixture is nearly cold,
- add $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Powdered camphor, } 1\frac{1}{2} \\ \text{Ointment of mercury, 6} \end{array} \right\}$ and mix.

h. Hydrargyrum cum Creta = Grey.

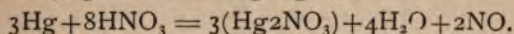
Triturate till all $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Mercury, 1} \\ \text{Prepared chalk, 2.} \end{array} \right.$ globules disappear

Mercury = 1 in 3.

B. Preparations made from Mercury.

a. *Liquor Hydrargyri Nitratis Acidus* = Colourless; strongly acid.

(i) Dissolve { Nitric acid, $\frac{3}{4}$ 5 }
mercury, $\frac{3}{4}$ 4 in { Water, $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ } without heat.



(ii) Boil gently for 15 minutes, (to ensure the formation of pernitrate, and to expel NO); cool and preserve in a stoppered bottle.

b. *Unguentum Hydrargyri Nitratis* = Lemon-colour.

(i) Dissolve { Mercury, 4 }
 { Nitric acid, 12 } by gentle heat.

(ii) Melt by { Prepared lard, 15 } in a large
water-bath { Olive oil, 32. } porcelain vessel.

(iii) Add the solution of mercury while hot, and mix thoroughly. Heat if necessary, until it froths up, and stir while cooling.

C. Preparations of Compounds of Mercury.

a. *Liquor Hydrargyri Perchloridi* = Colourless.
Contains gr. $\frac{1}{16}$ th in 3 i.

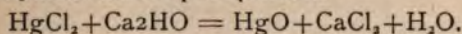
Dissolve { Corrosive sublimate, gr. 10.
 { Chloride of ammonium, gr. 10.
 { Water, $\frac{3}{4}$ 20.

The *chloride of ammonium* aids solution.

b. *Lotio Hydrargyri Flava*.

Mix { Corrosive sublimate, gr. 10.
 { Lime-water, $\frac{3}{4}$ 10.

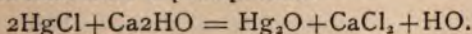
The *yellow oxide* is precipitated.



c. *Lotio Hydrargyri Nigra*.

Mix { Calomel, gr. 3.
 { Lime-water, $\frac{3}{4}$ 1.

The *black oxide* is precipitated.



d. Pilula Hydrargyri Subchloridi Composita = Bright-orange. Contains gr. 1 in 5.

Mix $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Calomel, 1.} \\ \text{Sulphurated antimony, 1} \\ \text{Powdered guaiacum, 2} \\ \text{Castor oil, 1} \end{array} \right.$

e. Unguenta.—There are four special ointments of mercurial compounds, which may be thus arranged in alphabetical order :—

(i) *Unguentum Hydrargyri Ammoniaci.* Mix $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Ammoniated mercury,} \\ \text{gr. 62.} \\ \text{Simple ointment, } \frac{2}{3} \text{ 1.} \end{array} \right.$

(ii) *Unguentum Hydrargyri Iodidi Rubri.* Mix $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Red iodide, finely} \\ \text{powdered, gr. 16.} \\ \text{Simple ointment, } \frac{2}{3} \text{ 1.} \end{array} \right.$

(iii) *Unguentum Hydrargyri Oxidi Rubri.* Add oil of almonds, $\frac{2}{3} \frac{3}{4}$ to melted yellow-wax, $\frac{2}{3} \frac{1}{4}$. When nearly cold, mix red oxide of mercury, in very fine powder, gr. 62.

(iv) *Unguentum Hydrargyri Subchloridi.* Mix $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Calomel, gr. 80.} \\ \text{Prepared lard, } \frac{2}{3} \text{ 1.} \end{array} \right.$

2. *Incompatibles.*—The only preparations that require special notice in relation to this point are as follows :—

a. Grey powder.—Acids and acidulous salts.

b. Calomel.—Solutions of potash, soda, and lime; iodide of potassium; nitro-hydrochloric acid; hydrocyanic acid.

c. Corrosive sublimate.—Alkalies and their carbonates; lime-water; soaps; iodide of potassium (but often given together); tartar emetic; acetate of lead; nitrate of silver; albumen; decoction of bark.

ACTION.—The effects produced by mercury and its preparations and compounds may be briefly described according to the following plan :—

1. Internally they all increase secretions, and are sialagogue; purgative, several being powerful intestinal stimulants or irritants; cholagogue, calomel, however, being said only to be a bile-expellent, corrosive sublimate a hepatic stimulant; diuretic; diaphoretic; and alterative, having a specific action in syphilis. They are liable to produce more or less serious effects—mercurial salivation, etc.

2. Several preparations, if applied externally, especially by inunction or fumigation, produce the special systemic effects of mercury; and also have a local alterative effect.

3. Some preparations of mercury are used for particular local effects, namely :—

a. Acid nitrate.—Powerful caustic.

b. Red oxide.—Slight caustic.

c. Corrosive Sublimate.—Used as a weak gargle in ulcerated sore-throat.

d. Ammoniated mercury ointment, and solution of *corrosive sublimate* are employed to destroy pediculi.

Doses—The doses of the preparations of mercury used internally are as follows :—

Blue pill, gr. 3 to 8 or 10.

Grey powder, gr. 3 to 8.

Calomel, gr. $\frac{1}{2}$ to 1 as alterative; gr. 2 to 8 as purgative; *Compound pill*, gr. 5 to 10.

Corrosive sublimate, gr. $\frac{1}{16}$ to $\frac{1}{8}$; *Solution*, m30 to 120.

Green iodide, gr. 1 to 3

Red iodide, gr. $\frac{1}{16}$ to $\frac{1}{4}$.

PLUMBUM—LEAD.

GENERAL SUMMARY.—The compounds of lead are:—

1. **Plumbi Oxidum.**—Oxide of Lead—Litharge = PbO .

2. **Salts.**

- a. *Plumbi Carbonas.*—Carbonate of Lead—White Lead = $2\text{PbCO}_3\text{PbO}, \text{H}_2\text{O}$.
- b. *Plumbi Acetas.*—Acetate of Lead—Sugar of Lead = $\text{Pb}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_3\text{O}_2)_2, 3\text{H}_2\text{O}$.
- c. *Plumbi Iodidum.*—Iodide of Lead = PbI_2 .
- d. *Plumbi Nitras.*—Nitrate of Lead = $\text{Pb}(\text{NO}_3)_2$.

3. **Liquores or Solutions.**

- a. *Liquor Plumbi Subacetatis.*—Solution of Subacetate of Lead—Goulard Extract = $\text{Pb}_2\text{OC}_2\text{H}_3\text{O}_2$.
- b. *Liquor Plumbi Subacetatis Dilutus.*—Goulard water. A diluted solution of the above.

4. **Special Official preparations.**

- a. *Emplastrum Plumbi.*
- b. „ *Plumbi Iodidi.*
- c. *Pilula Plumbi cum Opio.*
- d. *Suppositoria Plumbi cum Opio.*
- e. *Unguentum Plumbi Acetatis.*
- f. „ „ *Carbonatis.*
- g. „ „ *Iodidi.*
- h. „ „ *Subacetatis Compositum.*

SOURCES AND PREPARATION.—This part of the subject may be described thus:—

A. From **lead**.

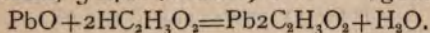
1. *Oxide*.—By roasting **lead** in a current of air.

2. *Carbonate*.—By exposing **sheets of lead** to the fumes of **acetic** and **carbonic acids**, evolved from spent tan, vinegar, decaying organic matter, etc.

B. From **oxide**.

1. *Acetate*.—By *solution*.

a. Dissolve **oxide** (**Acetic acid**, O 2) with aid of **of lead**, $\frac{3}{4}$ 24 in (**Water**, O 1) gentle heat.

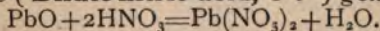


b. Filter; evaporate; and crystallize, adding acetic acid, if the fluid is not distinctly acid.

c. Dry on filtering paper, without heat.

2. *Nitrate*.—By *solution*.

a. Dis- { **Oxide of lead**, $\frac{3}{4}$ 4 $\frac{1}{2}$ } by aid of
solve { **Dilute nitric acid**, O 1 } gentle heat.



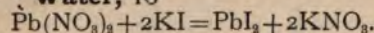
b. Filter and crystallize.

C. From **nitrate**.

1. *Iodide*. By *double decomposition*.

a. Mix { **Nitrate of lead**, 4 } dissolved with heat,
 { **Water**, 30 }

with { **Iodide of Potassium**, 4.
 { **Water**, 10 }



b. Collect the precipitate on a filter; wash from nitrate of potash; and dry with a gentle heat.

D. From **acetate** and **oxide**.

1. *Liquor Plumbi Subacetatis*.

a. Boil { **Acetate of lead**, 5 }
for half { **Powdered oxide of lead**, 3 $\frac{1}{2}$ } constantly
an hour { **Water**, 20 } stirring.

b. Filter; and make up to 20.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES.—Each of the compounds of lead must be considered separately under this head.

1. **Oxide.**

- a.* In heavy scales.
- b.* Pale brick-red colour.
- c.* Insoluble in water; soluble in diluted nitric and acetic acids, without effervescence; also in lime-water, and the caustic alkalies.
- d.* Decomposes neutral fats, forming an insoluble soap.

2. **Carbonate.**

- a.* A soft heavy powder.
- b.* White in colour.
- c.* Insoluble in water; soluble, with effervescence, in dilute nitric and acetic acids.
- d.* Blackened by H_2S .

3. **Acetate—Sugar of Lead.**

- a.* Usually in masses of interlaced acicular crystals.
- b.* White and opaque.
- c.* Moderately heavy.
- d.* Marked acetous odour.
- e.* Sweet and astringent taste.
- f.* Soluble in water (10 in 25); also in alcohol.
- g.* The aqueous solution slightly reddens litmus; is clear, or only slightly turbid, and becomes clear on the addition of acetic acid; and does not form an opaque white jelly with gum mucilage.
- h.* Slightly efflorescent; small crystals may be seen on the inside of the containing bottle.

4. **Nitrate.**

- a.* In crystals=octahedra.
- b.* Colourless, and nearly opaque.
- c.* Soluble in water and alcohol.
- d.* Sweetish and astringent taste.

5. Iodide.

- a.* In powder; bright yellow.
- b.* Tasteless and odourless.
- c.* Sparingly soluble in cold water; entirely in boiling water, and deposited on cooling in golden crystalline scales; also in alcohol, solution of potash, and alkaline iodides.
- d.* Fuses with moderate heat; decomposed at a high temperature, violet vapours being evolved.

6. Liquor Plumbi Acetatis.

- a.* A clear and colourless solution.
- b.* Alkaline reaction.
- c.* Sweet and astringent taste.
- d.* Becomes opaque on exposure, from absorption of CO_2 .
- e.* Forms with gum mucilage an opaque white jelly.

IMPURITIES. — Those requiring special notice are: —

Oxide = Copper and Iron.

Carbonate = Lime.

QUANTITATIVE TESTS.

Grain-measures
of Vol. solution
of oxalic acid.

- | | |
|--|----------|
| 1. <i>Acetate</i> —gr. 38, dissolved in water, requires for complete precipitation | } = 200. |
| 2. <i>Liquor Plumbi Subacetatis</i> , fl 3 6 or 413·3 grains | |
| | } = 810. |

PHARMACY.—1. *Officinal Preparations.*

a. Emplastrum Plumbi. Pale yellow.

Boil together gently by a steam-bath, and simmer for four or five hours, stirring until of proper consistence { Powdered oxide of lead, 1.
Olive oil, $2\frac{1}{2}$.
Water, 1 or more.

b. Emplastrum Plumbi Iodidi. Pale orange.

Melt { Soap plaster, 4 } and mix { Powdered iodide
 { Resin plaster, 4 } intimately { of lead, 1.

c. Liquor Plumbi Subacetatis Dilutus. Slightly opaque.

Mix and filter { Solution of subacetate of lead, 1.
 { Rectified spirit, 1.
 { Water, 78.

d. Pilula Plumbi cum Opio.

Mix { Acetate of lead, in fine powder, 6 } gr. 1 of
 { Opium, in fine powder, 1 } opium in
 { Confection of roses, 1 } 8 grains.

e. Suppositoria Plumbi cum Opio.

Made with { Benzoated lard }
 { White wax } into 15-grain sup-
 { Oil of theobroma }
 positories, each containing { Acetate of lead, gr. 3.
 { Opium, gr. 1.

f. Unguenta.—These include:—

(i) *Unguentum Plumbi Acetatis.* { Acetate of lead, gr. 12.
 { Benzoated lard, $\frac{3}{8}$ 1.

(ii) *Unguentum Plumbi Carbonatis.* { Carbonate of lead, gr. 62.
 { Simple ointment, $\frac{3}{8}$ 1.

(iii) *Unguentum Plumbi Iodidi.* { Iodide of lead, gr. 62.
 { Simple ointment, $\frac{3}{8}$ 1.

(iv) *Unguentum Plumbi Subacetatis Compositum.*

Melt on a water-bath { White wax, $\frac{3}{8}$ 8 }
 { Almond oil, $\frac{3}{8}$ 16 }.

Remove the vessel, and when the mixture begins to thicken, gradually add solution of subacetate of lead, $\frac{3}{8}$ 6, and stir constantly until it cools.

Add { Camphor, gr. 60 } dissolve, and mix
 { Almond oil, $\frac{3}{8}$ 4 } thoroughly.

2. *Incompatibles.*—Those requiring notice are:—

a. Acetate.—Sulphuric and tannic acids, and their salts.

b. *Liquor Plumbi Subacetatis*.—Alkalies; lime-water; hard water; mineral acids and salts; vegetable acids; iodide of potassium; astringents; opium-preparations; albuminous liquids.

ACTION.—This is easily summed up as follows:—

1. Many preparations of lead are external astringents and sedatives. The *iodide* is a local stimulant. The *plaster* is non-irritating, and is useful as a support.

2 The *acetate* is a powerful internal astringent and vascular sedative. It is the only preparation used internally. *Dose*—gr. 1 to 4; of *pill*, gr. 4 to 6.

ZINCUM—ZINC.

GENERAL SUMMARY.—The B. P. recognizes the following:—

1. **Zincum** and **Zincum Granulatum**—Metallic Zinc.

2. **Zinci Oxidum**—Oxide of Zinc= ZnO .

3. **Salts.** {

- a. *Zinci Acetas*—Acetate of Zinc = $\text{Zn}(\text{C}_2\text{H}_3\text{O}_2)_2, 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$.
- b. *Zinci Carbonas*—Carbonate of Zinc= $\text{ZnCO}_3, (\text{ZnO})_3, 3\text{H}_2\text{O}$.
- c. *Zinci Chloridum*—Chloride of Zinc = ZnCl_2 .
- d. *Zinci Sulphas*—Sulphate of Zinc = $\text{ZnSO}_4, 7\text{H}_2\text{O}$.
- e. *Zinci Valerianas*—Valerianate of Zinc.= $\text{Zn}(\text{C}_5\text{H}_4\text{O}_2)_2$.

4. **Officinal Preparations.** {

- a. *Unguentum Zinci*.
- b. *Liquor Zinci Chloridi*. Burnett's disinfecting fluid.

SOURCES AND PREPARATION.

A. **Zinc** and **Granulated Zinc**.

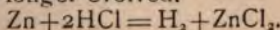
Zinc occurs native as a sulphide or carbonate; and is separated from impurities by sublimation.

Granulated Zinc.—Melt zinc in an earthen crucible, and pour it in a very thin stream into a bucket of cold water; afterwards dry the zinc.

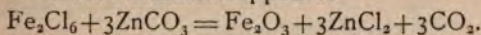
B. From **Granulated Zinc** and **Carbonate**.1. *Chloride*.

a. Add gradually { **Hydrochloric acid**, 22 } to
 { **Water**, 10 }

Granulated zinc, 8, in a porcelain basin, and gently warm in a sand-bath until gas is no longer evolved.



- b. Boil for half an hour, adding water for loss; and allow to stand for 24 hours, stirring frequently.
- c. Filter; pour in **solution of chlorine** by degrees, with frequent agitation, until there is a permanent odour of chlorine. This is for the purpose of removing iron, ferrous chloride being converted into ferric chloride.— $2\text{FeCl}_2 + \text{Cl}_2 = \text{Fe}_2\text{Cl}_6$.
- d. Add **carbonate of zinc**, $\frac{1}{4}$, in small quantities at a time, and agitating, until a brown sediment appears.



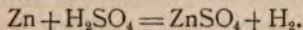
- e. Filter; evaporate until the liquid on a glass rod, cooled, forms an opaque white solid; pour into moulds; and before it has cooled, put into closely-stoppered bottles.

2. *Liquor Zinci Chloridi*.—Prepared as the chloride, except that in the final part of the process, the filtered liquid is evaporated down to the bulk of 20.

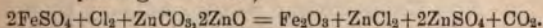
3. *Sulphate*.

- a. Add { **Sulphuric acid**, $\frac{3}{4}$ 12 } to **Granulated**
 { **Water**, O 4 } **zinc**, $\frac{3}{4}$ 16.

When effervescence has nearly ceased, aid the action by gentle heat.



- b. Filter immediately; and add **chlorine water** and **carbonate of zinc** (as in preparing chloride).



- c. Filter; evaporate; crystallize; and dry the crystals by exposure to the air on filtering paper on porous tiles.

- c. Boil for a few minutes; filter while hot; crystallize; decant, evaporate, and crystallize further; drain and dry the crystals by exposure to air.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES.—These may be readily summed up thus:—

A. **White Powders** $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{Oxide.} \\ 2. \text{Carbonate.} \end{array} \right.$

- a. Odourless and tasteless.
b. Insoluble in water.
c. Soluble in diluted nitric acid, the *carbonate* with effervescence.

B. **Crystals.**

1. *Acetate.*

- a. Thin, crystalline plates.
b. Translucent and colourless, with pearly lustre.
c. Soluble in water (10 in 25).
d. Sharp, unpleasant taste.

2. *Sulphate.*

- a. Minute prisms, like sulphate of magnesia.
b. Colourless and transparent.
c. Soluble in water (10 in 7).
d. Strong, metallic, styptic taste.
e. Efflorescent.

3. *Valerianate.*

- a. In tabular crystals.
b. White; brilliant; and pearly.
c. Feeble odour of valerianic acid; metallic taste.
d. Soluble in water (1 in 120); more in hot water; rectified spirit (1 in 60); ether (1 in 500).
e. When heated with diluted sulphuric acid, valerianic acid is distilled, which, when mixed with solution of acetate of copper, forms after a time oily drops, which gradually pass into a bluish-white crystalline deposit=valerianate of copper.

C. Special.

1. *Chloride*.

- a.* In rods or tablets.
- b.* White and opaque.
- c.* Very deliquescent and caustic.
- d.* Soluble in water (10 in 4); also freely in rectified spirit and ether.

2. *Liquor Zinci Chloridi*.

- a.* A colourless liquid.

IMPURITIES.—The following need to be noticed:—

1. *Oxide and Carbonate*.—Sulphates and chlorides.
2. *Acetate*.—Sulphates, chlorides, and lead.
3. *Chloride*.—Sulphate, lime, and iron.
4. *Sulphate*.—Iron, lead, and copper.
5. *Valerianate*.—Sulphate; butyric acid.

PHARMACY.—1. *Official Preparation*.

Unguentum Zinci.

Add $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Finely-powdered oxide of} \\ \text{zinc, gr. 80} \\ \text{Melted benzoated lard, } \frac{3}{1} \end{array} \right\}$ and stir till cool.

2. *Incompatibles*.—Alkalies and their carbonates; lime-water; acetate of lead; nitrate of silver; astringent vegetable infusions or decoctions; and milk.

ACTION.—The action of the preparations of zinc may be thus arranged:—

1. *Solution of chloride* is a valuable deodorant and disinfectant; also used as antiseptic.

2. Externally, *chloride* is a powerful escharotic. Several preparations are local astringents.

3. Internally, *oxide*, *acetate*, and *carbonate* are astringent. *Oxide* is much used as anti-diaphoretic. Most of the compounds are nervine tonics. *Sulphate* and *acetate* are non-depressing emetics.

Doses—Of *Oxide* or *Carbonate*, gr. 2 to 10.

Acetate, gr. 1 to 2; as emetic, gr. 10 to 20.

Chloride, gr. $\frac{1}{2}$ to 2; seldom given.

Sulphate, gr. 1 to 2; as emetic, gr. 10 to 30.

Valerianate, gr. 1 to 6 or more.

METALS AND SOLUTIONS IN APPENDIX.

In addition to those already mentioned, the following are in the *Appendix* of the B.P. for testing purposes.

1. *Platinum foil.*
2. *Platinum Black*, in a state of minute division.
3. *Granulated Zinc.*
4. *Solution of Chloride of Barium*, $\frac{3}{4}$ i in $\frac{3}{4}$ 10.
5. *Solution of Chloride of Gold.*
6. *Solution of Chloride of Zinc.*
7. *Solution of Perchloride of Platinum.*

ORGANIC CHEMICAL PRODUCTS.

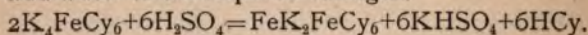
I. ACIDUM HYDROCYANICUM DILUTUM—
DILUTE HYDROCYANIC ACID.

A Solution of 2 per cent. of HCN gas in water.

SOURCE AND PREPARATION.—From ferrocyanide of potassium, by the following process:—

- a.* Mix in { **Sulphuric acid**, $\frac{3}{8}$ 1.
a retort { **Water**, $\frac{3}{8}$ 4.
b. When { **Ferrocyanide of potassium**, $\frac{3}{8}$ $2\frac{1}{4}$.
cool, add { **Water**, O $\frac{1}{2}$.

c. Distil gently into a cool receiver containing water, $\frac{3}{8}$ 8, until the whole measures $\frac{3}{8}$ 17; and add water to the required strength.



CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES.

- a.* A colourless liquid.
b. Powerful and peculiar odour.
c. Taste at first cooling; then irritating.
d. Slight and transient acid reaction.
e. Sp. gr. 0.997.
f. Volatile, and entirely volatilized by heat.
g. Liable to be decomposed on exposure to light; and hence is kept in dark-blue bottles.

IMPURITIES.—Sulphuric and hydrochloric acids. The presence of a trace of mineral acid is said to prevent decomposition.

QUANTITATIVE TEST.

| | | |
|---|-----------|--|
| 270 grains rendered alkaline by solution of soda, | } require | { 1000 grain-measures of Vol. solution of Nitrate of Silver, before a permanent precipitate forms. |
| | | |

PHARMACY.—I. *Officinal Preparation.*

and metallic salts, especially those that are deliquescent; castor oil, camphor and volatile oils, balsams; tannic and gallic acids; sugar and man-nite; vegetable alkaloids; and colouring matters.

TESTS.—In the B.P., special tests are applied to alcohol and rectified spirit.

- a. *Alcohol* does not cause anhydrous sulphate of copper to assume a blue colour when left in contact with it=absence of water.
- b. *Rectified spirit*.— $\frac{3}{4}$ with 30 grain-measures of *Vol. solution of nitrate of silver*, exposed for 24 hours to bright light, and then decanted from the black powder which has formed, undergoes no further change when again exposed to light with more of the test. This indicates that amylic alcohol or fusel oil and aldehyde are not present in excess.

PHARMACY.—I. *Official Preparation*.—The only named one is:—

| | | |
|-------------------------|-------|---------------------------------|
| <i>Mistura Spiritus</i> | } Mix | (French brandy, $\frac{3}{4}$. |
| <i>Vini Gallici.</i> | | Sugar, $\frac{3}{2}$. |
| | | The yolk of two eggs. |
| | | Cinnamon water, $\frac{3}{4}$. |

2. The members of this group are pharmaceutically employed in making other important preparations in the B.P., as follows:—

a. *Rectified spirit* is used in preparing, or is a constituent of:—

- (i) Several Tinctures.
- (ii) Almost all the officinal Spirits and the Essences.
- (iii) Aconitia, atropia, sulphate of beberia, strychnia, veratria, digitaline, and san-tonine.

b. *Proof spirit* is used in preparing:—

- (i) Most Tinctures.
- (ii) Spiritus Armoraciæ Compositus.

c. Sherry wine is the basis of all the official Wines, except:—

d. Orange-wine, { Vinum Ferri Citratis.
contained in { Vinum Quiniæ.

ACTION.—Alcohol in various forms is antiseptic; external refrigerant, if evaporation is allowed; stimulant, or rubefacient, if evaporation is prevented. Internally, alcohol may act as gastric stimulant; diffusible stimulant, especially upon nerve-centres and heart; depressant and narcotic in full doses; diaphoretic; diuretic; or antipyretic.

ALCOHOL AMYLICUM—**AMYLIC ALCOHOL**—**FUSEL OIL**
 $=C_5H_{12}O$.

It will be sufficient to mention this liquid, which is one of the products of the fermentation of saccharine solutions, and accumulates in the last portions of crude spirit submitted to distillation. It is introduced into the B.P., for the purpose of making Amyl Nitrite and Valerianate of Soda.

III. ÆTHER GROUP.

GENERAL SUMMARY.—The different forms of ether recognised in the B. P., include:—

1. **Æther—Sulphuric Ether.**—A mixture of 92 per cent. by volume of pure ether or oxide of ethyl ($C_4H_{10}O$), with about 8 per cent. of rectified spirit.

2. **Æther Purus—Pure Ether.**—Ether free from alcohol and water.

3. **Spiritus Ætheris—Spirit of Ether.**—A mixture of ether and rectified spirit (1 to 2).

4. **Spiritus Ætheris Nitrosi—Spirit of Nitrous Ether—Sweet Spirit of Nitre.**—A solution in rectified spirit of nitrous ether ($C_2H_5NO_2$) = 10 per cent. by volume.

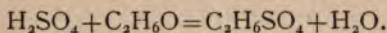
5. **Æther Aceticus—Acetic Ether—Acetate Ethyl** $=C_2H_5C_2H_3O_2$.

SOURCES AND PREPARATION.

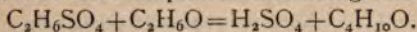
1. *Æther*.—Obtained from rectified spirit, by a complicated process, of which the following are the essential parts:—

- a. Add in successive { **Sulphuric acid**, $\frac{3}{4}$ 10
portions, and distil { **Rectified spirit**, $\frac{3}{4}$ 50.
- b. Allow the distillate to stand on **chloride of calcium** and **slaked lime**, in order to purify it from water, sulphurous acid, and sulphuric acid.
- c. Re-distil until it becomes of sp. gr. 0.735.

In this process *sulphovinic acid* is first formed, thus:—



The sulphovinic acid is again decomposed by the alcohol, ether and sulphuric acid being formed:—



This process may be continued indefinitely by adding more alcohol.

2. *Æther Purus*.—Prepared from ether, thus:—
 - a. Wash ether well with water, to remove the rectified spirit.
 - b. When the liquids separate, decant the supernatant ether.
 - c. Digest the ether for 24 hours with recently burnt **lime** and **chloride of calcium**, to remove the water.
 - d. Distil with a gentle heat.

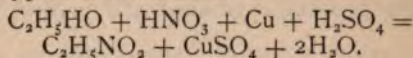
3. *Spiritus Ætheris*.—Mix { **Ether**, 1
 { **Rectified spirit**, 2.

4. *Spiritus Ætheris Nitrosi*.—Made from rectified spirit, by the following method:—

- a. Add gradually { **Rectified spirit**, 0.1 to }
 { **Sulphuric acid**, $\frac{3}{4}$ 2 };
and then add gradually **nitric acid**, $\frac{3}{4}$ 2½.

- b.* Distil in a retort with fine **copper-wire**, $\frac{2}{3}$ 2, between 170° and 180° , until $\frac{2}{3}$ 12 have passed over.
- c.* Allow the contents of the retort to cool; again add **nitric acid**, $\frac{2}{3}$ $2\frac{1}{2}$; and distil until the distillate has increased to $\frac{2}{3}$ 15.
- d.* Mix with **rectified spirit**, O 2, or as much as will make it of sp. gr. = 0.845, and of the proper strength.

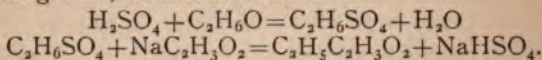
In this process *ether* is first formed, which combines with the *nitrous acid* produced by the action of the copper on nitric acid.



5. *Æther Aceticus*.—Made in the following way:—

- a.* Distil $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Rectified spirit, 5} \\ \text{Sulphuric acid, 10} \\ \text{Dry acetate of soda, 8.} \end{array} \right.$

Ether is formed; *acetic acid* is liberated from the acetate of soda; they combine, acetic ether distilling over, with some water.



- b.* Add the product to half its weight of **chloride of calcium**, in a stoppered bottle; and allow it to remain for 24 hours. The water is thus removed.
- c.* Decant; and rectify the ethereal liquid.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES.—The characters and properties of the several ethers may be readily grouped in the following way:—

1. They are colourless, mobile liquids; Spirit of Nitrous Ether may have a faint yellow tinge.
2. Volatile, especially ether and pure ether, with the production of considerable cold; they leave no residue on evaporation; and are inflammable.

3. They have each a peculiar odour and taste:—

| | ODOUR. | TASTE. |
|----------------------|---|------------------------------|
| <i>Ether</i> | Strong and sweet; fragrant. | Hot and pungent. |
| <i>Nitrous Ether</i> | Agreeable and penetrating; apple-like. | Cooling; sweetish and sharp. |
| <i>Acetic Ether</i> | Agreeable; ethereal; faintly like apples. | Burning. |

4. The Sp. gr. are as follows:—

| | | |
|---------------------------------|---------|---------|
| <i>Æther</i> | | = 0·735 |
| <i>Æther Purus</i> | | = 0·720 |
| <i>Spiritus Ætheris</i> | | = 0·809 |
| <i>Spiritus Ætheris Nitrosi</i> | | = 0·845 |
| <i>Æther Aceticus</i> | | = 0·910 |

5. Nitrous ether has a slight acid reaction usually. Acetic ether should not have this reaction. Ether scarcely reddens litmus.

6. Water dissolves ether (1 in 10); acetic ether (about 1 in 12). Spirit of ether readily mixes with water. Ether is soluble in all proportions in rectified spirit; and acetic ether in both rectified spirit and ether.

7. Ether dissolves iodine, bromine, and corrosive sublimate freely; sulphur and phosphorus sparingly; volatile and fixed oils; many resins and balsams; caoutchouc; and most of the vegetable alkaloids. It does not dissolve the caustic alkalies.

IMPURITIES AND TESTS.

1. *Ether*.

a. 50 measures agitated with an equal volume of water are reduced to 45, by an absorption of 10 per cent.

b. Agitated with half its volume of a saturated solution of chloride of calcium, ether is not lessened in bulk—indicating absence of acid and water.

2. *Spirit of Nitrous Ether.*

- a. Effervesces feebly or not at all, when shaken with a little bicarbonate of soda = acid.
- b. Agitated with solution of sulphate of iron, and a few drops of sulphuric acid, it becomes deep olive-brown or black.
- c. Agitated with twice its volume of saturated solution of chloride of calcium, in a closed tube, 2 per cent. of its original volume will rise to the surface as an ethereal liquid.

PHARMACY.—1. *Ether* is contained in Collodion; Collodion Flexile; and Liquor Epispasticus. It is used in preparing Extractum Filicis Maris. *Washed Ether* is employed in making Extractum Ergotæ Liquidum, to remove the oil from the ergot, previous to making the extract.

2. *Spirit of Ether* is contained in Tinctura Lobeliæ Ætherea.

3. *Incompatibles.*—Spirit of Nitrous Ether is incompatible with iodide of potassium; sulphate of iron; tincture of guaiacum; gallic and tannic acids; and emulsions.

ACTION.—Ether, by inhalation, is a general anæsthetic, pure ether being much employed during operations for this purpose. Externally, it may be refrigerant, local anæsthetic, stimulant, or rubefacient. Internally, spirit of ether is usually given, being a powerful diffusible stimulant, antispasmodic, narcotic, and expectorant. Acetic ether has similar actions, but is less powerful. Spirit of nitrous ether is a stimulant, diaphoretic, and diuretic.

IV. CHLOROFORMUM — CHLOROFORM — TERCHLORIDE OF FORMYL = CHCl_3 .

SOURCE AND PREPARATION.—Prepared from chlorinated lime and rectified spirit, as follows:—

1. Distil $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Chlorinated lime, lb 10.} \\ \text{Slaked lime, lb 5.} \\ \text{Rectified spirit, } \frac{3}{4} \text{ 30.} \\ \text{Water, C 3.} \end{array} \right.$
2. Wash $\frac{3}{4}$ 50 of the distillate with water; allow the mixture to separate into two strata; remove the lower stratum = crude chloroform; wash repeatedly; and shake with its own volume of **sulphuric acid**.
3. Separate the chloroform;
mix with $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Chloride of calcium, } \frac{3}{4} \text{ 2} \\ \text{Slaked lime, } \frac{3}{4} \frac{1}{2} \end{array} \right\}$ and re-distil.

The changes which take place are doubtful, but it is supposed that (1) alcohol is oxidized to form aldehyde and water; (2) aldehyde and chlorine produce chloral and hydrochloric acid; (3) chloral and hydrate of calcium are decomposed to form chloroform and formiate of calcium.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES.

1. A colourless, limpid liquid.
2. Peculiar ethereal odour; and sweet taste.
3. Neutral in reaction.
4. Heavy; sp. gr. 1.49.
5. Volatile; evaporates speedily, and leaves no residue or odour.
6. Burns, though not readily, with a green smoky flame.
7. Dropped into water it suddenly sinks, and remains without opacity. Soluble in water (1 in 200); rectified spirit (10 in 7); ether (1 in $1\frac{1}{2}$); freely in olive oil and oil of turpentine. Insoluble in glycerine.

alcohol; (b.) with a small quantity of **lime**, to take up HCl that is formed.

3. Add **water**, by which the chloral is converted into the hydrate.

The reactions by which chloral is produced are complicated, aldehyde and hydrochloric acid being first formed; and ultimately chloral.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES.

1. In small colourless crystals.
2. Not deliquescent on exposure to air.
3. Peculiar, pungent, but not acrid odour.
4. Pungent and rather bitter taste.
5. Soluble in less than its own weight of water, rectified spirit, and ether; in four times its weight of chloroform.

6. The aqueous solution is neutral or but slightly acid=absence of HCl.

7. Melts with gentle heat to a colourless transparent liquid, which solidifies at about 120° ; boils about 205° in a test-tube with pieces of broken glass; volatilizes at a slightly higher temperature on platinum foil, without residue.

8. Decomposed by alkalies into chloroform and an alkaline formiate.

9. A solution in chloroform, agitated with sulphuric acid, does not colour it=absence of oily impurities.

QUANTITATIVE TEST.—100 grains dissolved in $\frac{3}{4}$ l of water, and mixed with 30 grains of slaked lime, yield not less than 70 grains of chloroform on careful distillation.

PHARMACY.—*Officinal preparation* :—

| | | |
|--------------------------|---|------------------------------------|
| <i>Syrupus Chloral</i> , | { | Hydrate of chloral, gr. 80. |
| = gr. 10 in 3 l | | Water, $\frac{3}{4}$ l. |
| | | Syrup, to make up $\frac{3}{4}$ l. |

ACTION.—Hypnotic. Sedative. Antispasmodic. Antiseptic.

Dose—gr. 5 to 30.

VI. AMYL NITRIS—NITRITE OF AMYL = $C_5H_{11}NO_2$.

SOURCE AND PREPARATION.—From amylic alcohol.

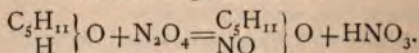
1. Add **Sulphuric acid** $\left(\begin{array}{l} \text{Purified amylic alcohol} \\ \text{Copper foil} \end{array} \right)$ in a $\left(\begin{array}{l} \text{glass} \\ \text{retort.} \end{array} \right)$ $\left(\begin{array}{l} \text{1/10th its vol-} \\ \text{ume) to} \end{array} \right)$

2. Add the same quantity of **nitric acid**, distilled with an equal volume of water.

3. Distil with gentle heat, adding more nitric acid until almost all the amylic alcohol is exhausted.

4. Wash the distillate with **solution of soda**, to remove hydrocyanic and other free acids.

5. Rectify over fused **carbonate of potash**, to get rid of the water, reserving the portion which distils over between 205° and 212° .



CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES.

1. An ethereal liquid, of yellowish-colour.
2. Very volatile; boils at 205° .
3. Peculiar, and not disagreeable odour.
4. Sp. gr. 0.877.
5. Almost insoluble in water; freely soluble in alcohol, ether, and chloroform.
6. If added drop by drop to fused caustic potash, valerianate of potash is formed.

ACTION. — Anodyne. Sedative. Vaso-dilator. Used internally, and by inhalation.

Dose— $m\frac{1}{2}$ to 5 internally; $m\frac{1}{2}$ to 5 by inhalation.

VII. ACIDUM CARBOLICUM—CARBOLIC OR
PHENIC ACID = $\text{HC}_6\text{H}_5\text{O}$.

SOURCE AND PREPARATION.—By fractional distillation of coal-tar, and subsequent purification.

1. Treat the heavier coal-tars with **solution of soda or milk of lime.**
2. Decompose the resulting compounds by a **mineral acid.**
3. Rectify the oily liquid so obtained.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES.

1. In acicular crystals.
2. Originally colourless, but gradually change to a rose-pink colour, and then to a brown tint.
3. Powerful odour; and peculiar burning taste, resembling, but more offensive than creasote.
4. Sp. gr. = 1.065.
5. Melts at 95° (B.P.). The pure carbolic acid melts between 105° and 108° .
6. Soluble in water (1 in 15); olive oil (1 in $1\frac{3}{4}$); glycerine (4 in 1); chloroform (3 in 1); ether (4 in 1); alcohol (5 in 1); and volatile oils.
7. Readily absorbs moisture from the atmosphere, and is then liquefied. Can form a crystalline hydrate = 6-sided prisms.
8. Does not redden litmus-paper.
9. Coagulates albumen and collodion.

IMPURITIES.—Cresol is present in the ordinary carbolic acid, which causes it to change colour, and modifies its boiling-point.

PHARMACY. — *Officinal preparations.*

- a. *Glycerinum* { Carbolic acid, 1 } Rub together
Acidi Carbolici. { Glycerine, 4 } till dissolved.
- b. *Suppositoria* { Carbolic acid, gr. 12 } = 12
Acidi Carbolici. { Curd soap, gr. 180 } suppo-
cum Sapone. { Starch, to form a paste } sitories.

ACTION.—Externally, caustic; antiseptic; disinfectant. Internally, antiseptic; astringent; sedative; expectorant.

SECTION III.

THE ORGANIC KINGDOM.

This kingdom includes the two divisions of:—

1. **Vegetable** or **Botanical**. 2. **Animal**. I propose to treat of these divisions according to the following plan:—

1. To arrange, in the form of a TABLE, the drugs immediately derived from the vegetable kingdom under their several *Natural Orders*, with the view of simply making the student acquainted at the outset with their (a) *names*; (b) *botanical and geographical sources*; (c) *nature*, as to the part or parts of the plant used, or any special product obtained from it; (d) *chief constituents*, especially their *active principles*. He should make himself tolerably familiar with this outline of the subject, before proceeding further.

2. To discuss the vegetable drugs under GROUPS, as parts of plants (roots, leaves, flowers, &c.), or particular products (gums, resins, oils, &c.), indicating:—a. Their *official source, natural order, and nature*; b. Their *chief characters and properties*; c. Their *pharmacy and action*. In most cases it will be convenient to arrange this part of the subject in a tabular form, but not in all.

3. To give a brief account of the drugs derived from the ANIMAL KINGDOM.

TABLE OF NATURAL ORDERS.

I. EXOGENÆ.

A. THALAMIFLORÆ.

Nat. Ord. **RANUNCULACEÆ.**

| Botanical Source or Name of Plant. Geographical Source. | Official Nature = Part of Plant or Product. | Active Principles, and Chief Constituents. |
|---|--|---|
| Aconitum Napellus, — Monkshood. — <i>Indigenous.</i> — Cultivated in Britain. Root also imported from Germany. | 1. <i>Aconiti Folia.</i> The fresh leaves and flower- ing tops, gathered in July, when about one- third of the flowers are expanded. 2. <i>Aconiti Radix.</i> The dried root, col- lected in winter and early spring. 3. <i>Aconitia.</i> The alkaloid derived from the officinal parts of the plant. | All the recognized parts of the plant con- tain :— 1. <i>Aconitia</i> , the of- ficinal alkaloid. 2. <i>Aconella</i> , an alka- loid. 3. <i>Aconitic acid.</i> |
| Podophyllum Feltatum. — American May Apple. — <i>United States.</i> Imported from North America. | 1. <i>Podophylli Radix.</i> The dried rhizome. 2. <i>Podophylli Resina</i> — <i>Podophyllin.</i> The resin obtained from the rhizome. | 1. <i>Podophyllin</i> , or the officinal resin. 2. <i>Berberine</i> , an al- kaloid. 3. <i>Saponin</i> , a gluco- side. |

Nat. Ord. **MAGNOLIACEÆ.**

| Botanical Source or Name of Plant. Geographical Source. | Official Nature = Part of Plant or Product. | Active Principles, and Chief Constituents. |
|--|--|--|
| Illicium Anisatum. — Star Anise. — <i>China.</i> | <i>Oleum Anisi.</i> Volatile oil distilled from the fruit. This is one of the two sources of <i>Oleum Anisi.</i> | |

Nat. Ord. **MENISPERMACEÆ.**

| | | |
|---|--|---|
| Jateorrhiza Calumba. — Calumba or Columbo. — Forests of Eastern Africa, between Ibo and the Zambesi. | <i>Calumbæ Radix.</i> The root sliced transversely, and dried. | 1. <i>Calumbine</i> , a neutral principle, 2. <i>Calumbic acid.</i> 3. <i>Berberine</i> , an alkaloid. } Form a yellow salt. 4. Starch. (Does not contain tannic or gallic acid). |
| Cissampelos Pareira. — Velvet Leaf. — Also Chondodendron Tomentosum. (Hanbury). — <i>Brazil.</i> | <i>Pareiræ Radix.</i> Dried root. | 1. <i>Pelosine</i> or <i>Cissampeline</i> —a base, supposed to be identical with <i>Beberia</i> . 2. Resin; bitter yellow matter; starch. |

Nat. Ord. **PAPAVERACEÆ.**

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| Papaver Somniferum. — Garden Poppy. — Grown in Asia Minor. Cultivated in Britain. | 1. <i>Papaveris Capsula.</i> Nearly ripe dried capsules. 2. <i>Opium.</i> The juice obtained from incisions made in the unripe capsule, inspissated by spontaneous evaporation. | The principles contained in opium are very numerous, and only the most important need be mentioned here. 1. <i>Alkaloids.</i> a. <i>Morphia</i> = at least 6 to 8, or 9 to 12 per cent. in good opium. |
|--|--|--|

| Botanical Source or Name of Plant. Geographical Source. | Official Nature = Part of Plant or Product. | Active Principles, and Chief Constituents. |
|---|--|--|
| | <p>3. <i>Morphiæ Acetas</i>. Acetate of morphia. Prepared from:—</p> <p>4. <i>Morphiæ Hydrochloras</i>. Hydrochlorate of morphia. Prepared from opium.</p> | <p>b. Codeia. c. Papaverine. d. Cryptopia. e. Thebaia. f. Paramorphia. g. Narcotine. = 6 to 8 per cent. 2. <i>Neutral crystalline bodies</i>. a. Meconin. b. Narcein. 3. <i>Acids</i>. a. Meconic = 8 per cent. b. Thebolactic. 4. <i>Other Ingredients</i>. a. Extractive matters. b. Resin, gum, volatile oil. c. Salts.</p> |
| <p>Papaver Rhœas. — Red Poppy. — <i>Indigenous.</i></p> | <p><i>Rhæados Petala</i>. The fresh petals, collected immediately after the expansion of the flower.</p> | <p>1. <i>Morphia</i>. (Attfield says there is none.) 2. <i>Rhæadin</i>, crystallizable non-poisonous alkaloid. 3. <i>Acids</i>; colouring matter.</p> |

Nat. Ord. CRUCIFERÆ.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| <p>Cochlearia Armoracia. — Horse-Radish. — <i>Indigenous.</i> Cultivated in Britain.</p> | <p><i>Armoraciæ Radix</i>. The fresh root. It may be kept fresh by burying it in sand, in a cool place.</p> | <p>Volatile oil is obtained when horse-radish is moistened with water = Sulphocyanide of Butyl, formed by a decomposition. (See VOLATILE OILS).</p> |
|---|---|---|

| Botanical Source or Name of Plant. Geographical Source. | Official Nature = Part of Plant or Product. | Active Principles, and Chief Constituents. |
|---|---|--|
| Sinapis Nigra et Alba. — Black and White Mustard. — <i>Indigenous.</i> | 1. <i>Sinapis.</i> The seeds of black and white mustard, reduced to powder, mixed. 2. <i>Oleum Sinapis.</i> Volatile oil distilled from the seeds of black mustard, after the expression of the fixed oil. Produced by decomposition. (See VOLATILE OILS). | 1. <i>Fixed oil</i> in both = 25 to 35 per cent. 2. <i>Myrosine</i> in both = an albuminous ferment. 3. <i>Myronate of potash</i> in black mustard. 4. <i>Sinalbin</i> , a glucoside in white mustard. 5. <i>Sinapin</i> , an alkaloid in both, as a sulphocyanide = sulpho-sinapisin. |

Nat. Ord. **POLYGALACEÆ.**

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| Krameria Triandra. — <i>Peru and Chili.</i> | <i>Krameria Radix.</i> The dried root. | 1. <i>Krameric Acid.</i> 2. <i>Rhatanin.</i> 3. <i>Tannic Acid</i> = about 40 per cent. |
| Polygala Senega. — Senega. — <i>North America.</i> | <i>Senega Radix.</i> The dried root stock, with branched tap-root. | 1. <i>Senegin</i> or <i>Polygalic Acid.</i> 2. <i>Tannin.</i> 3. <i>Resin.</i> 4. <i>Sugar, &c.</i> |

Nat. Ord. **LINACEÆ.**

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| Linum Usitatissimum. — Flax. — <i>Indigenous.</i> | 1. <i>Lini Semina—Linseed.</i> The seeds. 2. <i>Lini Farina—Linseed-meal.</i> The seeds, ground and deprived of the oil by expression, and the cakes reduced to powder. 3. <i>Oleum Lini—Linseed oil.</i> The oil expressed from linseed without heat. | 1. The <i>fixed oil</i> , which is officinal = about 20 to 30 per cent. 2. A peculiar <i>gummy matter</i> or <i>mucilage</i> in the envelope or testa of the seeds, which is readily imparted to hot water. |
|---|--|--|

Nat. Ord. **MALVACEÆ.**

| Botanical Source or Name of Plant. Geographical Source. | Official Nature = Part of Plant or Product. | Active Principles, and Chief Constituents. |
|---|--|--|
| Gossypium. Various species. — <i>North America and India.</i> | 1. <i>Gossypium</i> — <i>Cotton wool</i> . The hairs of the seeds, carded. 2. <i>Pyroxylin</i> or <i>gun-cotton</i> —made from cotton wool. 3. <i>Collodion</i> —made from pyroxylin. 4. <i>Collodion Flexile</i> —made from collodion. | Cotton is a modification of <i>lignin</i> . The other preparations will be subsequently considered. |

Nat. Ord. **BYTTNERIACEÆ.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Theobroma Cacao. — <i>West Indies and South America.</i> | <i>Oleum Theobromæ</i> — <i>Cacao butter</i> . A concrete oil, obtained by expression and heat from the ground seeds. | Chiefly <i>stearin</i> , with a little <i>olein</i> . |
|---|---|---|

Nat. Ord. **AURANTIACEÆ.**

| | | |
|--|---|---|
| Citrus Bigaradia. — Seville and Bitter Orange. — Citrus Aurantium. — Sweet Orange. — <i>South Europe. Spain.</i> | 1. <i>Aqua Aurantii Floris</i> .—Water distilled from the flowers of the bitter and sweet orange. 2. <i>Aurantii Cortex</i> — <i>Bitter orange peel</i> . The outer part of the rind of the ripe fruit of <i>Citrus Bigaradia</i> , fresh and dried. The fruit is a <i>hesperidium</i> . | A small quantity of peculiar volatile oil—oil of Neroli. 1. Volatile oil. 2. Bitter extractive Hesperidin or Aurantitin. 3. A little gallic acid. |
|--|---|---|

| Botanical Source or Name of Plant. Geographical Source. | Official Name = Part of Plant or Product. | Active Principles, and Chief Constituents. |
|--|--|--|
| Citrus Limonum. — Lemon. The ripe fruit. — South Europe. Lemon-oil is chiefly imported from Sicily. | 1. <i>Limonis Succus</i> — <i>Lemon-juice.</i> The freshly expressed juice of the ripe fruit. — 2. <i>Limonis Cortex</i> — <i>Lemon-peel.</i> The outer part of the rind of the fresh fruit. — 3. <i>Oleum Limonis</i> — <i>Oil of Lemon.</i> The oil expressed or distilled from the fresh peel. | 1. Citric acid = 32.5 grains in fl. 3i. 2. Malic and phosphoric acids. 3. Mucilage; sugar; salts. — 1. Volatile oil. 2. Hesperidin. 3. A little gallic acid. |
| Egle Marmelos. — Bael. — Malabar and Coromandel. | <i>Belæ Fructus</i> — <i>Bael fruit.</i> The half-ripe fruit, dried. | An astringent principle, allied to tannin. |

Nat. Ord. CANELLACEÆ.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Canella Alba. — White Canella. — West Indies. | 1. <i>Canellæ Albæ Cortex</i> — <i>Canella Bark.</i> The dried bark. | 1. Resin. 2. Volatile oil. 3. Bitter extractive. (Does not contain tannic or gallic acid). |
|---|---|---|

Nat. Ord. GUTTIFERÆ.

| | | |
|--|---|--|
| Garcinia Morella. — Gamboge. — Siam. | <i>Cambogia</i> — <i>Gamboge.</i> A gum-resin obtained from the plant. | 1. Yellow, acrid resin — <i>Gambogic Acid</i> = 75 to 80 per cent. 2. Soluble gum = from 20 to 25 per cent. |
|--|---|--|

Nat. Ord. VITACEÆ.

| Botanical Source or Name of Plant. Geographical Source | Official Nature = Part of Plant or Product. | Active Principles, and Chief Constituents. |
|--|---|---|
| Vitis Vinifera — Grape-Vine. — <i>Spain.</i> | 1. <i>Uvæ</i> — Raisins. The ripe fruit, dried in the sun or with artificial heat. | 1. Grape-sugar. 2. Acid tartrate of potash. 3. Malic acid. 4. Fixed oil, in seeds. 5. Tannic acid, in seeds and skin. |

Nat. Ord. ZYGOPHYLLACEÆ.

| | | |
|---|--|---|
| Guaiacum Officinale. — <i>St. Domingo and Jamaica.</i> | 1. <i>Guaiaci Lignum</i> — <i>Guaiacum Wood</i> — <i>Lignum Vitæ.</i> The wood in logs, small chips, or coarse powder. 2. <i>Guaiaci Resina</i> — <i>Guaiacum Resin.</i> The resin obtained from the stem by natural exudation, incision, or heat. | Resin = 26 per cent. 1. Guaiacic acid. 2. Guaiaretic acid. 3. Guaiaconic acid. |
|---|--|---|

Nat. Ord. RUTACEÆ.

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| Barosma Betulina ; Barosma Crenulata ; Barosma Serratifolia. — Bucco or Buchu. — <i>Cape of Good Hope.</i> | 1. <i>Buchu Folia</i> — <i>Buchu Leaves.</i> The dried leaves. | 1. Volatile oil = about $1\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. 2. Bitter extractive = <i>Barosmin</i> or <i>Diosmin</i> . |
|---|---|--|

| Botanical Source or Name of Plant. Geographical Source. | Official Nature = Part of Plant or Product. | Active Principles, and Chief Constituents. |
|---|--|---|
| Galipea Cusparia. — Angustura Bark Tree. — <i>Tropical South America.</i> | 1. <i>Cuspariæ Cortex</i> — <i>Cusparia</i> or <i>Angustura</i> bark. The dried bark. | 1. Resin. 2. Neutral bitter principle= <i>Cusparin</i> or <i>Angusturin</i> . 3. Trace of volatile oil. |
| Ruta Graveolens. — Rue. — <i>South of Europe.</i> | 1. <i>Oleum Rutæ</i> —Oil of <i>Rue</i> . The volatile oil distilled with water from the fresh herb. | |

Nat. Ord. **SIMARUBACEÆ.**

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| Picræna Excelsa. — Quassia. — <i>Jamaica.</i> | <i>Quassiæ Lignum</i> — <i>Quassia</i> wood. The wood in billets, raspings, or chips. | 1. Neutral crystallizable bitter principle, = <i>Quassine</i> . 2. Some starch. (Does not contain tannin). |
|---|--|--|

B. CALICYFLORÆ.

Nat. Ord. **RHAMNACEÆ.**

| | | |
|--|---|--|
| Rhamnus Catharticus. — Buckthorn. — <i>Indigenous.</i> | 1. <i>Rhamni Succus</i> — <i>Buckthorn Juice</i> . The recently expressed juice of the ripe berries. | 1. Sugar. 2. Mucilage. 3. A purgative principle. 4. Green colouring matter. |
|--|---|--|

Nat. Ord. ANACARDIACEÆ.

| Botanical Source or Name of Plant. Geographical Source. | Official Nature = Part of Plant or Product. | Active Principles, and Chief Constituents. |
|---|--|---|
| Pistacia Lentiscus. — <i>Levant.</i> <i>Island of Scio.</i> | 1. <i>Mastiche</i> — <i>Mastic.</i> A resinous exudation obtained by incision from the stem. | 1. Mastichic acid. 2. Masticin. 3. A little volatile oil. |

Nat. Ord. AMYRIDACEÆ.

| | | |
|--|--|---|
| Canarium Commune. — <i>Manilla.</i> | 1. <i>Elemi.</i> A concrete resinous exudation. | 1. A crystalline resin, <i>Elemi</i> = 25 per cent. 2. Uncrystallizable resin = 60 per cent. 3. Volatile oil = 10 to 12 per cent. 4. Crystalline, bitter, neutral principle = 1 to 2 per cent. |
| Balsamodendron Myrrha. — <i>Arabia and</i> <i>Abyssinia.</i> | 1. <i>Myrrha</i> — <i>Myrrh.</i> A gum-resinous exudation from the stem. | 1. Gum, like arabin. 2. Resin = <i>Myrrhin.</i> 3. Volatile oil = <i>Myrrhol.</i> 4. Salts. |

Nat. Ord. LEGUMINOSÆ.

a. PAPILIONACEÆ.

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| Glycyrrhiza Glabra. — Liquorice. — <i>Indigenous.</i> | <i>Glycyrrhizæ Radix</i> — <i>Liquorice root.</i> The root-stock or underground stem, fresh and dried. | 1. Liquorice sugar or <i>Glycyrrhizine.</i> 2. Asparagine. 5. Gum; mucilage. 4. Acrid resinous oil. |
| Astragalus Verus. — Milk Vetch. — <i>Asia Minor.</i> | <i>Tragacantha</i> — <i>Tragacanth.</i> A gummy exudation from the stem. | 1. <i>Arabin</i> = 53 per cent. 2. <i>Bassorin</i> = 33 per cent. 3. Starch. |

| Botanical Source or Name of Plant. Geographical Source. | Official Nature = Part of Plant or Product. | Active Principles, and Chief Constituents. |
|--|---|--|
| Sarothamnus Scoparius. — Broom. — <i>Indigenous.</i> — <i>Europe.</i> | <i>Scoparii Cacumina</i> — <i>Broom tops.</i> The fresh and dried tops. | 1. <i>Scoparin</i> = a neu- tral principle. 2. <i>Sparteïn</i> , a vola- tile liquid alkaloid. |
| Pterocarpus Santalinus. — Red Sandal Wood Tree. — <i>Ceylon.</i> <i>Coromandel.</i> | <i>Pterocarpi Lignum</i> — <i>Red Sandal-wood.</i> The wood in raspings. | 1. <i>Santalic acid</i> or <i>Santalin</i> = dark-red and crystalline. 2. <i>Santal.</i> 3. <i>Kino-tannic acid</i> in small quantity. |
| Pterocarpus Marsupium. — Kino Tree. — <i>Malabar.</i> | <i>Kino.</i> — Inspissated juice from incisions in the trunk. | 1. <i>Mimo- Kino- or</i> <i>Catechu-tannic acid</i> = 75 per cent. 2. <i>Catechin.</i> 3. <i>Red gum</i> = about 24 per cent. |
| Myroxylon Pereiræ. — <i>San Salvador,</i> <i>Central America.</i> | <i>Balsamum Peruvia-</i> <i>num</i> — <i>Balsam of Peru.</i> A balsam exuding from the trunk of the tree, after the bark has been scorched and re- moved. | 1. Neutral volatile oil = <i>Cinnamate of</i> <i>Benzyl</i> or <i>Cinnameïn</i> = 60 to 70 per cent. 2. <i>Metacinnameïn</i> , a crystallizable solid. 3. <i>Cinnamic acid</i> = 6 or 7 per cent. 4. <i>Styracin</i> or <i>Cinna-</i> <i>mate of Cinnyl.</i> 5. Resins, supposed to be produced by the oxidation of the oil; increase with age. |

| Botanical Source or Name of Plant. Geographical Source. | Official Nature = Part of Plant or Product. | Active Principles, and Chief Constituents. |
|---|--|---|
| Myroxylon Toluifera. — <i>Tolu</i> in <i>New Granada</i> . | <i>Balsamum Tolutanum</i> — <i>Balsam of Tolu</i> . A balsam exuding from the trunk of the tree, after incisions have been made in the bark. | Similar to balsam of Peru; also contains <i>Tolene</i> , a volatile oil. |
| Physostigma Venenosum. — <i>Western Africa</i> . | <i>Physostigmatis Faba</i> — <i>Calabar Bean</i> . The seeds. | 1. <i>Physostigmia</i> or <i>Eseria</i> = an alkaloid, in the cotyledons. — The active principle. 2. Starch, legumin, mucilage, etc. |

b. CÆSALPINÆÆ.

| | | |
|---|--|---|
| Hæmatoxylon Campechianum. — Imported from <i>Campeachy</i> in <i>Central America</i> , from <i>Honduras</i> and <i>Jamaica</i> . | <i>Hæmatoxyli Lig- num</i> — <i>Logwood</i> . The heart-wood, in logs or chips. | 1. <i>Hæmatoxyline</i> = crystalline = 9 to 12 per cent. 2. Tannic acid. 3. Resin. 4. Colouring matter. |
| Cassia Lanceolata. — Cassia Obovata. — Imported from <i>Alexandria</i> . | 1. <i>Senna Alexandrina</i> — <i>Alexandrian Senna</i> . Leaflets carefully freed from the flowers, pods, and leaf stalks. | 1. A glucoside = <i>Cathartine</i> or <i>Cathartic acid</i> . 2. A yellow substance identical with <i>chrysophanic acid</i> . 3. A crystalline sugar = <i>Cathartomannite</i> . 4. Trace of volatile oil. 5. Tartrate and oxalate of lime and potash. |
| Cassia Elongata. — Cultivated in <i>Southern India</i> . | 2. <i>Senna Indica</i> — <i>Indian</i> or <i>Tinnivelly Senna</i> . The leaflets. | |

| Botanical Source or Name of Plant. Geographical Source. | Official Name = Part of Plant or Product. | Active Principles, and Chief Constituents |
|---|---|--|
| Cassia Fistula. — Pudding-pipe Tree or Purging Cassia. — <i>E. and W. Indies.</i> | <i>Cassia Pulpa.</i> The pulp from the pods. | 1. Cane-sugar = 60 per cent. 2. Mucilage and pectin. 3. A substance analogous to tannin. 4. A purgative principle. |
| Tamarindus Indica. — <i>E. and W. Indies.</i> | <i>Tamarindus</i> — <i>Tamarind.</i> The preserved pulp of the fruit. | 1. Malic, citric, and tartaric acids. 2. Cream of tartar. 3. Sugar; gum; &c. |
| Copaifera (Several species). — Copaiva Trees. — <i>W. Indies and Tropical America; chiefly Valley of the Amazon.</i> | 1. <i>Copaiba</i> — <i>Copaiva.</i> An oleo-resin, obtained by incision from the trunk. 2. <i>Oleum Copaibæ</i> — <i>Oil of Copaiva.</i> Oil distilled from copaiba. | { 1. Resin— <i>Copaivic acid</i> = about 52 per cent. 2. Volatile oil = about 40 per cent. 3. Soft brown resinous matter = $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 2 per cent., increasing with age. |

c. MIMOSÆ.

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| Acacia Vera, &c. — <i>E. Africa.</i> Imported from <i>Alexandria.</i> | <i>Acaciæ Gummi</i> — <i>Gum Acacia.</i> A gummy exudation from the stem of one or more undetermined species of <i>Acacia.</i> | 1. <i>Arabic acid</i> or <i>Arabin</i> , combined with lime, magnesia, and potash. 2. Water = about 17 per cent. 3. Various salts, &c. |
| Indigofera. (Various species). — <i>India.</i> | <i>Indigo.</i> A blue pigment prepared from the <i>Indigofera</i> , and introduced in the <i>Appendix</i> for making a test-solution of sulphate of <i>Indigo.</i> | |

Nat. Ord. ROSACEÆ.

| Botanical Source or Name of Plant. Geographical Source. | Official Nature = Part of Plant or Product. | Active Principles, and Chief Constituents. |
|---|---|--|
| Amygdalus Communis. Var. Amara , or Bitter Almond , and Dulcis , or Sweet Almond . <i>Amara</i> chiefly from <i>Mogadore</i> . <i>Dulcis</i> cultivated about <i>Malaga</i> . | 1. <i>Amygdala Amara</i> — <i>Bitter Almond</i> . The seeds. 2. <i>Amygdala Dulcis</i> — <i>Sweet Almond</i> . The seeds. 3. <i>Oleum Amygdalæ</i> — <i>Oil of Almonds</i> . The oil obtained by <i>bressure</i> , from either sweet or bitter almonds. | 1. Oil of Almonds = about 50 per cent. 2. <i>Emulsine</i> in both, — an albuminous principle. 3. Sugar, gum, &c. 4. Salts, chiefly phosphates. 5. <i>Amygdalin</i> — a crystalline glucoside, in <i>bitter almonds</i> . When moistened, amygdalin is acted upon by emulsine, and volatile oil of bitter almonds or hydride of benzoyl and hydrocyanic acid are formed. |
| Brayera Anthelmintica. <i>Abyssinia</i> . | <i>Cusso</i> — <i>Koussou</i> . The flowers and tops. | 1. <i>Koussine</i> , crystallizable. 2. Volatile oil. 3. Gum, sugar, &c. |
| Prunus Lauro-cerasus. Cherry Laurel. <i>Indigenous.</i> <i>Native of Asia Minor.</i> | <i>Lauro-cerasi Folia</i> — <i>Cherry Laurel Leaves</i> . The fresh leaves. | 1. <i>Amygdalin</i> . 2. <i>Emulsine</i> . 3. Sugar, fat, &c. 4. A little tannic acid. <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; margin-left: 10px;"> } React as in bitter almonds. </div> |
| Prunus Domestica. Plum-tree. <i>Syria and Europe.</i> | <i>Prunum</i> — <i>Prune</i> . The dried fruit or drupe. | 1. Glucose, about 25 per cent. 2. Malic acid. 3. Gum, pectin, &c. 4. Purgative principle of unknown nature. |

| Botanical Source or Name of Plant. Geographical Source. | Official Nature = Part of Plant or Product. | Active Principles, and Chief Constituents. |
|---|---|---|
| Rosa Canina. — Dog Rose. — <i>Indigenous.</i> | <i>Rosæ Caninæ Fructus.</i> The ripe fruit, or hips. | 1. Citric and malic acids, and their salts. 2. Tannic acid. 3. Sugar, gum, &c. 4. Trace of volatile oil. |
| Rosa Centifolia. — Cabbage Rose. — <i>Indigenous.</i> <i>Cultivated.</i> | <i>Rosæ Centifoliæ Petala.</i> The fresh petals, fully expanded. | 1. Volatile oil—attar of roses. 2. A laxative principle. 3. Traces of tannic and gallic acids. 4. Resin, sugar, &c. |
| Rosa Gallica. — Red Rose. — <i>Indigenous.</i> <i>Cultivated.</i> | <i>Rosæ Gallicæ Petala.</i> The unexpanded petals, fresh and dried. | 1. Red colouring matter. 2. Tannic and gallic acids. 3. A glucoside — <i>Quercitrin</i> . 4. Volatile oil and sugar, &c. |

Nat. Ord. MYRTACEÆ.

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| Melaleuca Minor. — Cajuput or Cajeput. — <i>Moluccas.</i> Imported from <i>Batavia</i> and <i>Singapore</i> . | <i>Oleum Cajuputi</i> —Oil of <i>Cajuput</i> . The volatile oil distilled from the leaves. | <i>Hydrate of Cajuputene.</i> A colourless oil obtained by distillation = about $\frac{3}{4}$ ths. |
|--|--|--|

| Botanical Source or Name of Plant. Geographical Source. | Official Nature = Part of Plant or Product. | Active Principles, and Chief Constituents. |
|---|--|---|
| Caryophyllus Aromaticus. — Clove. — <i>E. Indian Islands.</i> | 1. <i>Caryophyllum</i> — <i>Cloves.</i> The dried unexpanded flower-bud. 2. <i>Oleum Caryophylli</i> — <i>Oil of Cloves.</i> The volatile oil distilled in Britain from cloves. | 1. Volatile oil = 18 per cent. 2. Salicylic acid. 3. Resin. 4. Tannin. |
| Punica Granatum — Pomegranate. — <i>Mediterranean Coast.</i> | <i>Granati Radicis Cortex</i> — <i>Pomegranate root bark.</i> The dried bark of the root. | 1. Punico-tannic acid = 20 per cent. 2. Gallic acid. 3. Mannite. 4. <i>Punicine.</i> |
| Eugenia Pimenta. — All-spice-tree. — <i>West Indies.</i> | 1. <i>Pimenta</i> — <i>Pimento.</i> The dried unripe fruit = berries. 2. <i>Oleum Pimentæ</i> — <i>Oil of Pimento.</i> Oil distilled in Britain from pimento. | 1. Volatile oil. 2. Fixed oil. 3. Resin. 4. Much tannin. |

Nat. Ord. CUCURBITACEÆ.

| | | |
|--|---|--|
| Citrullus Colocynthis. — Colocynth. — <i>India, Levant.</i> — Imported chiefly from Smyrna, Trieste, France, and Spain. | <i>Colocynthisidis Pulpa</i> — <i>Colocynth pulp.</i> The dried and decorticated fruit = pepo, freed from the seeds. | 1. <i>Colocynthin.</i> A crystalline glucoside. 2. <i>Colocynthinin</i> — crystalline. 3. Bitter resin. 4. A bitter principle. 5. Salts. |
|--|---|--|

| Botanical Source or Name of Plant. Geographical Source. | Official Nature = Part of Plant or Product. | Active Principles, and Chief Constituents. |
|--|--|---|
| Pimpinella Anisum. — Anise. — <i>Europe.</i> | <i>Oleum Anisi</i> —Oil of Anise. The oil distilled in Europe from the fruit = 2 per cent. Also obtained in China from fruit of <i>Illicium Anisatum</i> (see MAGNOLIACEÆ). | |
| Carum Carui. — Caraway. — <i>Indigenous.</i> <i>Mid-Europe.</i> Cultivated in England and Germany. | 1. <i>Carui Fructus</i> —Caraway fruit. The dried fruit. 2. <i>Oleum Carui</i> —Oil of Caraway. The volatile oil distilled in Britain from the fruit = 3 to 6 per cent. | Volatile oil. |
| Coriandrum Sativum. — Coriander. — <i>Indigenous.</i> <i>Europe.</i> | 1. <i>Coriandri Fructus</i> —Coriander fruit. The ripe fruit, dried. 2. <i>Oleum Coriandri</i> —Oil of Coriander. The volatile oil distilled in Britain from the fruit. | Volatile oil. |
| Fœniculum Dulce. — Fennel. — <i>Southern Europe.</i> Imported from Malta. | <i>Fœniculi Fructus</i> —Fennel fruit. The ripe fruit, dried. | Volatile oil. |
| Dorema Ammoniacum. — <i>Punjaub and Persia.</i> | <i>Ammoniacum.</i> —A gum-resinous exudation from all parts of the plant. | 1. Resin = about 70 per cent. 2. Gum = about 20 per cent. 3. Volatile oil = about 4 per cent. |

| Botanical Source or Name of Plant. Geographical Source. | Official Nature = Part of Plant or Product. | Active Principles, and Chief Constituents. |
|---|--|---|
| Narthex Assafoetida. <hr/> <i>Affghanistan and the Punjaub.</i> Imported from <i>Bombay.</i> | <i>Assafoetida.</i> A gum-resin, exuding from the incised living root. | 1. Resin = 65 per cent. 2. Gum = 25 per cent. 3. Volatile oil, chiefly <i>Sulphide of Allyl</i> , = about 4 per cent. |
| Ferula Galbaniflua. <hr/> <i>India; Levant.</i> | <i>Galbanum.</i> A gum-resin. | 1. Resin = about 65 per cent. 2. Gum. 3. Volatile oil = about 3.5 per cent.; does not contain sulphur. |
| Euryangium Sumbul. <hr/> Musk Root. <hr/> <i>Central Asia.</i> | <i>Sumbul Radix — Sumbul Root.</i> The dried root in slices. | 1. Balsamic resin = 9 per cent. 2. Volatile oil. 3. Umbelliferone. |

C. COROLLIFLORÆ.

Nat. Ord. CAPRIFOLIACEÆ.

| | | |
|---|---|---------------|
| Sambucus Nigra. <hr/> Elder. <hr/> <i>Indigenous.</i> | <i>Sambuci Flores — Elder flowers.</i> The fresh flowers. | Volatile oil. |
|---|---|---------------|

Nat. Ord. RUBIACEÆ or CINCCHONACEÆ.

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| Uncaria Gambir. <hr/> <i>Singapore.</i> | <i>Catechu Pallidum — Pale Catechu.</i> An extract of the leaves and young shoots. | 1. Catechu - tannic acid. 2. Catechin or Catechuic acid. 3. Mucilage. 4. Extractive matter. |
|---|--|--|

| Botanical Source or Name of Plant. Geographical Source. | Official Nature = Part of Plant or Product. | Active Principles, and Chief Constituents. |
|--|---|--|
| Cinchona Succirubra. — Red Cinchona. — <i>Chimborazo.</i> | <i>Cinchonæ Rubræ</i> Cortex—Red Cinchona Bark. (Yields not less than 1.5 per cent. of alkaloids). | 1. Alkaloids. a. Quinia, chiefly in yellow bark, not less than 2 per cent. b. Quinidia. c. Cinchonina, chiefly in pale bark. d. Cinchonidia. 2. Acids. a. Quinic. b. Cincho-tannic. c. Cincho-fulvic. d. Quinovic. 3. Tannin. 4. Starch, gum, oil, etc. |
| Cinchona Condaminea. — Pale Cinchona. — About <i>Loxa</i> in <i>Ecuador.</i> | <i>Cinchonæ Pallidæ</i> Cortex—Pale Cinchona Bark. (Yields not less than 0.5 per cent. of alkaloids). | |
| Cinchona Calisaya. — Yellow Cinchona. — <i>Bolivia and Peru.</i> | <i>Cinchonæ Flavæ</i> Cortex—Yellow Cinchona Bark. (Yields not less than 2 per cent. of Quinine). | |
| Cinchona Lancifolia. — <i>New Granada.</i> | <i>Quiniæ Sulphas—</i> <i>Sulphate of Quinia.</i> Prepared from <i>Cinchona Calisaya</i> and <i>Lancifolia.</i> | |
| Cephaelis Ipecacuanha. — Ipecacuanha. — <i>Brazil.</i> | <i>Ipecacuanha.</i> The dried root. | 1. <i>Emetine</i> , a feeble alkaloid, almost entirely in the bark, = about 1 per cent. 2. <i>Cephaelic</i> or <i>Ipecacuanhic</i> acid. |

Nat. Ord. VALERIANACEÆ.

| Botanical Source or Name of Plant. Geographical Source. | Official Nature = Part of Plant or Product. | Active Principles, and Chief Constituents. |
|---|--|--|
| Valeriana Officinalis. — Valerian. — <i>Indigenous.</i> | <i>Valerianæ Radix</i> — <i>Valerian Root.</i> The rhizome and roots, collected in autumn and dried; from wild plants, and growing on dry soil preferred. | 1. Volatile oil = $\frac{1}{2}$ to 2 per cent. 2. Yields about 5 per cent. of valerianic acid, when distilled with water. 3. Resin, gum, extractive, &c. |

Nat. Ord. COMPOSITÆ.

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| Anthemis Nobilis. — Chamomile. — <i>Indigenous.</i> | 1. <i>Anthemidis Flores</i> — <i>Chamomile flowers.</i> The dried flower-heads, single and double, wild and cultivated. 2. <i>Oleum Anthemidis</i> — <i>Oil of Chamomile.</i> The volatile oil, distilled in Britain from the flowers. | 1. Volatile oil. 2. Bitter extractive. 3. Tannin in small quantity. |
| Arnica Montana. — Leopard's bane. — Mountainous parts of Central and Southern Europe. | <i>Arnica Radix</i> — <i>Arnica Root.</i> The rhizome and rootlets, dried. | 1. <i>Arnicin</i> = a bitter resin. 2. Volatile oil. 3. Trimethylamine. |
| Lactuca Virosa. — Wild Lettuce. — <i>Indigenous.</i> | <i>Lactuca</i> — <i>Lettuce.</i> The flowering herb of the wild plant. | 1. Lactucic acid. 2. Lactucin } crystalline. 3. Lactucone } 4. Bitter extractive. 5. Resin, sugar, &c. |

| Botanical Source or Name of Plant. Geographical Source. | Official Nature = Part of Plant or Product. | Active Principles, and Chief Constituents. |
|---|--|--|
| Anacyclus Pyrethrum. — Pellitory of Spain. — <i>Morocco; Spain; Levant.</i> | <i>Pyrethri Radix</i> — <i>Pellitory Root</i> . The dried root, in pieces. | 1. Resins = <i>Pyrethrin</i> or <i>Pyrethric Acid</i> ; and another. 2. Tannin, gum, &c. 3. Yellow, acrid oil. |
| Artemisia. (Species uncertain). — <i>Russia.</i> | 1. <i>Santonica</i> . The unexpanded flower-heads. 2. <i>Santoninum</i> — <i>Santonin</i> . A crystalline neutral principle. | { 1. <i>Santonin</i> = $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 2 per cent. 2. Volatile oil. |
| Taraxacum Dens Leonis. — Dandelion. — <i>Indigenous.</i> | <i>Taraxaci Radix</i> — <i>Dandelion Root</i> . The fresh and dried root, gathered between September and February, from meadows and pastures in Britain. | 1. Bitter extractive. 2. <i>Taraxacin</i> = crystalline. 3. Resin, &c. |

Nat. Ord. LOBELIACEÆ.

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| Lobelia Inflata. — Indian Tobacco. — <i>N. America.</i> | <i>Lobelia</i> . The dried flowering herb. | 1. <i>Lobelic acid</i> = volatile oil. 2. <i>Lobelina</i> = volatile liquid alkaloid. |
|---|--|--|

Nat. Ord. ERICACEÆ.

| | | |
|--|---|---|
| Arctostaphylos Uva Ursi. — Bearberry. — <i>Europe.</i> <i>Indigenous.</i> | <i>Uva Ursi Folia</i> — <i>Bearberry Leaves</i> . The dried leaves. | 1. Tannic acid = about 36 per cent. 2. Gallic acid. 3. <i>Arbutine</i> } crys- 4. <i>Ursine</i> } talline. |
|--|---|---|

Nat. Ord. SAPOTACEÆ.

| Botanical Source or Name of Plant. Geographical Source. | Official Nature = Part of Plant or Product. | Active Principles, and Chief Constituents. |
|--|--|--|
| Isonandra Gutta. — Gutta-Percha Tree. — <i>Eastern Archipelago; Borneo; Sumatra.</i> | <i>Gutta-Percha.</i> The dried concrete juice. | 1. <i>Gutta</i> = 80 per cent. 2. Resins. |

Nat. Ord. STYRACACEÆ.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Styrax Benzoin. — Benjamin Tree. — <i>Eastern Archipelago; Siam; Sumatra.</i> | 1. <i>Benzoinum</i> — <i>Ben-zoin.</i> A balsamic resin, exuding from incisions made in the bark. 2. <i>Acidum Benzoicum</i> — <i>Benzoic acid.</i> The acid obtained from Benzoin by sublimation. | 1. Benzoic acid = 10 to 20 per cent. 2. Resin. |
|---|---|---|

Nat. Ord. OLEACEÆ.

| | | |
|---|--|---|
| Olea Europæa. — Olive. — <i>S. Europe.</i> | <i>Oleum Olivæ</i> — <i>Olive Oil.</i> The oil expressed in the south of Europe from the ripe fruit. | 1. <i>Oleine</i> = 27 per cent. 2. <i>Margarine</i> } <i>Palmi-</i> = 28 per cent. } <i>tine.</i> } <i>Stear-</i> } <i>ine.</i> (Compounds of glycerine with acids). |
| Fraxinus Ornus and Rotundifolia. — <i>Calabria; Sicily.</i> | <i>Manna.</i> A concrete saccharine exudation from the incised bark. | 1. Mannite = 60 to 80 per cent. 2. Small quantity of bitter matter. 3. Extractive and sugar. |

Nat. Ord. ASCLEPIADACEÆ.

| Botanical Source or Name of Plant. Geographical Source. | Official Nature = Part of Plant or Product. | Active Principles, and Chief Constituents. |
|--|--|---|
| Hemidesmus Indicus. — Indian Sarsaparilla. — <i>India.</i> | <i>Hemidesmi Radix</i> — <i>Hemidesmus Root.</i> The dried root. | <i>Hemidesmic acid.</i> Volatile and crystallizable. |

Nat. Ord. LOGANIACEÆ.

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| Strychnos Nux Vomica. — Koochla Tree. — <i>East Indies.</i> | 1. <i>Nux Vomica.</i> The seeds. 2. <i>Strychnia.</i> An alkaloid obtained from <i>Nux Vomica.</i> | $\left. \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{ Strychnia} \\ 2. \text{ Brucia} \\ 3. \text{ Igasuria} \end{array} \right\} = \text{alkaloids.}$ 4. Igasuric or strychnic acid. |
|---|--|--|

Nat. Ord. GENTIANACEÆ.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Ophelia Chirata. — Chiretta. — <i>N. India.</i> | <i>Chirata</i> — <i>Chiretta.</i> The entire plant, collected when the fruit begins to form. | 1. <i>Ophelic acid.</i> 2. <i>Chiratin</i> = a bitter resin. |
| Gentiana Lutea. — Gentian. — <i>European Mountains.</i> <i>Pyrenees.</i> | <i>Gentianæ Radix.</i> — <i>Gentian Root.</i> The dried root. | 1. <i>Gentianic acid.</i> Crystalline. 2. <i>Gentianin.</i> Neutral, crystalline. The active principle. 3. Sugar, volatile oil, gum. (Not starch or tannic acid). |

Nat. Ord. CONVULVACEÆ.

| Botanical Source or Name of Plant. Geographical Source. | Official Nature = Part of Plant or Product. | Active Principles and Chief Constituents. |
|---|--|---|
| Exogonium Purga. — Jalap. — <i>Mexico.</i> | 1. <i>Jalapa</i> — <i>Jalap.</i> The dried tubercles. 2. <i>Jalapæ Resina</i> — <i>Jalap Resin.</i> Ex- tracted from jalap, by means of rectified spirit. | { 1. Resin = about 18 per cent. 2. Sugar, starch, gum, &c. 1. <i>Convolvulin.</i> An acid glucoside. 2. <i>Jalapin</i> or <i>Jala-</i> <i>pic acid.</i> A resin soluble in ether. |
| Convolvulus Scammonia. — Scammony. — <i>Asia Minor and</i> <i>Syria.</i> | 1. <i>Scammonia Ra-</i> <i>dix</i> — <i>Scammony root.</i> The dried root. 2. <i>Scammonium</i> — <i>Scammony.</i> A gum- resin obtained by inci- sion from the living root; collected in shells. 3. <i>Scammonia Re-</i> <i>sina</i> — <i>Scammony resin.</i> Made by a special process, from the root or from scammony. | { 1. Resin = about 4 per cent. 2. Gum = 6 per cent. 3. Sugar, starch, ex- tractive, &c. 1. Resin = 80 to 90 per cent. 2. Gum. |

Nat. Ord. SOLANACEÆ.

| | | |
|--|--|---|
| Capsicum Fastigiatum. — Chillies. — <i>Zanzibar.</i> | <i>Capsici Fructus</i> — <i>Capsicum fruit.</i> The dried ripe fruit=pods. | 1. <i>Capsicin</i> =a crys- talline alkaloid; vola- tile, acrid. 2. Red colouring matter. |
|--|--|---|

| Botanical Source or Name of Plant. Geographical Source. | Official Nature = Part of Plant or Product. | Active Principles, and Chief Constituents. |
|--|--|--|
| Solanum Dulcamara. — Woody Night-Shade; Bitter-Sweet. — <i>Indigenous.</i> | <i>Dulcamara.</i> The dried young branches or twigs, collected in Autumn, when devoid of leaves. | 1. <i>Solanina.</i> An alkaloid. 2. <i>Dulcamarine.</i> A bittersweetish extract. |

Nat. Ord. **ATROPACEÆ.**

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| Atropa Belladonna. — Deadly Night-Shade. — <i>Indigenous.</i> | <p>1. <i>Belladonnæ Folia.</i> a. The fresh leaves and the branches to which they are attached. b. The leaves separated, carefully dried, gathered in June when the fruit has begun to form, from wild or cultivated plants in Britain.</p> <p>2. <i>Belladonnæ Radix.</i> The dried root, collected in early spring.</p> <p>3. <i>Atropia.</i> An alkaloid obtained from Belladonna.</p> <p>4. <i>Atropiæ Sulphas</i>—<i>Sulphate of Atropia.</i></p> | <p>1. <i>Atropia</i>, the active alkaloid, in all parts.</p> <p>2. <i>Asparagine</i>, in the leaves.</p> <p>3. <i>Belladonin</i> = an amorphous alkaloid, in the root.</p> |
| Hyoscyamus Niger. — Henbane. — <i>Indigenous.</i> | <p><i>Hyoscyami Folia</i>—<i>Hyoscyamus Leaves.</i> a. The fresh leaves and small branches, collected when about $\frac{2}{3}$ds of its flowers are expanded. b. The leaves carefully dried.</p> | <p>1. <i>Hyoscyamia</i>, an alkaloid.</p> <p>2. Malic acid.</p> |

| Botanical Source or Name of Plant. Geographical Source. | Official Nature = Part of Plant or Product. | Active Principles, and Chief Constituents. |
|--|--|---|
| Datura Stramonium. — Thorn Apple. — <i>Indigenous.</i> | 1. <i>Stramonii Folia</i> — <i>Stramonium Leaves</i> . The leaves, collected when the plant is in flower, dried. 2. <i>Stramonii Semina</i> . The ripe seeds. | 1. <i>Daturia</i> , an alkaloid. 2. Malic acid. |
| Nicotiana Tabacum. — Tobacco. — <i>Tropical America.</i> | <i>Tabaci Folia</i> — <i>Tobacco Leaves</i> . The dried leaves. | 1. <i>Nicotine</i> , a colourless volatile alkaloid. 2. <i>Nicotianin</i> , a concrete volatile oil. |

Nat. Ord. SCROPHULARIACEÆ.

| | | |
|--|---|---|
| Digitalis Purpurea. — Foxglove. — <i>Indigenous.</i> | 1. <i>Digitalis Folia</i> — <i>Digitalis Leaves</i> . The dried leaves, gathered from wild plants, when about $\frac{2}{3}$ of flowers are expanded. 2. <i>Digitalinum</i> . The active principle obtained from digitalis. | 1. <i>Digitalin</i> = bitter, neutral, non-nitrogenized. 2. <i>Digitalein</i> = active, bitter, amorphous. |
|--|---|---|

Nat. Ord. LABIATÆ.

| | |
|---|---|
| Lavandula Vera. — Lavender. — <i>Indigenous.</i> | <i>Oleum Lavandulæ</i> — <i>Oil of Lavender</i> . Volatile oil distilled in Britain from the flowers. |
| Mentha Piperita. — Peppermint. — <i>Indigenous.</i> | <i>Oleum Menthæ Piperitæ</i> . — <i>Oil of Peppermint</i> . Volatile oil distilled in Britain from the fresh flowering plant. |

| Botanical Source or Name of Plant. Geographical Source. | Official Nature = Part of Plant or Product. | Active Principles, and Chief Constituents. |
|---|---|--|
| Mentha Viridis. — Spearmint. — <i>Indigenous.</i> | <i>Oleum Menthae Viridis</i> —Oil of Spearmint. Volatile oil distilled in Britain from the fresh flowering plant. | |
| Rosmarinus Officinalis. — Rosemary. — <i>S. Europe.</i> | <i>Oleum Rosmarini</i> —Oil of Rosemary. Volatile oil distilled from the flowering tops. | |

D. MONOCHLAMYDEÆ.

Nat. Ord. POLYGONACEÆ.

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| Rheum. (Species uncertain). — Rhubarb. — <i>China, Chinese Tartary, and Thibet.</i> | <i>Rhei Radix</i> —Rhubarb Root. The dried root, deprived of its bark. | 1. <i>Chrysophanic acid</i> = yellow. 2. Oxalate of lime = 35 to 40 per cent. 3. Tannic and gallic acids. 4. A bitter substance. 5. Resin. |
|---|--|--|

Nat. Ord. THYMELACEÆ.

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| Daphne Mezereum or Laureola. — Spurge Laurel. — <i>Indigenous.</i> | <i>Mezerei Cortex</i> — <i>Mezereon Bark.</i> The dried bark. | 1. <i>Daphnin</i> , a crystallizable glucoside. 2. Volatile oil. 3. Acrid resin. |
|---|---|--|

Nat. Ord. MYRISTICACEÆ.

| Botanical Source or Name of Plant. Geographical Source. | Official Nature — Part of Plant or Product. | Active Principles, and Chief Constituents. |
|---|--|--|
| Myristica Officinalis. — Nutmeg. — <i>Eastern</i> <i>Archipelago.</i> — Imported from <i>Sumatra</i> , and the <i>Molucca Islands.</i> | 1. <i>Myristica</i> — <i>Nutmeg</i> . The kernel of the seeds. 2. <i>Oleum Myristicæ</i> — <i>Oil of Nutmeg</i> . The volatile oil distilled in Britain from nutmegs. 3. <i>Oleum Myristicæ Expressum</i> — <i>Expressed oil of nutmeg</i> . A concrete oil obtained from nutmeg by expression and heat. | 1. Volatile oil. 2. Fatty acids, especially <i>Myristicin</i> . |

Nat. Ord. LAURACEÆ.

| | | |
|--|--|---|
| Camphora Officinarum. — Camphor Plant. — <i>China; Japan.</i> | <i>Camphora</i> — <i>Camphor</i> . A concrete volatile oil obtained from the wood, and purified in this country by sublimation. | |
| Cinnamomum Zeylanicum. — Cinnamon. — <i>Ceylon.</i> | 1. <i>Cinnamomi Cortex</i> — <i>Cinnamon Bark</i> . The inner bark of shoots from the truncated stocks. 2. <i>Oleum Cinnamomi</i> — <i>Oil of Cinnamon</i> . The volatile oil distilled from cinnamon bark. | 1. Volatile oil. 2. Tannic acid. 3. Cinnamic acid. 4. Resin. |
| Nectandra Rodiei. — Bebeeru or Greenheart Tree. — <i>British Guiana.</i> | 1. <i>Nectandra Cortex</i> — <i>Bebeeru bark</i> . The bark. 2. <i>Beberie Sulphas</i> — <i>Sulphate of Beberia</i> . Prepared from the <i>Bebeeru bark</i> . | 1. <i>Beberia</i> } alka- 2. <i>Nectandra</i> } loids. 3. Tannic acid. 4. Resin, &c. |

| Botanical Source or Name of Plant. Geographical Source. | Official Nature = Part of Plant or Product. | Active Principles, and Chief Constituents. |
|---|--|---|
| Sassafras Officinale. — <i>N. America.</i> | <i>Sassafras Radix</i> — <i>Sassafras root</i> .—The dried root. | 1. Volatile oil. 2. Tannic acid. 4. Red colouring matter. |

Nat. Ord. ARISTOLOCHIEÆ.

| | | |
|--|---|--|
| Aristolochia Serpentaria. — Serpentary. — <i>Virginia ;</i> <i>United States.</i> | <i>Serpentariæ Radix</i> — <i>Serpentary root</i> . The dried rhizome and rootlets. | 1. Volatile oil. 2. Resin. 3. Tannic acid. 4. Amorphous bitter extractive matter. |
|--|---|--|

Nat. Ord. EUPHORBIACEÆ.

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| Croton Eluteria. — Cascarilla. — <i>Bahamas.</i> | <i>Cascarillæ Cortex</i> — <i>Cascarilla Bark</i> . The dried bark. | 1. <i>Cascarillin</i> = bitter, neutral, crystalline. 2. Resin. 3. Tannic acid. 4. Volatile oil. |
| Croton Tiglium. — Croton Oil Plant. — <i>East India.</i> | <i>Oleum Crotonis</i> — <i>Croton Oil</i> .—The oil expressed from the seeds. | 1. Ordinary fatty acids. 2. Acetic, butyric, valerianic acids. 3. <i>Tiglinic</i> and <i>crotonic</i> acids. |
| Rottleria Tinctoria. — Wurru. — <i>India.</i> | <i>Kamala</i> . A powder consisting of minute glands adhering to the capsules. Fine, granular, mobile, orange-red. | 1. Resin = <i>Rottlerin</i> = 80 per cent. 2. Tannic acid. 3. Volatile oil. |
| Ricinus Communis. — Castor Oil Plant. — <i>E. India and America.</i> | <i>Oleum Ricini</i> — <i>Castor Oil</i> . The oil expressed from the seeds. | 1. Ricinate 2. Ricin-oleate 3. Ricin-stearate 4. Acrid resin. } of glycerine. |

Nat. Ord. PIPERACEÆ.

| Botanical Source or Name of Plant. Geographical Source. | Official Nature = Part of Plant or Product. | Active Principles, and Chief Constituents. |
|---|--|---|
| Cubeba Officinalis. <hr/> <i>Java.</i> | 1. <i>Cubeba—Cubebs.</i> The dried unripe fruit. 2. <i>Oleum Cubebæ.</i> The volatile oil distilled in Britain from cubebs. | 1. Volatile oil. 2. <i>Cubebin</i> =crystalline, inert. 3. <i>Cubebic acid.</i> 4. Resin, gum, &c. |
| Artanthe Elongata—Piper Angustifolium. <hr/> Matico. <hr/> <i>Peru.</i> | <i>Matica Foliæ—Matico Leaves.</i> The dried leaves. | 1. <i>Artanthic acid</i> = crystalline. 2. Volatile oil and resin. 3. Trace of tannic acid. |
| Piper Nigrum. <hr/> Black Pepper. <hr/> <i>East Indies.</i> | <i>Piper Nigrum — Black pepper.</i> The dried unripe berries. | 1. Acrid resin. 2. Volatile oil. 3. <i>Piperin</i> =neutral. |

Nat. Ord. MORACEÆ.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Morus Nigra. <hr/> Mulberry. <hr/> <i>Indigenous.</i> | <i>Mori Succus—Mulberry Juice.</i> The deep purple juice of the ripe fruit. | 1. Sugar. 2. Malic acid. 3. Gum, pectin, salts, &c. |
| Ficus Carica. <hr/> Fig Tree. <hr/> <i>Smyrna.</i> | <i>Ficus — Fig.</i> The dried fruit. | Saccharine and mucilaginous matters. |

Nat. Ord. CANNABINACEÆ.

| Botanical Source or Name of Plant. Geographical Source. | Official Nature = Part of Plant or Product. | Active Principles, and Chief Constituents. |
|--|---|--|
| Cannabis Sativa. — <i>India.</i> | <i>Cannabis Indica</i> — <i>Indian Hemp.</i> The dried flowering tops of the female plant, from which the resin has not been removed. | 1. Resin = <i>Canna-</i> <i>bin.</i> 2. Volatile oil. |
| Humulus Lupulus. — Hop. — <i>Indigenous.</i> | <i>Lupulus</i> — <i>Hop.</i> The dried catkins or strobiles of the female plant. Minute yellow grains at the base of the scales = <i>Lupulin.</i> | 1. Volatile oil. 2. Resin and gum. 3. Tannic acid. 4. <i>Lupulite</i> or <i>Humu-</i> <i>lin</i> = bitter principle. |

Nat. Ord. ULMACEÆ.

| | | |
|--|--|---|
| Ulmus Campestris. — Elm Tree. — <i>Indigenous.</i> | <i>Ulm</i> <i>Cortex</i> — <i>Elm</i> <i>Bark.</i> The dried inner bark, deprived of the outer layer. | 1. Gum and mucilage = 20 per cent. 2. Tannic acid = 3 per cent. 3. Resin. |
|--|--|---|

Nat. Ord. CUPULIFERÆ.

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| Quercus Pedunculata. — Common Oak. — <i>Indigenous.</i> | <i>Quercus Cortex</i> — <i>Oak</i> <i>Bark.</i> The dried bark of the small branches and young stems, collected in spring. | 1. <i>Querco-tannic acid.</i> 2. Sugar, pectin, &c. |
| Quercus Infectoria. — Gall, or Dyer's Oak. — <i>Asia Minor.</i> | <i>Galla</i> — <i>Galls.</i> Excrescences on the <i>Quercus infectoria</i> , caused by the puncture and deposited ova of the <i>Diplolepis Galla</i> <i>Tinctoriæ</i> , a Hymenopterous insect. | 1. Tannic acid = 35 per cent. 2. Gallic acid = 5 per cent. 3. Ellagic acid = crystalline. 4. Gum, starch, &c. |

Nat. Ord. **LIQUIDAMBARACEÆ.**

| Botanical Source or Name of Plant. Geographical Source. | Official Nature = Part of Plant or Product. | Active Principles, and Chief Constituents. |
|---|---|---|
| Liquidambar Orientalis. — <i>Asia Minor.</i> | <i>Styrax Præparatus</i> — <i>Prepared Storax.</i> A balsam prepared from the bark, purified by means of rectified spirit and straining. | 1. Resin. 2. Volatile oil= <i>Sty-</i> <i>rol.</i> 3. Cinnamic acid. 4. <i>Styracin</i> = solid and crystalline. |

E. GYMNOSPERMEÆ.

Nat. Ord. **CONIFERÆ or PINACEÆ.**

| | | |
|--|--|---|
| Juniperus Communis. — Juniper. — <i>N. Europe.</i> | <i>Oleum Juniperi</i> — <i>Oil</i> <i>of Juniper.</i> Volatile oil distilled in Britain from the unripe fruit. | |
| Juniperus Sabina. — Savin. — <i>Indigenous.</i> | 1. <i>Sabinæ Cacumina</i> — <i>Savin tops.</i> The fresh and dried tops, collected in spring. 2. <i>Oleum Sabinæ</i> — <i>Oil of Savin.</i> The vo- latile oil distilled from the fresh tops. | 1. Volatile oil. 2. Resin. 3. Gallic acid. |
| Larix Europæa. — Larch. — <i>Europe.</i> | <i>Laricis Cortex</i> — <i>Larch Bark.</i> The in- ner bark. | 1. Turpentine. 2. Gum. 3. Tannic acid. 4. <i>Larixin</i> or <i>Larixy-</i> <i>nic acid</i> = crystalline. |
| Abies Excelsa. — Spruce Fir. — <i>Switzerland.</i> | <i>Pix Burgundica</i> — <i>Burgundy Pitch.</i> A resinous exudation from the stem, melted and strained. | 1. Resin. 2. A little volatile oil. |

| Botanical Source or Name of Plant. Geographical Source. | Official Nature = Part of Plant or Product. | Active Principles, and Chief Constituents. |
|--|--|---|
| Abies Balsamea. — Balm of Gilead Fir. — Canada. | <i>Terebinthina Cana-</i> <i>densis</i> — <i>Canada Bal-</i> <i>sam.</i> The turpentine or oleo-resin obtained from the stem by in- cision. | 1. Resin. 2. Volatile oil. |
| Pinus Palustris, Tæda, Pinaster, &c. — <i>America; France.</i> | 1. <i>Thus Americanum</i> — <i>Common Frankin-</i> <i>cense.</i> The concrete turpentine from natu- ral fissures in the bark of the <i>Pinus Palustris</i> and <i>Tæda</i> . 2. <i>Oleum Terebin-</i> <i>thinæ</i> — <i>Oil or Spirit</i> <i>of Turpentine.</i> The volatile oil distilled from the oleo-resin (<i>Common Turpentine</i>), which exudes from <i>Pinus Palustris</i> , <i>Pi-</i> <i>naster</i> , and <i>Tæda</i> . 3. <i>Resina</i> — <i>Resin.</i> The residue of the di- stillation of the tur- pentine from various species of <i>Pinus</i> and <i>Abies</i> . | 1. Resin. 2. Volatile oil = about 17 per cent. |
| Pinus Sylvestris, &c. — Scotch Pine. — <i>Northern Europe.</i> | <i>Pix Liquida</i> — <i>Tar.</i> A bituminous liquid obtained from <i>Pinus</i> <i>sylvestris</i> and other pines, by destructive distillation. | 1. Oil of turpentine, creosote and other compounds obtained by distillation. 2. Pitch remains = black resin. |

II. ENDOGENÆ—ENDOGENS.

Nat. Ord. SMILACEÆ.

| Botanical Source or Name of Plant. Geographical Source. | Official Nature = Part of Plant or Product. | Active Principles, and Chief Constituents. |
|---|--|--|
| Smilax Officinalis. — Sarsaparilla. — <i>Central America</i> <i>and Jamaica.</i> | <i>Sarsæ Radix</i> — <i>Sarsaparilla Root.</i> The dried root. | 1. <i>Sarsaparillin</i> or <i>Smilacin</i> = neutral, crystalline, bitter. 2. Volatile oil. 3. Starch, &c. |

Nat. Ord. ZINGIBERACEÆ.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Elettaria Cardamomum. — Cardamoms. — <i>Malabar.</i> | <i>Cardamomum</i> — <i>Cardamoms.</i> The seeds, contained in their dried capsules or pericarps. The seeds only are used. | 1. Volatile oil. 2. Acrid resin. 3. Colouring matter. |
| Zingiber Officinale. — Ginger. — <i>E. and W. Indies.</i> | <i>Zingiber</i> — <i>Ginger.</i> The rhizome, scraped and dried. | 1. Volatile oil. 2. Resinous matter. 3. Starch, &c. |
| (<i>In Appendix</i>). Curcuma Longa. — <i>Ceylon.</i> | <i>Curcuma</i> — <i>Turmeric.</i> The dried rhizome. | 1. Volatile oil. 2. <i>Curcumin</i> = yellow colouring matter. |

Nat. Ord. IRIDACEÆ.

| | | |
|---|---|-------------------|
| Crocus Sativus. — Crocus. — <i>S. Europe.</i> | <i>Crocus</i> — <i>Saffron.</i> The dried stigma and part of the style of the flower. | Colouring matter. |
|---|---|-------------------|

Nat. Ord. **LILIACEÆ.**

| Botanical Source or Name of Plant. Geographical Source | Official Nature = Part of Plant or Product. | Active Principles, and Chief Constituents. |
|--|--|--|
| Aloe Vulgaris. — Barbadoes Aloes. — <i>E. and W. Indies; Barbadoes.</i> — Undetermined Species. <i>Socotra.</i> | 1. <i>Aloe Barbadensis</i> — <i>Barbadoes Aloes.</i> The inspissated juice of the cut leaf. 2. <i>Aloe Socotrina</i> — <i>Socotrine Aloes.</i> The inspissated juice of the leaf of one or more undetermined species of <i>Aloes</i> . Not definitely known how prepared, probably by boiling. | 1. <i>Aloin</i> of various kinds = crystalline and amorphous. 2. Resin, especially in <i>Socotrine</i> . 3. <i>Aloetic acid</i> . 4. Trace of volatile oil. |
| Urginea Scilla. — Squill. — <i>S. Europe.</i> | <i>Scilla</i> — <i>Squill.</i> The bulb, sliced and dried. | 1. Bitter resinous extractive. 2. <i>Scillitin</i> . 3. Peculiar acrid resin. 4. Trace of tannic acid. |

Nat. Ord. **MELANTHACEÆ.**

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| Colchicum Autumnale. — Meadow Saffron. — <i>Indigenous.</i> | 1. <i>Colchici Cormus</i> — <i>Colchicum Corm.</i> The fresh corm, collected about the end of June or early in July, stripped of its coats, sliced transversely, and dried under 150°. 2. <i>Colchici Semina.</i> The seeds, fully ripe, gathered about the end of July. | 1. <i>Colchicine</i> = crystalline. 2. <i>Cevadic acid</i> . 3. Gum, starch, &c. |
|---|---|--|

| Botanical Source or Name of Plant. Geographical Source. | Official Nature = Part of Plant or Product. | Active Principles, and Chief Constituents. |
|--|--|--|
| Asagræa Officinalis. — <i>Mexico.</i> | 1. <i>Sabadilla</i> — <i>Ceva-</i> <i>dilla</i> . The dried fruit with the contained seeds. 2. <i>Veratria</i> . The alkaloid obtained from <i>Sabadilla</i> . | 1. <i>Veratria</i> . 2. <i>Sabadilline</i> . 3. Acids { Gallic. Veratric. Cevadic. |
| Veratrum Viride. — Green Hellebore. — <i>N. America.</i> | <i>Veratri Viridis Ra-</i> <i>dix</i> — <i>Green Hellebore</i> root. The rhizome, collected in autumn, and dried. | 1. <i>Veratria</i> } alka- 2. <i>Viridia</i> } loids. |

Nat. Ord. PALMACEÆ.

| | | |
|---|--|---|
| Areca Catechu. — Betel Nut. — <i>India.</i> | <i>Areca</i> — <i>Areca Nut</i> . The seed. | 1. Catechu-tannic acid. 2. Gallic acid. 3. Oily matter. 4. <i>Areca</i> -red. |
|---|--|---|

Nat. Ord. GRAMINACEÆ.

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| Triticum Vulgare. — Wheat. — <i>Indigenous.</i> | 1. <i>Farina Tritici</i> — <i>Wheaten Flour</i> . The grain, ground and sifted. 2. <i>Amylum</i> — <i>Starch</i> . Separated from the seeds of common wheat. 3. <i>Mica panis</i> — <i>Crumb of bread</i> . | 1. Starch=about 70 per cent. 2. Gluten=about 10 per cent. 3. Gum, sugar, salts, &c. |
|---|--|--|

| Botanical Source or Name of Plant. Geographical Source. | Official Nature = Part of Plant or Product. | Active Principles, and Chief Constituents. |
|---|---|---|
| Hordeum Distichon. — Barley. — <i>Indigenous.</i> | <i>Hordeum Decortica- tum</i> — <i>Pearl Barley.</i> The husked seeds. | Gluten, starch, gum, sugar, salts, &c. |
| Saccharum Officinarium. — Sugar Cane. — <i>W. Indies.</i> | 1. <i>Saccharum Purifi- catum</i> — <i>Refined Sugar.</i> Pure cane-sugar. 2. <i>Theriaca</i> — <i>Treacle.</i> The uncrystallized residue of the refining of sugar. | |
| Secale Cereale. — Common Rye. — <i>Indigenous.</i> | <i>Ergota</i> — <i>Ergot.</i> The sclerotium (compact mycelium or spawn) of a vegetable fungus, the <i>Claviceps Purpu- rea</i> , growing within the paleæ of the rye. | 1. <i>Sclerotic</i> or <i>Scle- rotinic acid</i> , the active principle—about 4 per cent. 2. Bases } <i>Ecboline</i> } } <i>Ergotine</i> } in combination with 3. <i>Ergotic acid.</i> 4. Fixed oil = 30 per cent. 5. Resin. |

III. ACROGENS.

Nat. Ord. FILICES.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Aspidium Filix Mas. — Male Fern. — <i>Indigenous.</i> | <i>Filix Mas</i> — <i>Malefern.</i> The dried rhizome, with the bases of the foot-stalks and por- tions of the root-fibres, collected late in sum- mer or autumn. | 1. Volatile oil. 2. Fixed oils. 3. Resin, gum, starch, &c. 4. Tannin. |
|---|---|---|

Nat. Ord. FUNGI.

| Botanical Source or Name of Plant. Geographical Source. | Official Nature = Part of Plant or Product. | Active Principles, and Chief Constituents. |
|--|--|---|
| Torula Cerevisiæ. — Yeast Plant. | <i>Cerevisiæ Fermentum</i> — <i>Beer Yeast</i> . The ferment obtained in brewing beer. | |

Nat. Ord. LICHENES.

| | | |
|--|--|---|
| Cetraria Islandica. — Iceland Moss. — <i>North Europe.</i> | <i>Cetraria</i> — <i>Iceland Moss</i> . The entire lichen. | 1. <i>Lichenin</i> or lichen starch. 2. <i>Cetraric acid</i> . 3. Bitter principle = crystalline. |
| Roccella Tinctoria, &c. — <i>The Azores.</i> | <i>Lacmus</i> — <i>Litmus</i> . (In <i>Appendix</i>). A blue pigment prepared from various species. | |

GROUPS OF VEGETABLE DRUGS.

The student, having obtained a general knowledge of the vegetable drugs from the preceding TABLES, may now proceed to study them more particularly, according to certain groups. In relation to individual drugs I have endeavoured, where necessary, to bring out any point of importance in their *mode of preparation*; and also to state prominently their chief *characters*. With regard to the more important drugs, I do not think that I have introduced unnecessary details; but in the case of unimportant drugs, although I have mentioned their principal characters, the student need not burden his memory with their full description, if he only knows how to recognise them.

With respect to *Pharmacy*, I have followed the same plan as in the case of the inorganic drugs, and the remarks made in relation to that class of drugs apply to those now to be considered.

GROUP I.—ENTIRE PLANT.

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|---|---|--|
| 1. CHIRATA— CHIRETTA. — OPHELIA CHIRATA. — N.O. GENTIANACEÆ. — The <i>entire plant</i> , collected when the fruit begins to form. | a. Stem about 3 feet long, but often in pieces; size of a goose-quill; round and smooth; pale brown; branched, the branches opposite; containing yellow pith. b. Numerous small flowers and parts of roots. c. Intensely bitter taste. | <i>Infusum Chiratae</i> . Chiretta, 1 Water at 120°, 40 } Infuse half } an hour, and Dose.—3℥ to 2. } strain. <i>Tinctura Chiratae</i> . Chiretta, 1 } Macerate 48 Proof Spirit, 8 } hours, and per- } colate. Dose.—℥15 to 60. ACTION.—Pure bitter tonic. |

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|--|--|--|
| 2. LACTUCA— LETTUCE. — LACTUCA VIROSA. — N.O. COMPOSITÆ. — The <i>flowering</i> <i>herb of the wild</i> <i>plant.</i> | a. Stem marked with blood-red spots. b. Leaves obtuse; arrow-shaped at the base. c. Root, top-shaped. d. Flowers, yellow. e. All parts yield a milky, foetid juice; that from the leaves in the flowering season has a strong opiate odour, a bitter taste, and an acid reaction. Exposed to the air, becomes yellow and then brown, and solidifies = <i>Lactucarium</i> . | <i>Extractum Lactucæ.</i> A green extract made from the juice, by the usual method. <i>Dose.</i> —gr 5 to 10. ACTION.—Sedative. Hypnotic. Laxative. Diuretic. Diaphoretic. |
| 3. LOBELIA. — LOBELIA INFLATA. — N.O. LOBELIACÆ. — The <i>herb in</i> <i>flower, dried.</i> | a. Usually in compressed rectangular parcels, somewhat like chopped hay. b. Stem, angular. c. Capsules ovoid, inflated, ten-ribbed. d. Peculiar odour. e. Burning taste. | <i>Tinctura Lobeliæ.</i> Lobelia, 1 } Macerate 48 Proof Spirit, 8 } hours, and per- colate. <i>Dose.</i> —m 10 to 30 or more. <i>Tinctura Lobeliæ Ætherea.</i> Lobelia, 1 } Macerate 7 Spirit of ether, 8 } days, press, fil- ter, make up 8. <i>Dose.</i> —m 10 to 30. ACTION.—Diaphoretic. Expecto- rant. Pulmonary sedative. Antispasmodic. Emetic. |
| 4. CETRARIA— ICELAND MOSS. — CETRARIA ISLANDICA. — N.O. LICHENES. — The <i>entire lichen.</i> | a. Foliateous and lobed. b. Crisp and cartilaginous. c. Brownish-white; paler beneath. d. Faint, peculiar odour, when fresh; almost inodorous when dry. e. Taste bitter and mucilaginous. f. A strong decoction gelatinizes on cooling. | <i>Decoctum Cetrariæ.</i> Iceland moss, 3 i } Boil for 10 Water, O i } minutes after washing. <i>Dose.</i> —3 i to 2. ACTION.—Demulcent. Nutri- tious. |

GROUP II.—ROOTS AND RHIZOMES.

Although botanically roots and rhizomes are not the same, rhizomes being in reality underground stems, they are conveniently grouped together in the *Materia Medica*. The officinal members of this group are very numerous, and in order to aid in remembering them, I have arranged them under certain subdivisions.

A. ENTIRE TAP-SHAPED ROOTS.

| <div> <div> Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. </div> </div> | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|---|---|--|
| <div> <div> 1. ACONITI RADIX— ACONITE ROOT. — ACONITUM NAPELLUS. — N.O. RANUNCULACEÆ. — </div> </div> | <div> <div> <div> a. A small root; from 1 to 3 inches long; and not thicker than the finger at the crown. </div> </div> <div> <div> b. Conical, rapidly tapering to a point. </div> </div> <div> <div> c. Numerous fibres proceed from the sides. </div> </div> <div> <div> d. More or less brown or blackish-brown externally; whitish internally. </div> </div> <div> <div> e. Earthy odour. </div> </div> <div> <div> f. Bitter taste at first, followed by a disagreeable tingling and numbness of the lips, tongue, &c. </div> </div> </div> | <div> <div> <div> <div> <i>Linimentum Aconiti.</i> </div> <div> Aconite root, 20 Camphor, 1 Rectified spirit, 20 </div> </div> </div> <div> <div> <div> <div> <i>Tinctura Aconiti.</i> </div> <div> Powdered root, 1 Rectified spirit, 20 </div> </div> </div> <div> <div> Dose.—M 5 to 15. </div> </div> <div> <div> Action.—Anodyne. Vascular depressant. Spinal depressant. </div> </div> </div> </div> |

| Name. Plant Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|---|---|--|
| 2. ARMORACIÆ RADIX— HORSE-RADISH ROOT. — COCHLEARIA ARMORACIA. — N.O. CRUCIFERÆ. — The <i>fresh root</i> , cultivated in Britain. | <p> LIABLE to be mistaken for aconite, but the points of difference are sufficiently indicated in the following description:—</p> <p>a. Longer than aconite; larger; and of different shape. From $\frac{1}{2}$ to 1 inch in diameter. Slightly conical at the crown, and expanding into several short stems; then cylindrical or nearly so, and almost of the same thickness for many inches.</p> <p>b. White or yellowish tinge externally; white within.</p> <p>c. Pungent and irritating odour, especially when scraped.</p> <p>d. Bitter or sweet taste, according to circumstances, but very pungent. No tingling or numbness.</p> | <p><i>Spiritus Armoraciæ Compositus.</i> Horse-radish root, 20 Orange-peel, 20 Nutmeg, $\frac{1}{2}$ Proof spirit, 160 Water, 40 Dose.—$\bar{3}$ 1 to 3.</p> <p>Mix and distil over 160°.</p> <p>ACTION.—Sialagogue. Stomachic stimulant. Diaphoretic. Diuretic.</p> |
| 3. SCAMMONIÆ RADIX— SCAMMONY ROOT. — CONVOLVULUS SCAMMONIA. — N.O. CONVOLVULACÆ — The <i>dried root</i> . | <p>a. Large; sometimes 3 inches in diameter at the top.</p> <p>b. Tap-shaped.</p> <p>c. Brown externally; white internally.</p> <p>d. Tough and resinous.</p> <p>e. Slight odour.</p> <p>f. No taste.</p> | <p>Scammony is obtained from the <i>living root</i>, (see GUM-RESINS); and also <i>Scammony-resin</i>, (see RESINS).</p> <p>ACTION.—Drastic purgative.</p> |

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|---|--|---|
| 4. TARAXACI RADIX— DANDELION ROOT. — TARAXACUM DENS LEONIS. — N.O. COMPOSITÆ. — The <i>fresh root</i> , gathered between September and February, from meadows and pastures in Bri- tain. | a. Of small size. b. Tapering and branched. c. Externally <i>smooth</i> and <i>dark-brown</i> (not wrinkled and pale brown). d. Easily fractured; white internally. e. When cut or broken an inodorous milky juice escapes, which becomes brown on exposure, and deve- lopes an acid reac- tion; while mannite is also formed. f. Sweetish and bitter taste. | <i>Decoctum Taraxaci.</i> Dandelion root, 1 } Boil for 10 Water, 20 } minutes and strain. <i>Dose.</i> —3 2 to 4. <i>Extractum Taraxaci.</i> Made by pressing out the juice; heating it to 212°; straining; and evaporating by a water- bath under 160°. <i>Dose.</i> —gr. 5 to 15. <i>Succus Taraxaci.</i> Made by pressing out the juice; adding rectified spirit (1 to 3); setting aside 7 days; and filter- ing. <i>Dose.</i> —3 2 to 4. ACTION.—Laxative. Cholagogue. Stomachic tonic. |

B. ELONGATED PIECES—SINGLE OR BRANCHED.

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| 1. BELLADON- NÆ RADIX— BELLADONNA ROOT. — ATROPA BELLADONNA. — N.O. ATROPAÇÆ. — The <i>dried root</i> , collected in early spring, or imported. | a. From 1 to 2 feet long, but usually in shorter pieces. b. $\frac{1}{2}$ to 1 inch thick. c. Branched and some- what tapering. d. Externally, brown- ish-white and wrin- kled. e. Internally, lighter in colour. | <i>Linimentum Belladonnæ.</i> Belladonna root, 20 } Moisten Camphor, 1 } for 3 days, Rectified spirit, 20 } and perco- late. The source of ATROPIA. (See ALKALOIDS). ACTION.—External anodyne. The other actions of Belladonna are discussed under ATROPIA. (See ALKALOIDS). |
|---|---|--|

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|---|--|---|
| 2. GENTIANÆ RADIX— GENTIAN ROOT. — GENTIANA LUTEA. — N.O. GENTIANACEÆ. — The dried root. | <p>a. In pieces several inches long.</p> <p>b. $\frac{1}{2}$ to 1 inch thick.</p> <p>c. Cylindrical, but often twisted; may be split in two longitudinally, the edges being turned in.</p> <p>d. Externally brownish and much wrinkled longitudinally, or marked with close transverse rings.</p> <p>e. Internally yellow; spongy but tough.</p> <p>f. Peculiar sweet odour.</p> <p>g. Sweetish and then very bitter taste.</p> | <p><i>Extractum Gentianæ.</i> Gentian Root, 1 Boiling Water, 10 } Infuse two hours; boil 15 minutes; press and strain; and evaporate. Dose. gr. 5 to 15.</p> <p><i>Infusum Gentianæ Compositum.</i> Gentian root, gr. 60 Bitter orange-peel, gr. 60 } Infuse 1 hour and strain. Fresh lemon peel, $\frac{3}{4}$ Boiling water, $\frac{3}{4}$ 10 Dose.—$\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 2.</p> <p><i>Mistura Gentianæ.</i> Gentian root, $\frac{3}{4}$ Bitter orange-peel, gr. 30 } Coriander, gr. 30 Proof spirit, $\frac{3}{4}$ 2 Cold water, $\frac{3}{4}$ 8 Macerate in the spirit for 2 hours; add the water; infuse for 2 hours; and strain. Dose.—$\frac{3}{4}$ $\frac{1}{2}$ to 1.</p> <p><i>Tinctura Gentianæ Composita.</i> Gentian root, $1\frac{1}{2}$ Bitter orange peel, $\frac{3}{4}$ } Macerate 48 hours, Cardamoms, $\frac{1}{4}$ } and per- Proof spirit, 20 } colate. Dose.—$\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 2.</p> <p>ACTION.—Stomachic and general tonic.</p> |
| 3. GLYCYRRHIZÆ RADIX— LIQUORICE ROOT. — GLYCYRRHIZA GLABRA. — N.O. LEGUMINOSÆ. — The fresh and dried rhizome. | <p>a. Long, cylindrical, branched pieces.</p> <p>b. Less than an inch in diameter.</p> <p>c. Externally greyish-brown: internally yellow.</p> <p>d. Pliable, but tough and fibrous.</p> <p>e. No odour.</p> <p>f. Sweet, mucilaginous, slightly acrid taste.</p> | <p><i>Extractum Glycyrrhizæ.</i> Made by macerating the coarsely-powdered root in cold water; straining and pressing; heating to 212°; straining through flannel; and evaporating by a water-bath. Dose.—$\frac{5}{4}$ $\frac{1}{2}$ to 1. (Contained in several official preparations.)</p> <p><i>Extractum Glycyrrhizæ Liquidum.</i> Made as above, the strained liquid being evaporated to sp. gr. $1\cdot160$, $\frac{1}{4}$th of its vol. of rectified spirits added, and the whole filtered after standing 12 hours. Dose.—$\frac{3}{4}$ 1.</p> <p><i>Pulvis Glycyrrhizæ Compositus.</i> Senna, 2 Liquorice root, 2 } Powder and Refined sugar, 6 } mix. Dose.—$\frac{3}{4}$ 1 or more.</p> <p>ACTION.—Demulcent.</p> |

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|---|--|---|
| 4. KRAMERIÆ RADIX— RHATANY ROOT. — KRAMERIA TRIANDRA. — N.O. POLYGALACEÆ. — The dried rhi- zome and rootlets. | <p>a. A cylindrical, woody root-stock, with numerous long rootlets or branches.</p> <p>b. Variable lengths; about an inch in diameter.</p> <p>c. Externally dark red or brownish-red, and rough.</p> <p>d. Internally reddish-yellow.</p> <p>e. Scarcely any odour.</p> <p>f. Taste sweetish and and strongly astringent, especially the bark; the inner wood is almost tasteless. Tinges the saliva red.</p> | <p><i>Extractum Krameria.</i> Made by macerating the coarsely-powdered root in cold water; percolating; and evaporating by a water-bath to dryness. <i>Dose.</i>—gr. 5 to 20.</p> <p><i>Infusum Krameria.</i> Rhatany root, 1 } Infuse 1 hour, Boiling water, 20 } and strain. <i>Dose.</i>—3 1 to 2.</p> <p><i>Tinctura Krameria.</i> Rhatany root, 1 } Macerate 48 Pr of spirit, 8 } hours, and per- colate. <i>Dose.</i>—3 1 to 2.</p> <p>ACTION.—Astringent. Tonic.</p> |
| 5. PAREIRÆ RADIX— PAREIRA ROOT. — CISSAMPELOS PAREIRA; or CHONDODEN- DRON TOMENTOSUM. — N.O. MENISPERMACEÆ. — The dried root. | <p>a. Pieces from 4 inches to 4 feet long; $\frac{1}{2}$ to 4 inches in diameter.</p> <p>b. Cylindrical, oval, or compressed. Sometimes split longitudinally.</p> <p>c. Resemble sections of a stem, presenting (i) an external bark, greyish-brown, wrinkled longitudinally; (ii) an internal woody portion, yellowish-grey, very porous or cancellated, with well-marked often incomplete concentric rings, and radiating medullary rays.</p> | <p><i>Decoctum Pareira.</i> Pareira root, 1 } Boil 15 minutes, Water, 20 } and strain. <i>Dose.</i>—3 1 to 2.</p> <p><i>Extractum Pareira.</i> Made by digestion in, and percolating with, boiling water; and evaporating by a water-bath. <i>Dose.</i>—gr. 10 to 20.</p> <p><i>Extractum Pareira Liquidum.</i> Made by macerating in, and percolating with, boiling water; evaporating; and when cold adding rectified spirit, filtering, and making up to a certain proportion. <i>Dose.</i>—3 $\frac{1}{2}$ to 2.</p> <p>Incompatibles. — Persalts of iron; lead salts; tincture of iodine.</p> <p>ACTION.—Tonic. Diuretic.</p> |

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|---|---|--|
| 6. PODOPHYLLI RADIX— PODOPHYLLUM ROOT. — PODOPHYLLUM PELTATUM. — N.O. RANUNCULACEÆ. — The dried rhizome. | <p>a. In jointed pieces of variable length, but usually short.</p> <p>b. About the size of a quill.</p> <p>c. Externally brown and wrinkled longitudinally, with round white spots at the joints, where the rootlets are broken off.</p> <p>d. Short fracture, and whitish internally.</p> <p>e. Powder is greenish-yellow; with sweet odour, and sweetish-acrid taste.</p> | <p>The source of <i>Podophylli Resina</i>, or <i>Podophyllin</i>, (see RESINS).</p> <p>ACTION.—Drastic purgative. Hepatic stimulant. Dose.—gr. 10 to 20. (Podophyllin much preferable.)</p> |
| 7. PYRETHRI RADIX— PELLITORY ROOT. — ANACYCLUS PYRETHRUM. — N.O. COMPOSITÆ. — The dried root. | <p>a. Pieces about 2 to 3 inches long; and the size of the little finger.</p> <p>b. Cylindrical or slightly fusiform.</p> <p>c. Externally, thick brown bark, with shining black spots; often worm-eaten.</p> <p>d. Internally dark-brown, with black points.</p> <p>e. Resinous fracture; radiated structure.</p> <p>f. When chewed causes a pricking sensation in mouth, lips, and tongue; with glowing heat; and a profuse flow of saliva.</p> | <p><i>Tinctura Pyrethri.</i></p> <p>Pellitory root, 4 } Macerate 48 Rectified spirit, 20 } hours and percolate.</p> <p>ACTION.—Sialagogue.</p> |

C. SHORT TRANSVERSE SECTIONS.

| | | |
|--|---|---|
| 1. CALUMBÆ RADIX— CALUMBA ROOT. — JATEORRHIZA CALUMBA. — N.O. MENISPERMACEÆ — The root, sliced transversely and dried. | <p>a. Circular or oval slices</p> <p>b. $\frac{1}{4}$ to 2 or 3 inches in diameter; $\frac{1}{8}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$ inch thick.</p> <p>c. Concavo-convex; thinner in the centre.</p> <p>d. Externally olive or dark green.</p> <p>e. Internally yellow; soft and often spongy; concentric.</p> <p>f. Slightly aromatic odour.</p> <p>g. Bitter taste.</p> | <p><i>Extractum Calumbæ.</i></p> <p>Made by macerating the root in cold water; straining and pressing; filtering; and evaporating by a water-bath.</p> <p>Dose.—gr. 2 to 10.</p> <p><i>Infusum Calumbæ.</i></p> <p>Calumba, 1 } Macerate 1 hour, Cold water, 20 } and strain.</p> <p>Dose.—$\frac{1}{2}$ 1 to 2.</p> <p><i>Tinctura Calumbæ.</i></p> <p>Calumba, 1 } Macerate 48 hours, Proof spirit, 8 } and percolate.</p> <p>Dose.—$\frac{1}{2}$ 1 to 2.</p> <p>ACTION.—Bitter stomachic tonic.</p> |
|--|---|---|

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|---|---|---|
| 2. SUMBUL RADIX— SUMBUL or MUSK ROOT. — EURYANGIUM SUMBUL. — N.O. UMBELLIFERÆ. — The sliced and dried root. | a. Transverse sections, nearly circular. b. $2\frac{1}{2}$ to 5 inches in dia- meter; $\frac{1}{4}$ to 1 inch thick. c. Externally a rough bark, light or dusky brown, wrinkled, and often beset with short bristly fibres. d. Internally porous, and presents more or less loose bundles of coarse irregular fibres. e. Musk-like odour. f. Taste sweetish, and afterwards bitterish and balsamic. | <i>Tinctura Sumbul.</i> Sumbul, 1 } Macerate 48 Proof spirit, 8 } hours, and per- colate. Dose.— \mathfrak{m} 15 to 30. ACTION.—Nervine and cardiac stimulant. Antispasmodic. |

D. PECULIAR ROOTS.

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| 1. IPECACU- ANHA. — CEPHAELIS IPECACUANHA. — N.O. CINCHONACEÆ or RUBIACEÆ. — Annulated or Brazilian = <i>Officinal.</i> — The dried root. | a. Pieces, 2 to 4 inches long, and about the size of small quills. b. Contorted, knotted, and irregularly an- nulated, with deep- circular fissures. c. Colour is of various shades of brown, like brownish or ash-co- loured rings on a white cord. d. Cortical or active portion—75 to 80 per cent.; slender, tough, woody centre, almost inert. e. Fractures easily, with a resinous frac- ture. f. Powder pale brown, with a faint, nauseous odour; and a bitter, somewhat acrid taste. | <i>Pilula Ipecacuanhæ cum Scilla.</i> Compound powder of ipecacuanha, ³ Squill, in powder, 1 Ammoniacum, in powder, 1 Treacle, q.s. Dose.—5 to 10 grains. <i>Pulvis Ipecacuanhæ Compositus.</i> (Dover's Powder). Ipecacuanha, 1 Opium, 1 Sulphate of potash, 8 Dose.—5 to 10 grains. <i>Trochisci Ipecacuanhæ</i> = $\frac{1}{4}$ gr. in each lozenge. Dose.—1 to 3 lozenges. <i>Trochisci Ipecacuanhæ et</i> <i>Morphiæ.</i> Ipecacuanha, gr. $\frac{1}{2}$ } in each Hydrochlorate of } lozenge. morphia, gr. $\frac{1}{2}$ } <i>Vinum Ipecacuanhæ.</i> Ipecacuanha, 1 } Macerate 7 days, Sherry wine, 20 } strain, and make up with sherry to 20. Dose.— \mathfrak{m} 5 to 60; 33 to 56. ACTION.—Emetic. Diaphoretic. Expectorant. Vascular seda- tive. Laxative. Specific in dysentery. |
|---|---|--|

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|--|--|--|
| 2. RHEUM— RHUBARB. — UNDETERMINED SPECIES, RHEUM OFFICINALE, ETC. — N.O. POLYGONACEÆ. — Three OFFICIAL VARIETIES. 1. Russian or Turkey. 2. East-Indian. 3. Batavian. — Several other kinds <i>non-offi- cinal</i> . — The root, de- prived of its bark, and dried. | 1. RUSSIAN or TURKEY. a. Angular, and of various shapes, trapezoid, irregular, flat, cylindrical. b. Cortex completely removed by slicing. c. Pierced with a large hole, often reaching only to the centre. d. Externally, smooth, bright-yellow, with powder on the sur- face. e. Internally, compact; fracture uneven, ragged, and irregu- larly variegated or marbled, red and grey. 2. EAST-INDIAN or HALF TRIMMED. a. Slightly rounded. b. Has adhering por- tions of cortex. c. Externally, red and veined, and no powder. d. Denser, and presents a smoother fracture with greenish and blackish stains. 3. BATAVI'N or DUTCH TRIMMED. a. Round or flattened. b. Angular. c. Drilled with a hole. | <i>Extractum Rhei</i> . Made with water and rectified spirit. <i>Dose</i> .—gr. 3 to 6. <i>Infusum Rhei</i> . Rhubarb, 1 } Infuse for 1 Boiling water, 40 } hour, and } strain. <i>Dose</i> .— $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 2. <i>Pilula Rhei Composita</i> . Rhubarb, $\frac{3}{4}$ 3 } Mix the Socotrine aloes, $\frac{3}{4}$ 2 $\frac{1}{2}$ } powders Myrrh, $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ } with the Hard soap, $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ } oil, add Oil of peppermint, $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ } the trea- Treacle, $\frac{3}{4}$ 4 } cle, and } beat into } a mass. <i>Dose</i> .—gr. 5 to 10. <i>Pulvis Rhei Compositus</i> , (Gregory's Powder). Rhubarb, 2 } Light magnesia, 6 } Mix. Ginger, 1 } <i>Dose</i> .—gr. 30 to 60; 5 to 10 for } children. <i>Syrupus Rhei</i> . Rhubarb, 2 } Coriander, 2 } Refined sugar, 24 } Percolate the Rectified spirit, 8 } Water, 24 } } rhubarb and coriander with } the spirit and water mixed. Evaporate to 13; filter; and dissolve the sugar with gentle heat. <i>Dose</i> .— $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 4. <i>Tinctura Rhei</i> . Rhubarb, 2 } Prepared by Cardamom seeds, $\frac{1}{4}$ } maceration Coriander, $\frac{1}{4}$ } for 48 Saffron, $\frac{1}{4}$ } hours, fol- Proof spirit, 20 } lowed by } percolation. <i>Dose</i> .— $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 3; $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 1. <i>Vinum Rhei</i> . Rhubarb, $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ } Macerate Canella bark, gr. 60 } for 7 days. Sherry wine, $\frac{3}{4}$ 20. } <i>Dose</i> .— $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 2. ACTION.—Stomachic tonic. Ape- rient. Hepatic stimulant. Astrin- gent, after the aperient action. |

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|---|--|---|
| 3. SASSAFRAS — SASSAFRAS OFFICINALE. — N.O. LAURACEÆ. — The dried root. | a. In large branched pieces or chips. b. Wood-like in appearance. c. Bark is greyish-brown externally; rusty-brown internally. d. Wood is light, porous, greyish-yellow. e. Agreeable odour. f. Taste—warm, aromatic, and sweet. (Often mistaken for <i>Quassia</i> in chips, which is lighter, odourless, and has a pure bitter taste). | No official preparation, but is contained in <i>Decoctum Sarsæ Compositum</i> . ACTION.—Vascular stimulant. Diaphoretic. Alterative. Also used as an adjuvant to other medicines, on account of flavour, &c. |
| 4. HEMIDESMUS— INDIAN SARSAPARILLA. — HEMIDESMUS INDICUS. — N.O. ASCLEPIADACEÆ. — The dried root. | a. In pieces about the thickness of a quill; cylindrical. b. Dark yellowish-brown colour. c. Furrowed, with deep annular cracks. (Distinction from <i>Sarsaparilla</i> .) d. Fragrant odour. e. Agreeable, hot, rather bitter taste. | <i>Syrupus Hemidesmi</i> . Hemidesmus, 1 } Infuse 4 hours, Refined sugar, 7 } strain, and dis- Boiling water, 5 } solve sugar by gentle heat. ACTION.—Diuretic. Alterative. |
| 5. ZINGIBER— GINGER. — ZINGIBER OFFICINALE. — N.O. ZINGIBERACEÆ. — The dried and scraped rhizome. | a. Irregular, knotty, lobed pieces, somewhat compressed; 3 or 4 inches long. b. { <i>Jamaica</i> = yellowish-white; scraped. East Indian = brown and wrinkled; not scraped. c. Short, mealy fracture. d. Spicy, agreeable, aromatic odour. e. Hot, and pungent taste. f. Powder=Yellowish-white. | <i>Tinctura Zingiberis</i> . Ginger, 1 } Macerate and Rectified spirit, 8 } percolate. Dose.—10 to 30 minims. <i>Tinctura Zingiberis Fortior</i> . Ginger, 10 } Percolate Rectified spirit, 20 } to 20. Dose.—5 to 20 minims. <i>Syrupus Zingiberis</i> . Strong Tincture of Ginger, 5 6 } Mix. Syrup, 3 19 } Dose.—3 1 to 4. Ginger is an ingredient in several official preparations. ACTION.—Carminative. Stimulant. Aromatic. |

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|--|---|---|
| 6. TURMERIC. — CURCUMA LONGA — N.O. ZINGIBERACEÆ. — The dried rhizome. | a. Short pieces; round. b. Externally, yellow; internally, reddish- yellow. c. Peculiar, aromatic odour. d. Aromatic taste; tinges saliva yellow. | Not used medicinally, but turme- ric is a condiment, and is an ordinary ingredient of "curry powder." A Tincture is ordered in the Appendix, and Turmeric paper is prepared from this, to test for alkalies. |
| 7. FILIX-MAS— MALE FERN. — ASPIDIUM FILIX-MAS. — N.O. FILICES. — The dried rhi- zome, with the bases of the foot- stalks, and por- tions of the root- fibre. | a. Caudex or central part, short and thick, and cylindrical. b. Leaf-stalks and rootlets attached; scaly and tufted. c. Greenish-brown co- lour. d. Powder—greenish- brown. e. Disagreeable odour. f. Nauseous, bitter, somewhat astringent taste. | Extractum Filicis Liquidum. Male fern, 1 } Percolate slowly; Ether, 2½ } and then distil off the ether. Dose.—℥ 15 to 30. Of Powder, 60 to 180 grains. ACTION.—Anthelmintic, for tape- worm. Astringent. |

E. BRANCHED GROUP.—RHIZOME WITH ROOTLETS.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. ARNICÆ RADIX— ARNICA ROOT. — ARNICA MONTANA. — N.O. COMPOSITÆ. — The dried rhi- zome and rootlets. | a. Rhizome, 2 or 3 inches long; 2 or 3 lines thick. b. Cylindrical and con- torted. c. Rough from the scars of leaves and adhering leaves. d. Numerous long and slender rootlets; fewer and less con- torted than <i>Serpentary</i> ; more slender than <i>Veratrum Vi- ride</i> . e. Peculiar odour; apt to excite sneezing. f. Peppery taste. | Tinctura Arnica. Arnica, 1 } Macerate and Rectified spirit, 20 } percolate. Dose.—℥ 1 to 2. ACTION.—Chiefly used externally for bruises. Internally, stimu- lant; irritant to alimentary canal; seldom administered. |
|---|---|---|

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|---|--|---|
| 2. SENEGÆ RADIX— SENEGÆ ROOT. — POLYGALA SENEGÆ. — N.O. POLYGALACEÆ. | a. Knobby or knotted root-stock. b. Branched root, about the size of a quill, twisted and keeled, a line run- ning along it. c. External cortex (the active part), greyish- yellow or yellowish- brown. | <i>Infusum Senegæ.</i> Senega, 1 } Infuse 1 hour, Boiling water, 20 } and strain. Dose.— $\bar{3}$ 1 to 2. |
| The dried root- stock and root. | d. Internally, woody and inert. e. Unpleasant odour, like scammony. f. Sweetish and acrid or pungent taste, causing a flow of sa- liva. | <i>Tinctura Senegæ.</i> Senega, 1 } Macerate for 48 Proof spirit, 8 } hours, and per- colate. Dose.— $\bar{3}$ $\frac{1}{2}$ to 2. |
| | | ACTION. —Stimulant expectorant. Diuretic. Emetic and cathar- tic in large doses. Said to act upon the heart, rendering its action slower and more power- ful. |
| 3. VALERIANÆ RADIX— VALERIAN ROOT. — VALERIANA OFFICINALIS. — N.O. VALERIANACEÆ. | a. Short rhizome, yel- lowish-white, with— b. Numerous rootlets, 2 to 3 inches long, forming a close bun- dle, fibrous. c. Characteristic, pene- trating, and disa- greeable odour. d. Nauseous, bitter, and camphoraceous taste. | <i>Infusum Valerianæ.</i> Valerian, gr. 120 } Infuse for 1 Boiling water, $\bar{3}$ 10 } hour, and Dose.— $\bar{3}$ 1 to 2. |
| The rhizome and root of plants cultivated in Bri- tain, collected in autumn, and dried; wild plants growing in dry soil preferred. | | <i>Tinctura Valerianæ.</i> Valerian, 1 } Macerate for 48 Proof spirit, 8 } hours, and per- colate. Dose.— $\bar{3}$ 1 to 2. |
| | | <i>Tinctura Valerianæ Ammoniata.</i> Valerian, 1 } Macerate for 7 Aromatic spirit } days; strain, of ammonia, 8 } press, and fil- ter; make up to 8. Dose.— $\bar{3}$ $\frac{1}{2}$ to 1. |
| | | <i>Valerianate of Soda and Zinc</i> are official, but these are not made from <i>Valerian</i> . (See SODIUM and ZINC). |
| | | ACTION. —Antispasmodic. Ner- vine stimulant. |

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|---|---|--|
| 4. SERPENTARIAE RADIX— SERPENTARY ROOT. — ARISTOLOCHIA SERPENTARIA. — N.O. ARISTOLOCHIEÆ. — The dried rhizome and rootlets. | a. Small, roundish rhizome. b. Yellowish; no adhering leaves or scars. (Distinction from <i>Arnica</i>). c. Very numerous, slender rootlets, forming a tuft, about 3 inches long. d. Aromatic and camphoraceous odour. e. Warm, bitter, and camphoraceous taste. | <i>Infusum Serpentariæ.</i> Serpentary, 1 } Infuse 2 hours Boiling water, 40 } and strain. Dose.— $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 2. <i>Tinctura Serpentariæ.</i> Serpentary, 1 } Macerate for 48 Proof spirit, 8 } hours, and percolate. Dose.— $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 2. ACTION.—Stimulant. Stomachic tonic. Diaphoretic. Alternative. |
| 5. SARSÆ RADIX— SARSAPARILLA ROOT. — SMILAX OFFICINALIS. — N.O. SMILACEÆ. — Several varieties, but <i>Jamaica Sarsaparilla</i> is the only official one. — The dried root. | a. Rhizome or "clump," covered with rootlets, and spirally twisted,—"bearded." b. Usually many feet long: folded in bundles 1 to $1\frac{1}{2}$ foot long. c. About the size of a goose-quill. d. Reddish-brown; not cracked transversely. (Distinction from <i>Hemidesmus</i>). e. No odour. Taste—mucilaginous, feebly bitter and acrid. f. Root distinguishable into (i) cortex, (ii) medullium, (iii) pith. | <i>Decoctum Sarsæ.</i> Sarsaparilla, 1 } Digest 1 hour; Boiling water, 8 } boil 10 minutes; cool; strain; and make up to 8. Dose.— $\frac{5}{8}$ 10 to 20 daily. <i>Decoctum Sarsæ Compositum.</i> Sarsaparilla, $\frac{3}{4}$ 2½ } Sassafras, $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 } As above; Guaiacum wood, $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 } make up Liquorice root, $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 } to $\frac{3}{4}$ 20. Mezereon, gr. 60 } Boiling water, $\frac{5}{8}$ 30 } Dose.— $\frac{3}{4}$ 10 to 20 daily. <i>Extractum Sarsæ Liquidum.</i> An alcoholic extract made with rectified spirit and water. Dose.— $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 4. ACTION.—Alternative. Tonic. |
| 6. VERATRI VIRIDIS RADIX— GREEN HELLEBORE ROOT. — VERATRUM VIRIDE. — N.O. MELANTHACEÆ. — The dried rhizome and rootlets. | a. Rhizome—thick, fleshy, conical and truncated. b. Externally earthy black; light-coloured within. c. Numerous pale-yellow rootlets; comparatively thick; marked with indentations. d. Often cut into quarters, or slices; or in compressed cakes. e. Peculiar bitter and acrid taste; with a sensation of numbness and tingling of the tongue and fauces | <i>Tinctura Veratri Viridis.</i> Green Hellebore, 4 } Macerate 48 Rectified spirit, 20 } hours, and percolate. Dose.—m 5 to 20. ACTION.—Emetic. Vascular and nervous depressant. Increases most secretions. Irritant to alimentary canal |

F. BARK OF ROOT.

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|--|---|--|
| 1. GRANATI RADICIS CORTEX— POMEGRANA- TE ROOT BARK. — PUNICA GRANATUM. — N.O. MYRTACEÆ. — The bark of the root, fresh or dried. | <p>a. In quills or frag- ments; thin.</p> <p>b. Externally, greyish- yellow.</p> <p>c. Internally, yellow, and will produce a yellow stain when moistened, and rubbed on paper.</p> <p>d. Short fracture.</p> <p>e. Slight odour; as- tringent and slightly bitter taste.</p> | <p><i>Decoctum Granati Radicis.</i></p> <p>Pomegranate root bark, 1 } Boil to Water, 20 } 10, and strain.</p> <p><i>Dose.</i>—$\frac{3}{4}$ r to 2.</p> <p><i>Incompatibles.</i>—Alkalies, lime- water, metallic salts, gelatine.</p> <p><i>ACTION.</i>—Astringent. Anthel- mintic.</p> |

GROUP III.—BARKS.

In the following list, only the *true barks* are con-
sidered, namely, those which form the outer cover-
ing of the stem.

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| 1. CANELLÆ ALBÆ CORTEX— CANELLA BARK. — CANELLA ALBA. — N.O. CANELLACEÆ. — The dried bark. | <p>a. Quills or broken flattened pieces.</p> <p>b. Various lengths; about an inch in dia- meter.</p> <p>c. Light-coloured. Pink- ish-white externally; lighter internally.</p> <p>d. Hard, breaks with a starchy or granular fracture.</p> <p>e. Aromatic, spicy, clove-like odour.</p> <p>f. Taste, warm, pep- pery, acrid, and bit- ter.</p> | <p>No official preparations. Con- tained in <i>Vinum Rhei</i>.</p> <p><i>ACTION.</i>—Bitter and aromatic. Generally used merely for fla- vouring; or as an aromatic with purgatives.</p> <p><i>Dose.</i>—Of powdered bark, gr. 10 to 30.</p> |
|---|--|--|

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|---|---|--|
| 2. CUSPARIÆ CORTEX— CUSPARIA or ANGUSTURA BARK. — GALIPEA CUSPARIA. — N.O. RUTACEÆ. — The dried bark. | <p>a. Straight pieces, generally incurved at the sides; or in quills.</p> <p>b. Pared or "feathered" at the edges.</p> <p>c. Several inches long; very thin, $\frac{1}{4}$ to 1 line.</p> <p>d. Externally, uneven epidermis, mottled, brownish or yellowish-grey.</p> <p>e. Internally, light-brown or yellowish-brown; flaky; separable into layers.</p> <p>f. Fracture short and resinous.</p> <p>g. Cut surface exhibits to the lens numerous white points or minute lines=raphides of oxalate of lime, and liber-fibres.</p> <p>h. Peculiar odour; very bitter and aromatic taste.</p> <p>ADULTERATION. False angustura bark—the bark of <i>Strychnos Nux Vomica</i>. Inner surface becomes blood-red with nitric acid.</p> | <p><i>Infusum Cuspariæ.</i> Cusparia, 1 } Infuse 2 hours, Water at 120°, 20 } and strain. Dose.—$\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 2.</p> <p><i>Incompatibles.</i>—Mineral acids; perchloride of iron; metallic salts.</p> <p><i>ACTION.</i>—Aromatic and bitter stomachic tonic. Antiperiodic (?).</p> <p>Dose of powdered bark, gr. 10-20</p> |
| 3. CASCARILLÆ CORTEX— CASCARILLA BARK. — CROTON ELUTERIA. — N.O. EUPHORBIACEÆ. — The dried bark. | <p>a. Usually in quills; sometimes flattened pieces.</p> <p>b. Short and small pieces, 2 to 4 inches in length; 2 to 5 lines in diameter.</p> <p>c. Externally, dull-brown, but usually presents white spots, or is more or less coated with lichens; fissured in both directions.</p> <p>d. Fracture short and resinous.</p> <p>e. Odour—fragrant and spicy, especially when burned.</p> <p>f. Taste—bitter and aromatic.</p> | <p><i>Infusum Cascarillæ.</i> Cascarilla, 1 } Infuse an hour, Boiling water, 10 } and strain. Dose.—$\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 2.</p> <p><i>Tinctura Cascarillæ.</i> Cascarilla, 1 } Macerate 48 hours, Proof spirit, 8 } and percolate. Dose.—$\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 2.</p> <p><i>Incompatibles.</i>—Lime-water; metallic salts; mineral acids.</p> <p><i>ACTION.</i>—Aromatic and bitter stomachic tonic. Antiperiodic. Stimulant expectorant.</p> |

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|---|---|--|
| 4. CINCHONÆ CORTEX— CINCHONA BARK. — N.O. CINCHONACEÆ. — There are three VARIETIES of Cinchona bark, each of which must be separat- ately considered. — a. CINCHONÆ FLAVÆ CORTEX— YELLOW CINCHONA BARK. — CINCHONA CALISAYA. | a. Usually in flat pieces, 6 to 18 inches long; 1 to 3 inches wide; 2 to 4 lines thick. Occasionally in quills; generally single; $\frac{1}{2}$ inch in dia- meter; $\frac{1}{2}$ to $\frac{3}{4}$ of an inch thick. b. Compact and heavy. c. The flat pieces have <i>no epidermis</i> ; exter- nally, cinnamon- brown colour; with broad, shallow, irreg- ular, longitudinal depressions. The quills have a <i>brown epidermis</i> , with white or yellow lichens at- tached; longitudinal wrinkles, and trans- verse or circular fis- sures. d. Internally, tawny- yellow, and fibrous. e. Fracture short, finely fibrous, and a pow- der is seen. f. Powder, cinnamon- brown. g. Taste, somewhat aromatic; strongly and persistently bit- ter and astringent. | <i>Decoctum Cinchonæ Flavæ.</i> Boil 10 minutes; strain when cold: make up to 20. Yellow cinchona $1\frac{1}{2}$ Water, 20 Dose.— \mathfrak{z} 1 to 2. <i>Extractum Cinchona Flavæ Liquidum.</i> Made with water, by maceration, percolation, and evaporation; rectified spirit being afterwards added. Dose.—M 10 to 30. <i>Infusum Cinchonæ Flavæ.</i> Yellow cinchona, 1 } Infuse 2 Boiling water, 20 } hours, and strain. Dose.— \mathfrak{z} 1 to 2. <i>Tinctura Cinchonæ Flavæ.</i> Yellow Cinchona, 4 } Macerate 48 Proof spirit, 20 } hours, and percolate. Dose.— \mathfrak{z} $\frac{1}{2}$ to 2. <i>Quinæ Sulphas.</i> —Cinchona Cali- saya is one of the sources of this salt. (See ALKALOIDS). |
| b. CINCHONÆ PALLIDÆ CORTEX— PALE CINCHONA BARK. — CINCHONA CONDAMINEA. | a. In quills, single or double; 6 to 15 inches long; $\frac{1}{2}$ to $\frac{3}{4}$ inch in diameter; $\frac{1}{20}$ to $\frac{1}{10}$ inch thick. b. Externally, an <i>epider- mis</i> , brown or grey, with crustaceous or stringy lichens at- tached. Longitudi- nal and transverse cracks. c. Internally, cinna- mon-brown, and smooth. d. Fracture short; not fibrous. e. Powder, pale-brown. f. Taste, <i>very astrin- gent</i> ; slightly bitter. | <i>Tinctura Cinchonæ Composita.</i> Pale cinchona, \mathfrak{z} 4 Bitter orange-peel, \mathfrak{z} 2 Serpentary, \mathfrak{z} 1 Saffron, gr. 120 Cochineal, gr. 60 Proof spirit, \mathfrak{z} 40 Macerate 48 hours, and percolate. Dose.— \mathfrak{z} $\frac{1}{2}$ to 2. |

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|--|--|---|
| <p><i>c.</i> CINCHONÆ RUBRÆ CORTEX— RED CINCHONA BARK. — CINCHONA SUCCIRUBRA.</p> | <p><i>a.</i> Usually in flat pieces, incurved; 4 to 24 inches long; 1 to 3 inches wide; 2 to 6 lines thick.</p> <p><i>b.</i> Compact and heavy.</p> <p><i>c.</i> Coated with epidermis, externally reddish-brown; often warty or tuberculated; rugged or wrinkled longitudinally, with deep transverse cracks. Rarely white lichens attached.</p> <p><i>d.</i> Internally, red (chestnut colour); rough and fibrous.</p> <p><i>e.</i> Fracture finely-fibrous; brick red.</p> <p><i>f.</i> Powder, red-brown.</p> <p><i>g.</i> Taste, bitter and astringent.</p> | <p>Red Cinchona bark has no official preparations.</p> <hr/> <p><i>Incompatibles.</i>—All the Cinchona barks are incompatible with ammonia, lime-water, metallic salts, and gelatine.</p> <hr/> <p><i>ACTION</i> (of all the CINCHONA BARKS).—Stomachic and general tonics. Astringent. Antiperiodic. Antiseptic.</p> <p><i>Dose</i> of powdered bark, gr. 15 to 30 or more.</p> |
| <p>5. CINNAMOMI CORTEX— CINNAMON BARK. — CINNAMOMUM ZEYLANICUM. — N.O. LAURACEÆ.</p> <p>The inner bark of shoots from the truncated stock.</p> | <p><i>a.</i> Closely-rolled quills, containing several small quills.</p> <p><i>b.</i> About 4 lines in diameter; $\frac{1}{8}$ of a line thick.</p> <p><i>c.</i> Light yellowish-brown colour.</p> <p><i>d.</i> Brittle; with a splintery fracture.</p> <p><i>e.</i> Peculiar fragrant odour.</p> <p><i>f.</i> Sweet, warm, aromatic, and astringent taste.</p> | <p><i>Aqua Cinnamomi.</i> Cinnamon, 1 } Distil 8. Water, 16 <i>Dose.</i>—$\frac{1}{3}$ 1 to 2.</p> <hr/> <p><i>Oleum Cinnamomi.</i>—(See OILS).</p> <hr/> <p><i>Pulvis Cinnamomi Compositus.</i> Cinnamon } Mix equal parts in Cardamoms } powder. Ginger } <i>Dose.</i>—gr. 3 to 10.</p> <hr/> <p><i>Tinctura Cinnamomi.</i> Cinnamon, 1 } Macerate 48 hours, Proofspirit, 8 } and percolate. <i>Dose.</i>—$\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 2.</p> <hr/> <p>Cinnamon is contained in several official preparations.</p> <hr/> <p><i>ACTION.</i>—Carminative. Astringent.</p> |

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|--|---|---|
| 6. LARICIS CORTEX— LARCH BARK. — LARIX EUROPEÆ. — N.O. CONIFERÆ. — The bark, deprived of its outer layer. | a. In flat pieces usually; sometimes in quills. b. 3 to 6 inches long; 2 to 4 inches wide. c. Externally, when de- prived of epidermis =reddish. (If epi- dermis is attached, is greyish, and spot- ted with lichens; irregularly fissured; beaded with resinous exudation). d. Internally, yellowish or red, and fibrous. e. Faint terebinthinate odour. | <i>Tinctura Laricis.</i> Larch bark, 1 } Macerate 48 Rectified spirit, 8 } hours, and Dose.—M 20 to 25. } percolate. ACTION.—Astringent. Stimulant expectorant. |
| 7. MEZEREI CORTEX— MEZEREON BARK. — DAPHNE MEZEREUM and LAUREOLA. — N.O. THYMELACÆ. — The dried bark. | a. Strips or quilled pieces; curled or flat. b. Various lengths; thin. c. Externally brown; internally white. d. Tough and fibrous. e. Odour faint and nauseous. f. Taste—hot and very acid. | <i>Extractum Mezerei Æthereum.</i> Made with rectified spirit and ether. An ingredient in <i>Lini- mentum Sinapis Compositum.</i> Mezereum is an ingredient in <i>Decoctum Sarsæ Compositum.</i> ACTION.—Rubefacient and vesi- cant. Stimulant. Diuretic. Diaphoretic. Alterative. |
| 8. NECTAN- DRE CORTEX —BEBEERU BARK. — NECTANDRA RODIZI. — N.O. LAURACÆ. — The dried bark. | a. In flat pieces. b. 1 to 2 feet long; 2 to 6 inches wide; $\frac{1}{4}$ inch thick. c. Very heavy and hard; fibrous. d. Externally, greyish- brown; internally, dark cinnamon- brown. e. Taste—strongly and persistently bitter, and astringent. | <i>Beberia Sulphas.</i> —This salt is obtained from Nectandra Bark. (See ALKALOIDS). ACTION.—Tonic. Antiperiodic. |
| 9. QUERCUS CORTEX— OAK-BARK. — QUERCUS PEDUNCULATA. — N.O. CUPULIFERÆ. | a. Long pieces; thin. b. Externally, a grey- ish-white and shining epidermis. c. Internally, cinna- mon-brown. d. Brittle and fibrous. e. Strongly astringent taste. | <i>Decoctum Quercus.</i> Oak-bark, $1\frac{1}{2}$ } Boil 10 minutes, Water, 20 } strain, and make up 20. Dose.— $\frac{3}{5}$ 1 to 2. <i>Incompatibles.</i> —Mineral acids, alkalies, metallic salts, gela- tine, and alkaloids. ACTION.—Astringent. |

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|--|--|---|
| 10. ULMI CORTEX— ELM-BARK. — ULMUS CAMPESTRIS. — N.O. ULMACEÆ. — The inner bark. | <p>a. Flat pieces; broad; $\frac{1}{2}$ line thick.</p> <p>b. Lightish brown or brownish-yellow; no epidermis.</p> <p>c. Tough and fibrous.</p> <p>d. No smell; taste—mucilaginous, slightly bitter and astringent.</p> | <p><i>Decoctum Ulmi.</i></p> <p>Elm-bark, 1 } Boil 10 minutes. Water, 8 } strain, and make up to 8.</p> <p><i>Dose.</i>—$\bar{3}$ 2 to 4.</p> <p><i>Incompatibles.</i>—Sulphate of iron; acetate of lead; nitrate of silver; gelatine.</p> <p><i>ACTION.</i>—Demulcent. Slightly astringent.</p> |

GROUP IV.—WOODS OR STEMS.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. GUAIACI LIGNUM— GUAIACUM WOOD. — GUAIACUM OFFICINALE. (LIGNUM VITÆ). — N.O. ZYGOPHYLLACEÆ — In logs, and coarse powder or chips. | <p>a. Logs are of some size.</p> <p>b. Usually no bark.</p> <p>c. Section—<i>alburnum</i>, pale-yellow; <i>duramen</i> or heart-wood, dark greenish-brown. Striking "cross-grained" appearance, the fibres intersecting diagonally and obliquely.</p> <p>d. Very heavy, tough, and hard. Sp. gr. 1.33. Sinks readily in water.</p> <p>e. Nitric acid applied to the dark or central wood produces a bluish-green colour.</p> <p>f. Usually seen in coarse powder or chips, the wood being reduced by a turning lathe.</p> | <p>No official preparations, but is the source of <i>Guaiacum resin</i>. (See RESINS).</p> <p>Contained in <i>Decoctum Sarsæ Compositum</i>.</p> <p><i>ACTION.</i>—Stimulant diaphoretic. Alterative.</p> |
|---|---|---|

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|---|---|---|
| 2. HÆMATOXYLI LIGNUM— LOGWOOD. — HÆMATOXYLON CAMPECHIÆ. — N.O. LEGUMINOSÆ. — In logs and chips. | 1. Logs. a. Consist only of heart-wood. b. Heavy; sinks in water. c. Externally dark red; internally reddish-brown. 2. Chips. a. Red, with green or greenish-yellow lustre, due to crystalline hæmatoxylin. b. Feeble odour, like violets. c. Sweetish astringent taste; colours saliva. d. Colouring and astringent principles soluble in water and alcohol. | <i>Decoctum Hæmatoxyli.</i> Logwood chips, $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 } Boil 10 minutes; strain; Cinnamon, gr. 60 } and make up Water, $\frac{3}{4}$ 20 } to 20. <i>Dose.</i> — $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 2. <i>Extractum Hæmatoxyli.</i> Made by infusing for 24 hours in boiling water; boiling; straining; and evaporating. <i>Dose.</i> —gr. 10 to 30. <i>Incompatibles.</i> —Mineral acids; metallic salts; lime-water; tartar emetic. |
| 3. PTEROCARPI LIGNUM— RED SANDAL- WOOD. — PTEROCARPUS SANTALINUS. — N.O. LEGUMINOSÆ. — In logs and chips or raspings. | 1. Logs. a. Externally dark-brown. Transverse section variegated with dark and light rays. b. Dense and heavy. 2. Chips. a. Dark-red colour; no lustre. b. Faint, peculiar, violet-like odour. c. Taste slightly astringent. d. Powder has a blood-red colour. e. Colouring matter not soluble in water. | No official preparations. Contained in <i>Tinctura Lavan- dula Composita.</i> <i>Action.</i> —Only used as a colouring agent. Somewhat astringent. |
| 4. QUASSIÆ LIGNUM— QUASSIA WOOD. — PICRÆNA EXCELSA. — N.O. SIMARUBACÆ. — In logs and chips. | 1. Logs. a. Various sizes; may be very large. b. Externally greyish-brown, and not unfrequently has an efflorescence of nitrate of potash on its surface. c. Internally whitish, becoming yellow on exposure. d. Very tough; less dense than other woods. | <i>Extractum Quassia.</i> Made with cold water, by maceration, percolation, and evaporation. <i>Dose.</i> —gr. 3 to 5. <i>Infusum Quassia.</i> Quassia, gr. 60 } Infuse $\frac{1}{2}$ an hour, Cold water, $\frac{3}{4}$ 10 } and strain. <i>Dose.</i> — $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 2. |

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|---|---|--|
| QUASSIA (continued). | 2. <i>Chips.</i> a. Whitish or pale yellow. } Thus distin- b. Odourless. } guished c. Pure and } from intense bit- } Sassa- ter taste. } fras. | <i>Tinctura Quassia.</i> Quassia, $\frac{1}{2}$ } Digest 7 days ; Proof spirit, 20 } filter ; make up to 20. Dose.—3 1 to 2 ACTION.—Pure bitter tonic and stomachic. Antiperiodic (?) An- thelmintic for thread-worms. May be given with iron. |

GROUP V.—GREEN TOPS AND TWIGS.

| | | |
|--|--|---|
| 1. SCOPARI CACUMINA— BROOM-TOPS. — SAROTHAMNUS SCOPARIUS. — N.O. LEGUMINOSÆ. — The tops, fresh and dried. | a. Straight, pentangu- lar twigs. b. Smooth; dark- green; tough. c. Small oblong leaves. d. Peculiar odour when bruised; lost in the process of drying. e. Bitter nauseous taste. | <i>Decoctum Scoparii.</i> Dried broom tops, 1 } Boil 10 min- Water, 20 } utes, and strain. Dose.—3 2 to 4. <i>Succus Scoparii.</i> —Made by ex- pressing the juice from fresh- broom-tops; adding rectified spirit (1 to 3); setting aside 7 days; and filtering. Dose.—3 1 to 2. ACTION.—Diuretic. Cathartic in large doses. |
| 2. SABINÆ CACUMINA— SAVIN-TOPS. — JUNIPERUS SABINA. — N.O. CONIFERÆ. — The tops, fresh and dried. | a. Twigs densely covered with minute imbricated leaves in four rows. b. Dark-green colour. c. Strong, peculiar, un- pleasant odour. d. Disagreeable taste, acrid and bitter. | <i>Oleum Sabinæ.</i> (See OILS). <i>Tinctura Sabinæ.</i> Savin-tops, 1 } Macerate 48 Proof spirit, 8 } hours; perco- late; and make up to 20. Dose.—m 15 to 30. <i>Unguentum Sabinæ.</i> Fresh savin-tops, 8 } Melt, add Yellow wax, 3 } the savin, Prepared lard, 16 } and digest 20 minutes; strain, and press. ACTION.—Local stimulant and irritant. Internal stimulant. Emmenagogue. Ecbolic. An- thelmintic. Diaphoretic. |

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|--|---|--|
| 4. HYOSCYAMI FOLIA— HYOSCYAMUS LEAVES. HYOSCYAMUS NIGER. — N.O. ATROPACEÆ. a. The fresh leaves and small bran- ches. b. The leaves care- fully dried. | a. The leaves are of considerable size; sessile. b. Oblong; acutely and unequally sinuate. c. Dull-green colour. d. Woolly or hairy; clammy and when fresh viscid. e. Strong, unpleasant odour. f. Slightly acrid taste, which nearly disap- pears on drying. | <i>Extractum Hyoscyami.</i> A green extract, prepared from the fresh juice in the usual way. <i>Dose.</i> —gr. 3 to 6. <i>Succus Hyoscyami.</i> Fresh juice, 3 } Mix; filter in Rectified spirit, 1 } 7 days. <i>Dose.</i> — $3\frac{1}{2}$ to 1. <i>Tinctura Hyoscyami.</i> Dried leaves, 1 } Macerate 48 Proof spirit, 8 } hours, and per- colate. <i>Dose.</i> —m 15 to 60 or more. <i>Incompatibles.</i> —Liquor potassæ and sodæ; acetate of lead; vegetable acids. <i>ACTION.</i> —External anodyne. My- driatic. Sedative. Narcotic. Aid to purgatives. |
| 5. LAURO- CERASI FOLIA —CHERRY- LAUREL LEAVES. — PRUNUS LAUROCERASUS. — N.O. ROSACEÆ. The fresh leaves | a. 4 to 5 inches long; about 2 inches broad. b. Strong, short petiole; glands at the base. c. Ovate-lanceolate or elliptical; toothed. d. Deep-green on the upper surface; lighter and dull on the lower surface. e. Smooth and shining; coriaceous texture. f. Ratafia-like odour when bruised. | <i>Aqua Laurocerasi.</i> Cherry-laurel leaves, 16 } Mace- Water, 50. } rate, and (Contains <i>Hydrocyanic Acid</i>). <i>Dose.</i> —m 5 to 30. <i>ACTION.</i> —Sedative. |
| 6. MATICÆ FOLIA— MATICO LEAVES. — ARTANTHE ELONGATA. — N.O. PIPERACEÆ. The dried leaves. | a. From 2 to 8 inches long; pointed. b. Much veined and tessellated above; downy beneath. c. Agreeable aromatic odour. d. Aromatic, warm, and slightly astring- ent taste. | <i>Infusum Maticæ.</i> Matico, 1 } Infuse $\frac{1}{2}$ an Boiling water, 50 } hour, and <i>Dose.</i> — $3\frac{1}{2}$ to 4. } strain. <i>ACTION.</i> —External styptic. Aro- matic tonic and stimulant. |
| 7. STRAMONII FOLIA— STRAMONIUM LEAVES. — DATURA STRAMONIUM. — N.O. ATROPACEÆ. The dried leaves. | a. Large leaves. b. Ovate; unequally sinuous; deeply cut or toothed. c. Dark-green; smooth. d. Rank heavy odour, es- pecially while drying. e. Mawkish, faintly bit- ter, nauseous taste. | No official preparations. <i>Dose</i> of powdered leaves, gr. 1 or more. <i>ACTION.</i> —Smoked as an anti- spasmodic or pulmonary seda- tive in asthma. |

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|--|---|---|
| 8. TABACI FOLIA— TOBACCO. — NICOTIANA TABACUM. — N.O. ATROPACEÆ. | a. Of large size. b. Ovate or oblong-lanceolate; acuminate. c. Pale-green when fresh; mottled-brown when dry. d. Present numerous short glandular hairs. e. Characteristic, heavy, narcotic odour, when dried. f. Nauseous, bitter, and acrid taste. | <i>Enema Tabaci.</i> Tobacco, gr. 20 } Infuse $\frac{1}{2}$ Boiling water, 58 } an hour, and strain. ACTION. — Vascular sedative and depressant. Narcotic. Emetic. Pulmonary sedative and expectorant when smoked. |
| The dried leaves. | | |

B. SMALL LEAVES.

| | | | |
|--|------------|---|---|
| 1. BUCHU FOLIA— BUCHU LEAVES. — BAROSMA. | a. Length | <i>Betulina</i> — Short— $\frac{3}{4}$ in. <i>Crenulata</i> — Medium—1 in. <i>Serratifolia</i> — Long—1 to $1\frac{1}{2}$ in. | <i>Infusum Buchu.</i> Buchu, 1 } Infuse Boiling water, 20 } 1 hour, and Dose.— $\overline{3}$ 1 to 4. } strain. |
| VARIETIES :— a. <i>Betulina</i> . b. <i>Crenulata</i> . c. <i>Serratifolia</i> . — N.O. RUTACEÆ. | b. Shape | <i>Betulina</i> — Obovate, with recurved and truncated apex. <i>Crenulata</i> — Oval-lanceolate, or obtuse. <i>Serratifolia</i> . Linear-lanceolate, and tapering at each end. | <i>Tinctura Buchu.</i> Buchu, 1 } Macerate Proof spirit, 8 } 48 hours, and Dose.— $\overline{5}$ 1 to 4. } percolate. |
| The dried leaves. | c. Margins | <i>Betulina</i> — Sharp, cartilaginous, spreading teeth. <i>Crenulata</i> — Minutely crenulated. <i>Serratifolia</i> — Sharply and finely serrated. | ACTION. — Diuretic. Has special action on urinary mucous membrane. Diaphoretic. Stomachic tonic. |
| | | Common properties :— d. Smooth; coriaceous texture. e. Light yellowish or greyish-green colour. f. Oil-glands = pellucid dots, especially in the indentations, and at the apex. g. Powerful, peculiar odour. h. Warm, camphoraceous taste. | |

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|---|---|--|
| 2. SENNÆ FOLIA— SENNÆ LEAVES. — CASSIA (vari- ous species). — N.O. LEGUMINOSÆ. — OFFICINAL VARIETIES:— <i>a. Alexandrian</i> = Leaflets of <i>C. lanceolata</i> and <i>obovata</i> , carefully freed from flowers, pods, and leaf- stalks. <i>b. Tinnivelly</i> or <i>Indicus</i> = Leaflets of <i>C.</i> <i>elongata</i> . | <p><i>a. Length</i> { <i>Alexandrian</i> = $\frac{3}{4}$ to 1 inch. <i>Tinnivelly</i> = about 2 inches.</p> <p><i>b. Shape</i> { <i>Alexandrian</i> = Lanceolate or obovate. <i>Tinnivelly</i> = Lanceolate, acute.</p> <p><i>c. Unequally oblique at the base.</i></p> <p><i>d. Thin; flexible or brittle.</i></p> <p><i>e. Greenish or greyish- green colour; inferior varieties are more brown.</i></p> <p><i>f. Faint, but characteristic odour.</i></p> <p><i>g. Sweetish, mucilaginous taste.</i></p> <p>(Inferior kinds of senna consist of broken leaves, mixed with stalks, flowers, and broken pods; and other species of Cassia leaves are often present).</p> <p>ADULTERATIONS. — The most important is <i>Cynan- chum argel</i>, the leaves of which are distinguished as follows:— Thicker and stiffer. Paler in colour. Equal at the base. Wrinkled. Have a bitter taste. Other leaves, not met with in this country, are:— <i>Colutea arborescens</i>. <i>Coriaria myrtifolia</i>. <i>Tephrosia apollinea</i>.</p> | <p><i>Confectio Sennæ.</i> A mixture of Senna with several aperient fruits, Coriander, Ex- tract of Liquorice, and Refined Sugar. <i>Dose.</i>—gr. 60 to 120.</p> <hr/> <p><i>Infusum Sennæ.</i> Senna, $\frac{3}{4}$ } Infuse 1 Ginger, gr. 30 } hour, and Boiling water, $\frac{3}{4}$ } strain. <i>Dose.</i>—$\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 2.</p> <hr/> <p><i>Mistura Sennæ Composita.</i> Infusion of senna, 14 } Sulphate of magne- } Dissolve sia, 4 } with gen- Extract of Liquor- } tle heat; ice, $\frac{1}{2}$ } add the Tincture of senna, } Tinctures; 24 } and make Compound tincture } up to 20. of cardamoms, 14 } <i>Dose.</i>—$\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 1$\frac{1}{2}$.</p> <hr/> <p><i>Syrupus Sennæ.</i> Made by digesting Senna with water at 120°; evaporating; when cold, adding Rectified Spirit and Oil of Coriander; filtering; and dissolving Re- fined Sugar by a gentle heat. <i>Dose.</i>—$\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 2.</p> <hr/> <p><i>Tinctura Sennæ.</i> Senna, 5 } Raisins, 2 } Macerate for Caraway, 1 } 48 hours, and Coriander, 1 } percolate. Proof spirit, 40 } <i>Dose.</i>—$\frac{3}{4}$ 2 to 6.</p> <hr/> <p>ACTION.—Laxative or mild ape- rient.</p> |

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|--|---|--|
| 3. UVÆ URSI FOLIA— BEARBERRY LEAVES. | a. About $\frac{3}{4}$ inch long. b. Obovate; obtuse; <i>entire</i> . c. Dark-green colour. d. Shining above; reti- culated beneath; <i>not</i> <i>dotted</i> ; coriaceous. | <i>Infusum Uvæ Ursi</i> . Uva ursi leaves, 1 } Infuse 2 hours, Boiling water, 20 } and strain. <i>Dose</i> .— $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 2. |
| ARCTOSTAPHYLOS UVA URSI. — N.O. ERICACEÆ. The dried leaves. | e. Feeble hay-like or tea-like odour, especi- ally when powdered. f. Strongly astringent taste. | <i>Incompatibles</i> .—Iron and lead salts; nitrate of silver; vege- table alkaloids; gelatine. <i>ACTION</i> .—Astringent, acting es- pecially on urinary organs. Tonic. |

C. PECULIAR—MUCH-DIVIDED LEAVES.

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| 1. CONII FOLIA— HEMLOCK LEAVES. — CONIUM MACULATUM. — N.O. UMBELLIFERÆ. — a. The fresh leaves with the young branches. b. The leaves, carefully dried. | a. Decomposed = tri- pinnate, with pinna- tid leaflets. b. Stem <i>smooth</i> ; with dark purple spots; <i>not</i> swollen at the nodes; petiole fur- rowed and sheathing at the base. c. Deep-green; smooth and shining. d. Characteristic, disagreeable odour when bruised, due to <i>volatile oil</i> . (<i>Conia</i> has also a pecu- liar odour, which is brought out strongly by rubbing the leaves with solution of pot- ash). | <i>Cataplasma Conii</i> . Made with conium leaves, lin- seed-meal, and boiling water. <i>Extractum Conii</i> . A green extract made from the <i>fresh juice</i> , in the usual way. <i>Dose</i> .—gr. 2 to 8. <i>Pilula Conii Composita</i> . Extract of conium, 5 } Ipecacuanha, 1 } <i>Mix</i> . Treacle, q.s. } <i>Dose</i> .—gr. 5 to 10. <i>Succus Conii</i> . Fresh juice, 3 } <i>Mix</i> , and filter Rectified spirit, 1 } in 7 days. <i>Dose</i> .— $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 1 or more. <i>Vapor Coniæ</i> . Extract of conium, { <i>Mix</i> and gr. 60 { put 20 mi- Solution of potash, 3 i } nims on a Water, 3 i } sponge in a suitable steamer in- haler. <i>ACTION</i> .—External anodyne. In- ternal anodyne. Antispas- modic. Spinal sedative, and paralyses the ends of the motor nerves. Pulmonary sedative, especially when inhaled. |
|---|--|--|

GROUP VII.—FLOWERING-TOPS.

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|---|---|---|
| 1. CANNABIS INDICA— INDIAN HEMP. — CANNABIS SATIVA. — N.O. CANNABINACEÆ. | a. In pressed masses, about 2 inches long, consisting of the branches, with the remains of flowers and smaller leaves, and a few ripe fruits. b. Dark or dusky green colour. c. Characteristic odour. | <i>Extractum Cannabis Indicæ.</i> An alcoholic extract, made with rectified spirit. <i>Dose.</i> —gr. $\frac{1}{2}$ to 1 or more. <i>Tinctura Cannabis Indicæ.</i> Extract of Indian hemp, 1 } Dis- Rectified spirit, 20 } solve. <i>Dose.</i> —m 5 to 20. ACTION. — Cerebral excitant. Anodyne. Soporific and narcotic. Antispasmodic. |
| The dried flowering tops of the female plant, from which the resin has not been removed; cultivated in India. | | |
| 2. CUSSO— KOUSSO. — BRAYERA ANTHELMINTICA. — N.O. ROSACEÆ. — The flowers and tops. | a. In bundles, consisting of the twigs, male and female flowers, and unripe fruits. b. General colour is yellowish-green, but small reddish-brown flowers are visible on hairy stalks, with purple edges of the petals streaking the general colour. c. Peculiar odour, something like tea; fragrant and balsamic. d. Disagreeable, somewhat acrid taste | <i>Infusum Cusso.</i> Koussou, $\frac{1}{2}$ } Infuse for $\frac{1}{2}$ of Boiling water, $\frac{3}{4}$ } an hour, and take without straining. ACTION.—Anthelmintic, for tapeworm. |

GROUP VIII.—FLOWERS AND BUDS.

A. FLOWER-BUDS.

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|---|--|---|
| 1. CARYO- PHYLLUM— CLOVES. — CARYOPHYLLUS AROMATICUS. — N.O. MYRTACEÆ. — The dried unex- panded flower- buds. | a. Nail-like in shape. A nearly cylindrical body, with 4 teeth, and a globular head, which is the unex- panded corolla. b. About $\frac{1}{2}$ an inch long. c. Dark reddish-brown colour. d. Strong fragrant, characteristic odour, especially when in- dented with the nail. e. Pungent, spicy, and bitter taste. | <i>Infusum Caryophylli.</i> Cloves, 1 } Infuse $\frac{1}{2}$ an Boiling water, 40 } hour, and strain. <i>Dose.</i> — $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 2. <i>Oleum Caryophylli.</i> (See OILS). <i>Powdered</i> { <i>Infusum Aurantii</i> <i>cloves con-</i> { <i>Compositum.</i> <i>tained in</i> { <i>Mistura Ferri Aro-</i> <i>matica.</i> <i>Vinum Opii.</i> <i>Incompatibles.</i> —Mineral acids, lime-water; salts of iron; gelatine. <i>ACTION.</i> —Carminative. Aro- matic. Stimulant. |
| 2. SANTONICA —WORM- SEEDS. — ARTEMISIA SANTONICA. — N.O. COMPOSITÆ. — Unexpanded flower heads. | a. Minute bodies; over a line long; about $\frac{1}{4}$ a line broad. b. Seed-like; fusiform; blunt at the ends. c. Consist of imbricated involucre scales, with a green midrib, enclosing 4 or 5 tubu- lar flowers. d. Strong odour. e. Bitter and campho- raceous taste. | <i>No officinal preparation.</i> San- tonica is the source of <i>Santonin</i> . (See SANTONIN). <i>Dose.</i> —gr. 10 to 60. <i>ACTION.</i> —Anthelmintic, for round worm. |

B. ENTIRE FLOWERS.

| | | |
|--|---|--|
| 1. ANTHEMIDIS FLORES— CHAMOMILE. — ANTHEMIS NOBILIS. — N.O. COMPOSITÆ. — The dried flowers. | a. Flower-heads like a daisy, consisting of florets on a conical scaly receptacle. b. Florets are yellow tubular, and white strap-shaped; or only white. c. Characteristic strong, and pleasant odour. d. Taste, aromatic and bitter. | <i>Extractum Anthemidis.</i> Made by boiling chamomile in water; straining, pressing, and filtering; evaporating to a pill-consistence; and adding oil of chamomile. <i>Dose.</i> —gr. 2 to 10. <i>Infusum Anthemidis.</i> Chamomile, $\frac{1}{2}$ } Infuse 15 mi- Boiling water, 10 } nutes, and strain. <i>Dose.</i> — $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 2; 5 to 10 as emetic. <i>Oleum Anthemidis.</i> (See OILS). <i>ACTION.</i> —Stomachic tonic. Aro- matic. Anthelmintic. Emetic. |
|--|---|--|

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|---|--|--|
| 2. SAMBUCI FLORES— ELDER FLOWERS. — SAMBUCUS NIGRA. — N.O. CAPRIFOLIACEÆ. — The fresh flowers. | a. Small flowers, crowded on 5 parted cymes. b. White colour. c. Fragrant odour. | <i>Aqua Sambuci.</i> Fresh elder flowers, 1 } Distil 1. Water, 2 ACTION.—Merely used as a ve- hicle. |

C. PETALS.

| | | |
|--|--|---|
| 1. RHÆADOS PETALA— RED POPPY PETALS. — PAPAVER RHÆAS — N.O. PAPAVERACEÆ. — The fresh petals. | a. Bright-scarlet when fresh; dusky-red on drying. b. Narcotic, heavy, poppy-like odour, lost in drying. c. Slightly bitter taste. | <i>Syrupus Rhæados.</i> Made by treating the petals with water; macerating for 12 hours, pressing, and straining; dis- solving refined sugar by heat; adding rectified spirit and water to a certain proportion. <i>Dose.</i> —3 1 to 2. ACTION.—Feebly opiate. Chiefly used for colouring mixtures. |
| 2. ROSÆ CENTIFOLIÆ PETALA— CABBAGE- ROSE PETALS — ROSA CENTIFOLIA. — N.O. ROSACEÆ. — The fresh petals fully expanded. | a. Roseate odour, di- minished by drying. b. Taste sweetish, bit- ter, and faintly as- tringent. | <i>Aqua Rosæ.</i> Fresh petals, 1 } Distil 1. Water, 2 ACTION.—Merely used as a plea- sant vehicle. |

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|--|---|--|
| 3. ROSÆ GALLICÆ PETALÆ— RED-ROSE PETALS. — ROSA GALlica. — N.O. ROSACEÆ. — The <i>unexpanded</i> petals dried. | a. Purplish-red colour. b. Roseate odour; developed by drying. c. Taste bitterish, feebly acid, and astringent. | <i>Confectio Rosæ Gallicæ.</i> Fresh petals, 1 } Beat the petals Refined sugar, 3 } into a pulp, and mix. <i>Dose.</i> —gr. 30 to 60 or more. <i>Infusum Rosæ Acidum.</i> Dried petals, 1 } Infuse $\frac{1}{2}$ an Diluted sulphuric } hour, and acid, $\frac{1}{2}$ } strain. Boiling water, 40 } <i>Syrupus Rosæ.</i> Made by infusing rose petals in boiling water for 2 hours; squeezing through calico; heating to the boiling point; filtering; and dissolving refined sugar with heat. <i>Dose.</i> — $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 2. ACTION. —Used mainly as a colouring agent; and the confection for making pills. Mildly astringent. |

D. STYLE AND STIGMA.

| | | |
|--|---|--|
| 1. CROCUS— SAFFRON. — CROCUS SATIVA. — N.O. IRIDACEÆ. — The dried stigma with part of the style. | a. Thread-like style, with 3 long stigmas at the end; broadest at the summit. b. Either loosely dried (<i>hay-saffron</i>); or dried under pressure (<i>cake-saffron</i>). c. Yellow; stigmas are orange-brown. Rubbed on the wet finger saffron leaves an intense orange-yellow colour. d. Powerful aromatic odour. | <i>Tinctura Croci.</i> Saffron, 1 } Macerate 48 Proof spirit, 20 } hours, and per- colate. <i>Dose.</i> — $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 2. ACTION. —Slightly stimulant. Chiefly used as a colouring and flavouring agent. |
|--|---|--|

E. STROBILUS OR CATKIN.

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|--|--|---|
| 1. LUPULUS— HOP. — HUMULUS LUPULUS. — N.O. CANNABINACEÆ. — The dried strobiles of the female plant. | a. Thin, semi-transparent, membranous, and veined scales. b. Greenish-yellow colour, with minute yellow grains at the base, and covering the surface of the scales = <i>Lupuline</i> , forming a golden-yellow powder, like pollen. c. Aromatic odour. d. Bitter taste. | <i>Extractum Lupuli.</i> Made by first acting upon hop by rectified spirit, and producing a soft alcoholic extract; then making a watery extract of the residual hop; mixing the two; and evaporating under 140°. <i>Dose.</i> —gr. 5 to 10. <i>Infusum Lupuli.</i> Hop, 1 Boiling water, 20 } Infuse 2 hours, and strain. <i>Dose.</i> — $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 2. <i>Tinctura Lupuli.</i> Hop, 1 Macerate 48 Proof spirit, 8 } hours, and percolate. ACTION.—Stomachic tonic. Hypnotic. |

GROUP IX.—FRUITS.

The *official fruits* are very numerous, and they can be conveniently divided into several groups. In many cases no description is required, and a mere enumeration will be sufficient; but some fruits need to be briefly described.

A. ORDINARY FRUITS.

| | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1. FICUS— FIG. — FICUS CARICA. — N.O. MORACEÆ. | The dried fruit = <i>Sycnus</i> . | Contained in <i>Confectio Sennæ</i> . ACTION.—Laxative. Demulcent. Nutritious. |
|--|--------------------------------------|--|

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|---|---|---|
| PRUNUM— PRUNE. — PRUNUS DOMESTICA. — N.O. ROSACEÆ. | The dried fruit = <i>Drupe.</i> | Contained in <i>Confectio Senna.</i> ACTION.—Laxative. Nutritious. |
| 3. UVÆ— RAISINS. — VITIS VINIFERA. — N.O. VITACEÆ. | Ripe Spanish grapes, dried either by ex- posure to the sun, or by artificial heat. | ACTION.—Nutritious. Demul- cent. |

B. UMBELLIFEROUS FRUITS.

This group includes the fruits belonging to the *N.O. Umbelliferae*, which are frequently called *seeds*. They are botanically named *cremocarps*, and each cremocarp consists of two symmetrical halves or *mericarps*. They may be enumerated alphabetically thus:—

1. **Anethi Fructus**—Dill fruit—**Anethum Graveolens**.

2. **Carui Fructus**—Caraway—**Carum Carui**.

3. **Conium Fructus**—Conium fruit—**Conium Maculatum**.

4. **Coriandri Fructus**—Coriander—**Coriandrum Sativum**.

5. **Fœniculi Fructus**—Fennel fruit—**Fœniculum Dulce**.

(The fruit of **Pimpinella Anisum** or **Aniseed** is one of the official sources of **Oleum Anise**, but is not separately used). (See **OILS**).

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.—The Umbelliferous fruits as a class have well-defined characters, as follows:—

1. They are all very small, the largest being only 3 lines long (*Fennel*).

2. They have a more or less elongated shape, except *Coriander*, which is globular.

3. Their colour varies from yellowish-brown to dark-brown, except *Conium*, which is dull-grey.

4. They present *Juga* or minute ridges, varying in number and arrangement; and most of them have one or more *Vittæ* or oil-ducts.

5. Each fruit has a characteristic and peculiar odour and taste, which is of an aromatic character, except in the case of *Conium*.

SPECIAL CHARACTERS.—The several Umbelliferous fruits are distinguished by their exact shape, size, and colour; their *juga* and *vittæ*; and their odour and taste. The student may obtain full information on these points from the more complete works on MATERIA MEDICA. He ought, however, to be so familiar with their *general appearance* and *odour*, as to be able to recognise them at once.

PHARMACY.—The important facts relating to this part of the subject may be thus summarised:—

1. Dill, aniseed, caraway, and coriander, each yield an *official Volatile Oil*. (See OILS).

2. There are three official *Aquæ* made from the fruits, namely:—

| | | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------|---------------------------------|--------------|
| a. <i>Aqua Anethi</i> | } Each prepared from | { Bruised fruit, 1 Water, 20 | } Distil 10. |
| b. <i>Aqua Carui</i> | | | |
| c. <i>Aqua Fœniculi</i> | | | |

Dose— $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 2.

3. Caraway and coriander are ingredients in several *official preparations*.

4. Conium fruit has a special preparation, namely:—

Tinctura Conii.

Conium fruit, 1 } Macerate 48 hours, and
Proof spirit, 8 } percolate.

Dose— $3\frac{1}{2}$ to 1.

ACTION.—1. The aromatic group are all stimulant and carminative; and are used also as flavouring agents. 2. Conium fruit has special actions (*see* CONIUM LEAVES).

C. SPECIAL FRUITS.

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|--|---|--|
| 1. BELÆ FRUCTUS— BAEL FRUIT. — ÆGLE MARMELOS — N.O. AURANTIACEÆ. — The dried half- ripe fruit. | a. Roundish; about the size of a large orange. b. Usually in dried slices or fragments, with adhering pulp and seeds. c. The rind is hard and woody, $1\frac{1}{2}$ line thick. d. Externally, smooth; pale-brown or greyish. e. Internally, the rind and pulp are brownish-orange or cherry-red. | <i>Extractum Bela Liquidum.</i> Prepared by first making a watery extract; pressing, filtering, and evaporating; and adding rectified spirit. <i>Dose.</i> — 3 to 2 . ACTION. —Astringent; chiefly used in diarrhœa and dysentery. |
| 2. CAPSICI FRUCTUS— CAPSICUM FRUIT. — CAPSICUM FASTIGIATUM. — N.O. SOLANACEÆ. — The dried ripe fruit. (The powder forms <i>Cayenne-pepper</i>). | a. Small membranous pods, divided into 2 or 3 cells, containing some spongy pulp, and numerous, white, flat, reniform seeds. b. Conical or cylindrical; straight, and pointed. c. Orange-red or bright scarlet; smooth or corrugated; shining. d. No odour; taste, hot and acrid. | <i>Tinctura Capsici.</i> Capsicum, $\frac{3}{4}$ } Macerate 48 Rectified spirit, 20 } hours, and percolate. <i>Dose.</i> —m to 20. Of Powder, gr. $\frac{1}{2}$ to 1. ACTION. —Rubefacient. Stimulant. Used as a condiment. |

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|--|--|---|
| 3. CUBEBA— CUBEBS. CUBEBA OFFICINALIS. — N.O. PIPERACEÆ. — The unripe fruit (berries), dried. | a. Rather larger than a small pea. b. Globular; supported on a stalk. c. Blackish and wrinkled externally. d. Characteristic odour. e. Warm and camphoraceous taste. | <i>Oleum Cubebæ.</i> (See OILS). <i>Tinctura Cubebæ.</i> Cubebs, 1 { Macerate 48 Rectified spirit, 8 { hours, and Dose.—3 i to 2. percolate. ACTION.—Gastric stimulant. Has a special action upon the genito-urinary mucous membrane, particularly the urethral portion. Expectorant. May cause a cutaneous eruption. Dose, of Cubebs, 3 i to 2. |
| 4. ECBALII FRUCTUS— SQUIRTING CUCUMBER. — ECBALIUM OFFICINARUM. — N.O. CUCURBITACEÆ. — The fruit—a pepo —very nearly ripe. | a. Elliptical; about 1½ inch long. b. Green; and covered with soft prickles. c. Contains the seeds, surrounded by a juicy tissue. | The source of <i>Elaterium</i> . (See ELATERIUM). ACTION.—Hydragogue purgative. |
| 5. PAPAVERIS CAPSULÆ— POPPY CAPSULES. — PAPAVER SOMNIFERUM. — N.O. PAPAVERACEÆ. — The nearly ripe capsules dried. (Opium is ob- tained from the unripe capsules). | a. Globular, crowned by a sessile, stellate stigma. b. 2 to 3 inches in diameter. c. Externally, smooth; pale brownish-yellow. d. Internally, presents parietal placenta; with numerous small, pale, brownish, reniform seeds. e. Light in texture, and easily broken. | <i>Decoctum Papaveris.</i> Poppy Capsules, 1 { Boil 10 min- Boiling Water, 15 { utes, and strain. <i>Extractum Papaveris.</i> Prepared by making a watery extract with boiling water, by infusion, percolation, and evaporation; adding rectified spirit when cold; and in 24 hours filtering and evaporating to a pilular consistence. Dose.—gr. 2 to 5. <i>Syrupus Papaveris.</i> Prepared by infusing in boiling water and percolating; evaporating; when cold adding rectified spirit; filtering in 12 hours; distilling off the spirit, evaporating, and adding refined sugar. Dose.—3 i. ACTION.—Like opium, but much weaker and uncertain. |

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|---|--|---|
| 6. PIMENTA— PIMENTO. — EUGENIA PIMENTA. — N.O. MYRTACEÆ. — The dried unripe berries. | a. About the size of a small pea. b. Globular; crowned with the teeth of the calyx. c. Brown and rough externally. d. Yellowish internally; and contains two dark - brown seeds. e. Odour, peculiar and aromatic. f. Taste, hot and aromatic. | <i>Aqua Pimentæ.</i> Pimento, 7 } Distil one-half. Water, 160 } <i>Dose.</i> — $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 2. <i>Oleum Pimentæ.</i> (See OILS). ACTION.—Aromatic. Gastric stimulant. Carminative. |
| 7. PIPER NIGRUM— BLACK PEPPER. — PIPER NIGRUM. — N.O. PIPERACEÆ. — The dried unripe berries. (White pepper is the ripened berry de- corticated). | a. About the size of a pea. b. Roundish; no stalk. c. Externally, brownish-black and wrinkled. d. Contains a greyish-yellow, globular seed. e. Characteristic aromatic odour. f. Taste, pungent and bitterish. | <i>Confectio Piperis.</i> Black pepper, 2 } Caraway, 3 } Triturate, Clarified honey, 15 } and mix <i>Dose.</i> —gr. 60 to 120. ACTION.—Gastric stimulant. Carminative. Used as a condiment. Has a special action on the genito-urinary mucous membrane, similar to cubebs. |
| 8. ROSÆ CANINÆ FRUCTUS— DOG-ROSE FRUIT. HIPS. — ROSA CANINA. — N.O. ROSACEÆ. — The fresh fruit, deprived of the hairy seeds (Achenes). | a. Ovate; an inch or more long. b. Scarlet or crimson; smooth and shining. c. Succulent; with a sweetish, acidulous pulp. | <i>Confectio Rosæ Caninæ.</i> Hips, deprived } of seeds, 1 } Beat into a Refined sugar 2 } pulp, and mix. <i>Dose.</i> — $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 or more. ACTION.—Refrigerant. Astrin- gent. |

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|--|--|---|
| 6. SABADILLA —CEVADILLA. — ASSAGREA OFFICINALIS. — N.O. MELANTHACEÆ. — The dried fruit. | a. About $\frac{1}{2}$ an inch long. b. Consists of 3 follicles; papyraceous and light-brown. c. One to three seeds in each follicle:— (i) About $\frac{1}{2}$ inch long. (ii) Slightly winged. (iii) Blackish-brown and shining. (iv) Intensely acrid bitter taste. | The source of <i>Veratria</i> . (See ALKALOIDS). ACTION.—Acrid, drastic cathartic. Emetic. Vascular depressant. Sternutatory. Local anodyne. |

D. PULP OF FRUITS.

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| 1. CASSIÆ PULPA— CASSIA PULP. — CASSIA FISTULA or PURGING CASSIA. — N.O. LEGUMINOSÆ. — The pulp of the pods, imported, or recently ex- tracted. | a. The fruit is a long, cylindrical, pod or <i>lomentum</i> , with 3 bands running along it, and divided into cells, each containing the pulp and a seed. b. The pulp is blackish-brown; viscid; sweet; with a rather sickly odour. | Contained in <i>Confectio Senna</i> . Dose.—3 i to 2. ACTION.—Laxative. |
| 2. TAMARINDUS —TAMARIND. — TAMARINDUS INDICA. — N.O. LEGUMINOSÆ. — The pulp pre- pared in sugar. | a. Brown in colour. b. Sweetish and acidulous taste. c. Contains strong fibres and seeds. | Contained in <i>Confectio Senna</i> . ACTION.—Refrigerant. Slightly laxative. |

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|--|---|---|
| 3. COLOCYN- THIDIS PULPA— COLOCYNTH PULP. — CITRULLUS COLOCYNTHIS. — N.O. CUCURBITACEÆ. — The dried and decorticated fruit, freed from the seeds. — Peeled = Turkey. Unpeeled = Mo- gadore. | a. The complete fruit is a globular pepo; about the size of an orange; with a hard yellow rind; and enclosing the pulp and seeds. b. Pulp (Turkey):— (i) In balls, more or less round, about 3 inches in diameter, bearing the marks made in cutting away the rind. (ii) Light and spongy texture. (iii) White or yellowish-white. (iv) Intensely bitter taste; inodorous. c. Seeds, 66 to 72 per cent.; oval; smooth; white or yellowish-white to brown in colour. | <i>Extractum Colocynthis Compositum.</i> a. Make a tincture by macerating colocynth in proof spirit for 4 days. Press and distil off the spirit. Extract of socotrine aloes. b. Add Resin of scammony. Hard soap. c. Evaporate by a water-bath to a pilular consistence, adding powdered cardamoms towards the end of the process. Dose.—gr. 2 to 8. <hr/> <i>Pilula Colocynthis Composita.</i> Colocynth, 1 Barbadoes aloes, 2 Scammony, 2 Sulphate of potash, $\frac{1}{2}$ Oil of cloves, $\frac{1}{4}$ Water, q.s. Dose.—gr. 5 to 10 <hr/> <i>Pilula Colocynthis et Hyoscyami.</i> Prepared as above, with Extract of Hyoscyamus, 3, added. Dose.—gr. 5 to 10. <hr/> ACTION.—Drastic purgative. |

E. RIND OF FRUITS.

The drugs which come under this head are the rinds of the Orange and Lemon fruit. This fruit is botanically named a *Hesperidium*, and its characters are so well-known that no description is necessary. The rind contains a large number of oil-vesicles; and is aromatic and bitter.

1. Aurantii Cortex — Bitter Orange-peel.
From **Citrus Bigaradia**. *N.O. Aurantiaceæ*.

a. The fresh outer part of the rind of the ripe fruit of bitter orange. *b.* The same dried.

PHARMACY. 1. *Officinal preparations* :—

Infusum Aurantii.

Dried peel, 1 } Infuse 15 minutes, and
Boiling water, 20 } strain. Dose— $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 2.

Infusum Aurantii Compositum.

Dried peel, $\frac{3}{4}$ }
Fresh lemon-peel, gr. 120 } Infuse 15 minutes,
Cloves, gr. 60 } and strain.
Boiling water, $\frac{3}{4}$ 20 } Dose— $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 2.

Syrupus Aurantii.

Tincture of orange, 1 }
Syrup, 7 } Mix. Dose— $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 2.

Tinctura Aurantii.

Dried peel, 1 } Macerate 7 days, strain, and
Proof spirit, 10 } make up to 10.
Dose— $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 2.

Tinctura Aurantii Recentis.

Fresh peel, $\frac{3}{4}$ 6 } Digest 7 days; and
Rectified spirit, $\frac{3}{4}$ 10 } strain. Dose— $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 2.

Vinum Aurantii.—Made by fermenting a saccharine solution containing fresh peel of bitter orange. It contains about 12 per cent. of alcohol; and is used in making *Vinum Ferri Citratis* and *Vinum Quiniæ*.

2. Bitter orange peel is an ingredient in *Infusum Gentianæ Compositum*, *Mistura Gentianæ*, and *Tinctura Gentianæ Composita*; in *Spiritus Armo-racæ Compositus*; and in *Tinctura Cinchonæ Composita*.

ACTION.—Aromatic. Carminative. Mild tonic.

2. Limonis Cortex — Lemon-peel. From **Citrus Limonum**. *N.O. Aurantiaceæ*.

The fresh outer part of the rind of the lemon.

PHARMACY.—1. *Officinal preparations* :—

Oleum Limonis. (See OILS).

Syrupus Limonis.—Made by boiling lemon-juice, adding lemon-peel, and allowing the liquid to cool; filtering, and dissolving refined sugar with a gentle heat.

Dose—3 i to 2.

Tinctura Limonis.

Fresh lemon-peel, 1 } Macerate 7 days; and
Proof spirit, 8 } strain. *Dose*—3 $\frac{1}{2}$ to 2.

2. Lemon peel is contained in *Infusum Aurantii Compositum*, and *Infusum Gentianæ Compositum*.

ACTION.—Aromatic. Carminative.

F. JUICES OF FRUITS.

It will be sufficient to enumerate the juices of fruits used medicinally, as follows:—

1. *Limonis Succus*—Lemon juice.

The *freshly expressed juice* of the ripe fruit of the lemon. Yellowish and slightly turbid; has a peculiar odour, and a sharp sour taste.

PHARMACY.—Lemon-juice is used in making *Syrupus Limonis*. It is the source of citric acid, and contains about gr. 16-25 in $\frac{3}{4}$.

ACTION.—Refrigerant. Antiscorbutic. Chiefly used in making effervescent draughts.

2. *Mori Succus*—Mulberry juice.

The *juice of the ripe fruit* of *Morus Nigra*. *N.O. Moraceæ*. Deep purple or violet colour; has a faint odour, and an acidulous sweet taste.

Syrupus Mori.—Made by boiling mulberry juice; filtering when cool; dissolving refined sugar by a gentle heat; and adding rectified spirit.

Dose—3 i to 2.

ACTION.—Refrigerant. Laxative.

3. *Rhamni Succus*—Buckthorn juice.

The *recently-expressed juice* of the ripe berries of *Rhamnus Catharticus*. *N.O. Rhamnaceæ*. Green; has a nauseous odour.

Syrupus Rhamni.—Made by evaporating buckthorn juice; adding ginger and pimento; digesting for four hours at a gentle heat, and straining when cold; adding rectified spirit; decanting in 2 days; and dissolving refined sugar with a gentle heat. *Dose*—3 i.

ACTION.—Powerful cathartic.

G. SPECIAL DRUGS FROM FRUITS.

1. **Kamala—Wurrus**. From **Rottlera Tincoria**. *N.O. Euphorbiaceæ*. *Minute glands adhering to the capsules*.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES.—

- a.* A fine, granular, mobile powder.
- b.* Bright-red or orange-red colour; not uniform throughout.
- c.* Is with difficulty mixed with water; the greater part is dissolved when boiled in alcohol, forming a red solution; ether also dissolves most of it, the residue consisting principally of tufted hairs.
- d.* Microscopically kamala shows rounded semi-transparent granules, and stellate hairs.
- e.* It should be free from sand and earthy impurities.

Dose—gr. 30 to 120, in treacle, syrup, mucilage, or gruel.

ACTION.—Anthelmintic, for tape-worm. **Purgative**.

The other drugs belonging to this sub-division will only be mentioned at present, being more conveniently discussed later on. They include:—

- 2. **Oleum Anisi**.
- 3. **Oleum Juniperi**.
- 4. **Elaterium**—The deposit from the juice of **Ecbalium officinarum**.
- 5. **Ergot**.—The diseased grain of **Secale Cereale** or **Common Rye**.

} *See OILS.*

GROUP X.—SEEDS.

The seeds recognised in the B.P. may also be conveniently subdivided into groups.

A. LARGE SEEDS.

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|---|--|--|
| 1. AMYGDALA —ALMOND. — AMYGDALA DULCIS— SWEET ALMOND. — AMYGDALA AMARA— BITTER ALMOND. — N.O. ROSACEÆ. — The seeds. | <p>a. Sweet almond is about an inch long, lanceolate; bitter almond is shorter and broader.</p> <p>b. Cinnamon - brown coat, easily removed by steeping in warm water = "blanched almonds."</p> <p>c. Kernel is white, dry, and brittle.</p> <p>d. No odour when dry; when rubbed with water the bitter almond emits a characteristic odour.</p> <p>e. Taste:— Sweet almond = bland, sweetish, nutty. Bitter almond = bitter and peculiar.</p> | <p><i>Mistura Amygdalæ.</i> Compound powder } Triturate of almonds, 1 } and strain. Water, 8 <i>Dose.</i>—$\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 2.</p> <hr/> <p><i>Pulvis Amygdalæ Compositus.</i> Blanched sweet } Rub the al- almonds, 8 } monds to a Refined sugar, 4 } paste; add su- Gum acacia, 1 } gar and gum; pass through a coarse sieve. <i>Dose.</i>—gr. 60 to 120.</p> <hr/> <p><i>Oleum Amygdalæ.</i> A fixed oil, obtained by expres- sion from both varieties. (See OILS).</p> <hr/> <p>(<i>Oil of Bitter Almonds</i> is not officinal, but is the volatile oil obtained by distilling with water the cake which remains after the fixed oil has been expressed; it results from the action of emulsin upon amygdalin. It contains hydrocyanic acid.)</p> <hr/> <p>ACTION.—Demulcent. Nutritive. Bitter almond is poisonous, but is only officinally recognized as a source of the fixed oil.</p> |

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|--|---|--|
| 2. ARECA— ARECA NUT or BETEL NUT. — ARECA CATECHU. — N.O. PALMACEÆ. — The seeds. | a. About the size and shape of a horse-chestnut. b. Rusty-grey colour; tessellated surface; with a well-marked hilum. c. Very hard consistence. d. Section presents a ruminated appearance, like nutmeg. e. No odour; astringent taste. | No official preparation. Dose.— $\frac{3}{4}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$. ACTION.—Anthelmintic. Astringent. |
| 3. MYRISTICA —NUTMEG. — MYRISTICA OFFICINALIS. — N.O. MYRISTICACEÆ. — The kernel of the seed. | a. Oval or nearly round. b. About an inch long. c. Externally, marked with reticulated furrows. d. Section is greyish-red, with dark-brownish veins—"ruminated." e. Strong and characteristic odour. f. Bitter, aromatic taste. | <i>Oleum Myristicæ</i> .—The volatile oil. (See OILS). <i>Oleum Myristicæ Expressum</i> .—A concrete oil. (See OILS). <i>Spiritus Myristicæ</i> . Volatile oil of nutmeg, 1 } Dis- Rectified spirit, 49 } solve. Dose.—M 30 to 60. ACTION.—Aromatic. Carminative. Stimulant. |
| 4. NUX VOMICA. — STRYCHNOS NUX VOMICA. — N.O. LOGANIACEÆ. — The seeds. | a. Almost circular; about an inch in diameter. b. Flat discs, but umbilicated and slightly convex on one surface. c. Externally, ash-grey colour; thickly covered with short satiny hairs. d. Internally, translucent. e. Tough and horny, and very difficult to powder; must be previously steamed well and dried rapidly. f. No odour; intensely bitter taste. g. Powder is greyish-yellow. | <i>Extractum Nucis Vomice</i> . A spirituous extract, made by first steaming, drying rapidly, and powdering nux vomica; boiling with rectified spirit; straining; distilling off the spirit; and evaporating. Dose.—gr. $\frac{1}{4}$ to 1. <i>Tinctura Nucis Vomice</i> . Powdered nux vo- } Macerate 48 mica, 1 } hours, and Rectified spirit, 10 } percolate. Dose.—M 10 to 30. Nux Vomica is the source of STRYCHNIA. (See ALKALOIDS). ACTION.—Tonic. Laxative. Nervine stimulant or excitant, especially spinal. Tetanizer. (See STRYCHNIA). |

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|--|---|--|
| 5. PHYSO- STIGMATIS FABA— CALABAR BEAN. — PHYSOSTIGMA VENENOSUM. — N.O. LEGUMINOSÆ. — The seeds. | <p>a. Irregularly kidney-shaped, with 2 flat surfaces, and a longitudinal furrow along the convex margin, ending in an aperture near one end.</p> <p>b. About the size of a very large horse-bean.</p> <p>c. Shining integument, brownish-red, pale-chocolate, or ash-grey; very firm and hard, but brittle.</p> <p>d. Kernel = 2 cotyledons, white, hard, but pulverizable.</p> <p>e. Taste, like that of ordinary leguminous seeds.</p> | <p><i>Extractum Physostigmatis.</i> A <i>spirituous extract</i>, made with Rectified spirit, by maceration, percolation, distilling off most of the spirit, and evaporating. <i>Dose.</i>—gr. $\frac{1}{16}$ to $\frac{1}{4}$.</p> <p><i>ACTION.</i>—Myositic (contracts the pupil of the eye, &c.). Spinal sedative or depressant and paralyser. Cardiac sedative and depressant.</p> |

B. SMALL SEEDS.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. CARDAMO- MUM— CARDAMOMS. — ELETTARIA CARDAMOMUM. — N.O. ZINGIBERACÆ. — The seeds (seen generally contained in thin pale-brown coriaceous pericarps). | <p>a. Obtusely angular in shape.</p> <p>b. Externally, reddish-brown; corrugated.</p> <p>c. Internally, white.</p> <p>d. Odour, aromatic and agreeable.</p> <p>e. Taste, aromatic and warm.</p> | <p><i>Tinctura Cardamomi Composita.</i> Cardamom seeds, $\bar{3}$ 1 Caraway, $\bar{5}$ 1 Raisins, $\bar{3}$ 8 Cinnamon, $\bar{3}$ 2 Cochineal, gr. 240 Proof spirit, $\bar{3}$ 80 <i>Dose.</i>—$\bar{3}$ $\frac{1}{2}$ to 2.</p> <p>Macerate 48 hours; percolate; and make up to 80.</p> <p>Cardamoms or its Tincture are contained in several official preparations.</p> <p><i>ACTION.</i>—Carminative. Aromatic stimulant.</p> |
|---|---|---|

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|--|--|---|
| 2. COLCHICI SEMINA— COLCHICUM SEEDS. — COLCHICUM AUTUMNALE. — N.O. MELANTHACEÆ. — The seeds. | a. Small; about the size of white mustard-seeds; rather larger than black mustard. b. Spherical in shape. c. Reddish-brown colour (<i>lighter than black mustard</i>); rough externally. d. Very hard. | <i>Tinctura Colchici Seminum.</i> Colchicum seeds, 1 } Macerate 48 Proof spirit, 8 } hours; and Dose.—M 10 to 30. percolate. ACTION.—Diaphoretic. Diuretic. Alterative. Intestinal and hepatic stimulant. Cardiac depressant. Specific for gout. |
| 3. SINAPIS— MUSTARD. — SINAPIS ALBA et NIGRA— WHITE and BLACK MUSTARD — N.O. CRUCIFERÆ. — Mustard consists of the mixed seeds, reduced to powder. | a. Small and round; white the larger. b. Externally:— Black = brownish-black, wrinkled. White = yellowish-brown. c. Internally, both are yellowish-white. d. Powder=MUSTARD: (i) Greenish-yellow. (ii) No odour when dry; gives, when moist, a peculiar, penetrating, pungent odour; is very irritating to the nostrils and eyes. (iii) Acrid, pungent, bitterish, and oily taste. e. Test. — A decoction of mustard cooled is not made blue by tincture of iodine = absence of starch. | <i>Cataplasma Sinapis.</i> Mustard, 2½ } Mix the lin- Linseed-meal, 2½ } seed-meal with Boiling water, 10 } the water, and then add the mustard. <i>Charta Sinapis.</i> a. Mix { Black mustard-seeds, in powder, 3 i Solution of gutta-percha, 3 2. b. Pour into a shallow, flat-bottomed vessel, and pass strips of cartridge paper over its surface, so that one surface receives a thin coating. c. Dry by exposure to air. (To be immersed in tepid water before application.) <i>Linimentum Sinapis Compositum.</i> Oil of mustard, 3 i Ethereal extract of } mezezeon, gr. 40 } Dis- Camphor, gr. 120 } solve. Castor oil, 3 5 Rectified spirit, 3 32 <i>Oleum Sinapis.</i> Volatile oil distilled with water from black mustard. (See OILS). ACTION. — Rubefacient. Vesicant. Powerful stimulant. Condiment. Emetic in doses of a teaspoonful to a table-spoonful. |

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|--|---|---|
| 4. STRAMONIUM SEMINA— STRAMONIUM SEEDS. — DATURA STRAMONIUM — N.O. ATROFACÆ. — The seeds. | a. Reniform and flattened. b. Externally, brownish-black and rough. c. Peculiar heavy odour when bruised. d. Feebly bitter, mawkish taste. | <i>Extractum Stramonii.</i> Made by first percolating coarsely-powdered stramonium seeds with washed ether, to remove the oil; and then with proof spirit, until the seeds are exhausted, the spirit being distilled off, and the residue evaporated. <i>Dose.</i> —gr. $\frac{1}{2}$, gradually increased. <i>Tinctura Stramonii.</i> Stramonium seeds, 1 } Macerate 48 Proof spirit, 8 } hours, and percolate. <i>Dose.</i> —m 10 to 20. <i>Incompatibles.</i> — Mineral acids; caustic alkalies; metallic salts. <i>ACTION.</i> — Antispasmodic. Pulmonary sedative. Anodyne. Mydriatic. |
| 5. HORDEUM DECORTICATUM— PEARL BARLEY. — HORDEUM DISTICHON. — N.O. GRAMINACÆ. — The husked seeds. | a. Round, with a trace of a longitudinal fissure. b. White colour and polished surface. | <i>Decoctum Hordei.</i> Washed barley, 1 } Boil 20 minutes Water, 15 } in a covered vessel, and strain. <i>Dose.</i> — <i>Ad libitum.</i> <i>ACTION.</i> —Demulcent. Nutrient |

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|--|--|--|
| 6. LINUM. — LINUM USITATISSIMUM. — N.O. LINACEÆ. | a. The seeds are small, oval, oblong, and flattened; pointed at one end, with acute edges. b. Externally, smooth, shining, dark-brown testa. | <i>Cataplasma Lini.</i> a. Mix { Linseed meal, 4 Boiling water, 10. b. Add olive oil, $\frac{1}{2}$, stirring. |
| a. LINI SEMINA —LINSEED. The seeds. | c. Internally, yellowish-white. | <i>Infusum Lini.</i> Linseed, gr. 160 Liquorice root, gr. 60 } Infuse 4 Boiling water, $\frac{1}{2}$ 20 } hours, and strain. |
| b. LINI FARINA— LINSEED-MEAL. The seeds, ground and deprived of their oil by expression, and the cakes reduced to powder. | d. No odour; oily and mucilaginous taste. e. When the oil is expressed, a firm, coherent mass remains = oil-cake, which when powdered forms linseed-meal. | <i>Oleum Lini.</i> —The expressed oil. (See OILS). <i>Incompatibles.</i> —The infusion of linseed is incompatible with preparations of lead, iron, and most metallic salts. |
| | | ACTION. — Demulcent. Emollient. |

C. GROUND SEEDS.

These may be simply enumerated, as follows:—

1. **Lini Farina.** (See LINUM).
2. **Sinapis—Mustard.** (See SINAPIS).
3. **Farina Triticæ—Wheaten flour.** **Triticum Vulgare.** N.O. Graminaceæ. The grain of wheat, ground and sifted. Used for making *Cataplasma Fermenti*.

D. SPECIAL DRUGS FROM SEEDS.

1. **Gossypium—Cotton-wool.** N.O. Malvaceæ. Hairs of the seeds of various species of GOSSYPIMUM, carded. Used for making Pyroxylin.

2. *Oils derived from seeds.*

- | | |
|---|-------------|
| a. Oleum Crotonis—Croton Oil. From Croton Tiglium. | } See OILS. |
| b. Oleum Ricini—Castor Oil. From Ricinus Communis. | |
| c. Oleum Theobromæ—Oil of Theobroma. A concrete oil from Theobroma Cacao. | |

GROUP XI.—SPECIAL PARTS OF PLANTS.

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|---|--|---|
| 1. COLCHICI CORMUS— COLCHICUM CORM. — COLCHICUM AUTUMNALE. — N.O. MELANTHACEÆ. — The fresh corm stripped of its coats, sliced transversely, and dried under 150°. | (i) <i>Complete Corm.</i> a. About the size of a chestnut. b. Convex and flattened or slightly concave; with an undeveloped bud at the base. c. Has an external brown and membranous, and an inner yellow coat. d. Internally, white, solid, and fleshy. e. When cut yields a milky, bitter, and acrid juice. (ii) <i>Slices.</i> a. Somewhat oval, and flattened or moderately indented on one side. b. About a line thick; flat. c. Firm in texture; presents a whitish and starchy appearance. d. Bitter and acrid taste. | <i>Extractum Colchici.</i> Made from the expressed juice of fresh <i>colchicum</i> corms, heated to 212°, strained, and evaporated. <i>Dose.</i> —gr. $\frac{1}{2}$ to 2. <i>Extractum Colchici Aceticum.</i> Made by stirring together { Crushed fresh corms, 112 Acetic acid, 6 } ; pressing; after subsidence heating the clear liquor to 212°; straining through flannel; and evaporating at 160°. <i>Dose.</i> —gr. $\frac{1}{2}$ to 2. <i>Vinum Colchici.</i> Dried sliced corms, 4 { Macerate 7 Sherry wine, 20 } days, strain, and make up to 20. <i>Dose.</i> —m 10 to 30. <i>Incompatibles.</i> —Tincture of iodine; guaiacum; all astringent preparations. <i>ACTION.</i> —Similar to <i>Colchicum</i> seeds. (See SEEDS). |
| 2. JALAPA— JALAP. — EXOGONIUM PURGA. — N.O. CONVOLVULACEÆ. — The dried tubercles or tubers. | a. Ovoid, and more or less pointed at the ends; sometimes irregular. b. From a nut to an orange in size; $\frac{1}{2}$ to 3 or 4 inches in diameter. c. The larger tubers are often incised, for the purpose of drying them. | <i>Extractum Jalapæ.</i> Prepared by first making a tincture with rectified spirit, by macerating jalap for 7 days, and distilling off the spirit, leaving a soft extract; making a watery extract with the residual jalap; mixing the two; and evaporating under 140°. <i>Dose.</i> —gr. 5 to 15. |

| Name. Plant, Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|--|---|---|
| JALAP. (continued). | d. Externally, a thick, brown, wrinkled cuticle. | <i>Pulvis Jalapæ Compositus.</i> Jalap, 5 Cream of tartar, 9 } Powder, and Ginger, 1 } mix. Dose.—gr. 20 to 60. |
| | e. Section is yellowish-grey, with dark-brown concentric circles. | |
| | f. Dense and hard texture; sometimes worm-eaten. | <i>Resina Jalapæ.</i> (See RESINS). |
| | g. Sweetish, but nauseous odour and taste. | <i>Tinctura Jalapæ.</i> Jalap, 1 } Macerate 48 hours, Proof spirit, 8 } and percolate. Dose.— $3\frac{1}{2}$ to 2. |
| | | ACTION.—Purgative Vermifuge. |
| 3. SCILLA— SQUILL. — URGINEA SCILLA. — N.O. LILIACEÆ. The bulb, sliced and dried. | (1) <i>Entire Bulb.</i> a. From the size of the fist upwards; $\frac{1}{2}$ -lb to 10 lbs in weight. b. Pear-shaped. c. Consists of overlapping scales. The outer are thin, membranous, brownish-red or white; the inner—white, thick, fleshy, and juicy. (The middle layers are used). | <i>Acetum Scillæ.</i> Dried Squill, $2\frac{1}{2}$ } Macerate Diluted acetic acid, 20 } 7 days, and press. Add Proof spirit, $1\frac{1}{2}$, and filter. Dose.—m 15 to 40. |
| | (2) <i>Dried Slices.</i> a. In thin pieces or strips. b. White or yellowish-white. c. Slightly translucent and horny. d. Brittle and easily powdered, if very dry, but readily becomes moist and flexible if exposed to air. e. No odour. Taste disagreeable, bitter, and somewhat acid. | <i>Oxymel Scillæ.</i> Vinegar of squill, 5 } Mix and Clarified honey, 8 } evaporate. Dose.— $3\frac{1}{2}$ to 1. <i>Pilula Scillæ Composita.</i> Squill, $1\frac{1}{2}$ } Powder, mix, Ginger, 1 } and add the Ammoniacum, 1 } treacle. Hard Soap, 1 } Treacle, 2 } Dose.—gr. 5 to 10. <i>Syrupus Scillæ.</i> Vinegar of squill, 20 } Dissolve Refined sugar, 40 } with heat. Dose.— $3\frac{1}{2}$ to 1. <i>Tinctura Scillæ.</i> Squill 1, } Macerate 48 hours, Proof spirit, 8 } and percolate. Dose.—m 15 to 30. |
| | | ACTION.—Stimulant expectorant. Diuretic. Emetic in large doses. Cardiac tonic. |

GROUP XII.—DISEASED PLANTS.

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|--|--|---|
| 1. ERGOTA— ERGOT. — SECALE CORNUTUM— SPURRED RYE. — N.O. GRAMINACEÆ. | a. Elongated and curved; obtuse at the ends; sub-triangular; with a longitudinal furrow on the concave side. b. $\frac{3}{4}$ to $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch in length. c. Externally, violet-brown. d. Internally, pinkish. e. Solid; easily broken, with a short fracture. f. Faint, peculiar odour, brought out strongly if the powder is triturated with solution of potash. | <i>Extractum Ergotæ Liquidum.</i> Made by first slowly percolating ergot with washed ether, to remove the oil; preparing a watery extract, by digesting at 160° for 12 hours, pressing, and evaporating; and finally adding rectified spirit when cold, filtering in an hour, and making up to a certain quantity. <i>Dose.</i> — \mathfrak{m} 10 to 60. <i>Infusum Ergotæ.</i> Ergot, \mathfrak{x} } Infuse $\frac{1}{2}$ an Boiling water, 40 } hour, and strain <i>Dose.</i> — $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 2. <i>Tinctura Ergotæ.</i> Ergot, \mathfrak{x} } Macerate 48 hours, Proofspirit, 4 } and percolate. <i>Dose.</i> — \mathfrak{m} 15 to 60. <i>Incompatibles.</i> —Astringents; metallic salts. <i>ACTION.</i> —Ecbolic. Emmenagogue. Vaso-contractor Hæmostatic. |
| 2. GALLA— GALLS. — QUERCUS INFECTORIA. — N.O. CUPULIFERÆ. | a. Globular and tuberculated in shape. b. Variable in size; usually from $\frac{1}{2}$ to 1 inch in diameter. c. Hard and heavy; easily powdered. d. <i>Blue galls</i> :— (i) Externally, bluish-green. (ii) Internally, yellowish-white. (iii) No aperture; a small central cavity. e. <i>White galls</i> (inferior). (i) Paler; greyish. (ii) Generally present a small circular aperture, through which the insect has escaped. f. No odour. Taste, very astringent, especially the <i>blue galls</i> . g. All the soluble matters in galls are taken up by 40 times their weight of boiling water, and the residue is tasteless. Partly soluble in alcohol and ether. | <i>Tinctura Gallæ.</i> Galls, \mathfrak{x} } Macerate 48 hours, Proofspirit, 8 } and percolate. <i>Dose.</i> — $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 2. <i>Unguentum Gallæ.</i> Galls, in fine powder, gr. 80 } Benzoated lard, $\frac{3}{4}$ } Mix. <i>Unguentum Gallæ cum Opio.</i> Ointment of galls, $\frac{3}{4}$ } Powdered opium, gr. 32 } Mix. <i>Gall-nuts</i> are the source of:— <i>Acidum Gallicum</i> <i>Acidum Tannicum.</i> <i>Incompatibles.</i> —Mineral acids; alkaline carbonates; lime-water; salts of iron, lead, copper, and silver; tartar emetic; ipecacuanha; opium; infusions of cinchona, calumba, and cusparia. <i>ACTION.</i> —Powerful astringent. |

Excrescences on the tender branches and young shoots of the *Quercus Infectoria*, produced by the female insect, *Diplolepis Gallæ Tinctoriæ*. This insect pierces and deposits her ova, and the irritation causes a flow of the juice of the plant to the part, producing an enlargement. The insect develops within this, and finally eats its way out.

GROUP XIII.—VEGETABLE PRODUCTS.

I would include in this group drugs which are derived or prepared from plants in different ways, and they naturally subdivide themselves into certain classes.

A. GUMS.

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|---|--|---|
| 1. ACACIÆ GUMMI— GUM ACACIA. | a. In spheroidal tears; $\frac{1}{2}$ to 1 inch in dia- meter. | <i>Mucilago Acacia.</i> Gum acacia, 40 } Dissolve. Water, 60 Dose.—5 i to 4. |
| — Undetermined species of ACACIA. | b. Nearly colourless; opaque from nume- rous minute cracks; or in pieces with a shining surface. | Contained in <i>Pulvis Tragacantha Compositus.</i> |
| — N.O. LEGUMINOSÆ. | c. Brittle and pulver- izable. | <i>Incompatibles.</i> —Sulphuric acid; alcohol; borax; persalts of iron and subacetate of lead, which render the mucilage ge- latinous. |
| — A gummy exuda- tion from the stem. | d. Soluble in water (1 in 1); insoluble in alcohol, ether, oils. e. Bland and mucila- ginous taste. f. The powder is white. After boiling in water and cooling, it should not be ren- dered blue by an aqueous solution of iodine = absence of starch. | Action.—Demulcent. Nutri- tious. Often used to suspend powders, or to form an emul- sion; also in making lozenges. |

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|---|--|--|
| 2. TRAGACANTHA— TRAGACANTH or GUM DRAGON. — ASTRAGALUS VERUS. — N.O. LEGUMINOSÆ. — A gummy exuda- tion, from the stem. (Not a true secretion, but the result of the transforma- tion of cells of the pith and medullary rays.) | <p>a. In flakes or plates.</p> <p>b. Broad, shell-like, slightly curved.</p> <p>c. White or yellowish colour.</p> <p>d. Tough and elastic; but more pulveriza- ble when heated to 120°.</p> <p>e. Very sparingly solu- ble in cold water, but swells up into a gela- tinous mass, which is tinged violet by tinc- ture of iodine.</p> <p>f. Almost tasteless.</p> <p>g. After maceration in cold water, the fluid portion is not preci- pitated by rectified spirit = absence of acacia; the gelatin- ous mass, boiled and cooled, is not turned blue by tincture of iodine = absence of starch.</p> | <p><i>Mucilago Tragacanthæ.</i> Powdered tragacanth, } gr. 60 } Diffuse by Water, 3 10 } frequent Dose.—$\frac{3}{4}$ 1 upwards. } agitation.</p> <p><i>Pulvis Tragacanthæ Compositus.</i> Tragacanth, 1 } Acacia, 1 } Powder and Starch, 1 } mix. Refined sugar, 3 } Dose.—gr. 10 to 60.</p> <p>ACTION.—Demulcent. Chiefly used for suspending heavy in- soluble powders in liquids.</p> |

B. RESINS.

| | | |
|--|---|--|
| 1. GUAIACI RESINA— GUAIAICUM. — GUAIAICUM OFFICINALE. — N.O. ZYGOPHYLLACEÆ | <p>a. In round or oval tears; or in masses (<i>Lump Guaiacum</i>).</p> <p>b. Various sizes; the masses are large.</p> | <p><i>Mistura Guaiaci.</i> Guaiacum resin, 2 } Sugar, 2 } Triturate, Gum acacia, 1 } gradually Cinnamon water, 80 } adding the Dose.—$\frac{3}{4}$ $\frac{1}{2}$ to 2. } cinnamon water.</p> |
|--|---|--|

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|---|--|--|
| GUAIAIACUM (continued). The resin obtained from the stem:— a. By natural exudation. b. By incision. c. By heat, most commonly, by boring a longitudinal hole in the log, and putting one end in the fire; the resin melts, and exudes at the other end. Guaiacum resin is also made by boiling the chips in salt and water. It is contained chiefly in the duramen. | c. Externally, brownish-green or olive-green colour, and covered with powder, at first grey, but becoming greenish by exposure to the light. d. Brittle, with a brilliant, shining, vitreous, and resinous fracture, reddish-brown when recent; translucent at the edges. e. Balsamic odour when powdered or heated. f. Has but little taste, but causes a peculiar burning sensation in the throat. g. Insoluble in water; soluble in alcohol, ether, chloroform, and alkaline solutions. h. Tests:—(i) Solution in rectified spirit strikes a clear blue colour when applied to the inner surface of a paring of raw potato. (ii) Paper moistened with the solution becomes blue when exposed to the fumes of nitric acid. i. Adulterations.—Coniferous resins. Guaiacum is itself used to adulterate. | <i>Tinctura Guaiaci Ammoniata.</i> Guaiacum resin, 4 } Macerate 7 Aromatic spirit of } days, and ammonia, 20 } filter. Dose.— $3\frac{1}{2}$ to 2. Contained in <i>Pilula Hydrargyri Chloridi Composita</i> . Dose of <i>Guaiacum</i> .—gr. 10 to 30. Incompatibles.—Mineral acids; spirit of nitrous ether. ACTION.—Stimulant diaphoretic. Alterative. Intestinal irritant; may be used as a purgative. Guaiacum resin is often employed in cases of sore-throat. |
| 2. ELEMI. Probably from CANARIUM COMMUNE. N.O. AMYRIDACEÆ. A concrete resinous exudation. | a. In masses of various sizes. b. Yellowish-white, but more or less transparent. c. Soft and unctuous; but becomes harder and more resinous by age. d. Rather fragrant, fennel-like odour, due to volatile oil. e. Bitter and aromatic taste. f. Almost entirely soluble in rectified spirit. | <i>Unguentum Elemi.</i> Elemi, 1 } Melt, strain, Simple ointment, 4 } and stir till cold. ACTION.—External stimulant. Not used internally. |

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|---|--|--|
| <p>3. MASTICHE —MASTICH.</p> <p>PISTACIA LENTISCUS.</p> <p>N.O.</p> <p>ANACARDIACEÆ.</p> <p>A resinous exuda- tion obtained by incision from the stem.</p> | <p>a. Should be in small, roundish, or flattened tears.</p> <p>b. Light yellow, but often covered with a whitish dust.</p> <p>c. Friable, with a shining, vitreous, and transparent fracture.</p> <p>d. Soft and ductile when chewed.</p> <p>e. Fragrant, agreeable odour.</p> <p>f. Mild, aromatic taste.</p> <p>g. Soluble in ether, chloroform, and oil of turpentine; $\frac{2}{3}$ in alcohol; scarcely in fixed oils. Insoluble in water.</p> | <p>No official preparations.</p> <p>Dose,—gr. 20 to 40.</p> <p>ACTION.—Stimulant. Chiefly used in pills, to divide active ingredients. Also employed as a masticatory.</p> |
| <p>4. JALAPÆ RESINA— RESIN OF JALAP.</p> <p>EXOGENIA PURGA.</p> <p>N.O.</p> <p>CONVOLVULACEÆ</p> <p>Prepared by digesting and percolating <i>jalap</i> with <i>rectified spirit</i>; adding water to the tincture; distilling off the spirit; cooling the residue, pouring off the supernatant liquid, washing the resin with hot water, and drying it on a porcelain plate by the heat of a stove or water-bath.</p> | <p>a. In opaque fragments.</p> <p>b. Dark-brown; translucent at the edges.</p> <p>c. Friable, with a resinous fracture.</p> <p>d. Easily reduced to a pale-brown powder.</p> <p>e. Sweetish odour; acrid to the throat.</p> <p>f. Insoluble in water and oil of turpentine; soluble in rectified spirit; partially in ether.</p> | <p>Jalap resin is contained in <i>Pilula Scammonii Composita</i>.</p> <p>Dose,—gr. 1 to 5.</p> <p>ACTION.—Strongly purgative.</p> |

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|--|---|---|
| 5. PODOPHYLLI RESINA— PODOPHYL- LIN. | a. An amorphous powder. | No official preparations. Dose.—gr. $\frac{1}{2}$ to $\frac{1}{4}$. |
| — | b. Of pale greenish-brown colour. | |
| PODOPHYLLUM PELTATUM. | c. Soluble in rectified spirit; ammonia; and almost entirely in pure ether. | ACTION.—Drastic purgative. Hepatic stimulant. |
| — | d. Precipitated from its solution in spirit by adding water. | |
| N.O. RANUNCULACEÆ. | | |
| Prepared from <i>podophyllum root</i> , by exhausting it by percolation with <i>rectified spirit</i> ; distilling off the greater part of the spirit; pouring the remains into water, acidulated with hydrochloric acid, constantly stirring; and after standing to deposit, washing and drying the resin. | | |
| 6. RESINA— RESIN. | a. In irregular masses, of various sizes. | <i>Emplastrum Resinæ</i> . Resin, $\frac{3}{4}$ Lead plaster, lb 2 } Melt, and Hard soap, $\frac{3}{2}$ } mix. |
| — | b. Translucent; yellowish. | |
| PINUS and ABIES. (Various species). | c. Brittle and pulverizable; the fracture is shining. | <i>Unguentum Resinæ</i> . Resin, 8 Yellow wax, 4 } Melt, and Simple ointment, 16 } strain. |
| — | d. Odour and taste faintly terebinthinate. | |
| N.O. CONIFERÆ. | | ACTION.—External stimulant. |
| The residue left after the distillation of <i>Turpentine</i> . | e. Melts and burns, with much smoke. | |

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Name. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|---|---|---|
| 7. SCAMMONIÆ RESINÆ— SCAMMONY RESIN. — CONVOLVULUS SCAMMONIA. — N.O. CONVOLVULACEÆ | a. In irregular pieces. b. Brownish and translucent. c. Brittle, with a resinous fracture. d. Does not form alone an emulsion with water. e. Odour, sweet and fragrant. f. Entirely soluble in ether. g. The tincture does not render the fresh-cut surface of a potato blue = (absence of guaiacum). | <i>Mistura Scammonii.</i> Resin of scammony, } Triturate gr. 4 } to form an Milk, $\frac{3}{2}$ 2 } emulsion. <i>Dose.</i> — $\frac{3}{4}$ to 2. <i>Pilula Scammonii Composita.</i> Resin of scammony, 1 } Dissolve Resin of jalap, 1 } with gentle Soap, 1 } heat, and Strong tincture of } evaporate ginger, 1 } by water- Rectified spirit, 2 } bath. <i>Dose.</i> —gr. 5 to 15. ACTION.—Drastic purgative. |
| Prepared from scammony root, by digestion and percolation with rectified spirit; cooling; washing the resin with hot water and drying. Also pressed from scammony. | | |

C. GUM-RESINS.

Gum-resins are characterized by forming an emulsion when mixed with water, the resin being suspended by the gum. Most of them contain a small proportion of a *volatile oil*, as well as salts.

| | | |
|--|---|---|
| 1. AMMONIACUM. — DOREMA AMMONIACUM. — N.O. UMBELLIFERÆ. | a. In small tears, or amygdaloid masses of tears. b. Pale-brown externally; white, shining, and opaque when recently fractured, but becomes yellow on exposure. c. Brittle when cold; softens readily with heat. d. Slight, but peculiar odour. e. Taste bitter, and rather acid. | <i>Mistura Ammoniæ.</i> Ammoniacum, $\frac{1}{2}$ } Rub with the Water, 8 } water, gradually Dose.— $\frac{3}{4}$ to 1. } added; strain. <i>Emplastrum Ammoniæ cum Hydrargyro.</i> (See MERCURY). |
| An exudation from the stem and pedicels, by the puncture of a beetle; or from the root, by inci- sion. | | Contained in:— Emplastrum Galbani. Pilula Scillæ Composita. Pilula Ipecacuanhæ cum Scilla. ACTION.—Antispasmodic. Expectorant. Stimulant. |

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|--|--|--|
| 2. ASSAFÆTIDA. — NARTHEX ASSAFÆTIDA. — N.O. UMBELLIFERÆ. — The exudation from the incised living root. | <p>a. In tears, generally amalgamated into masses; presenting a variable degree of moistness.</p> <p>b. A section presents differences in colour and consistence; consisting of tears, firm and whitish; and a softer, brownish-red, uniting substance.</p> <p>c. Changes colour to pink and dark-red on exposure.</p> <p>d. Odour strong; and alliaceous.</p> <p>e. Taste bitter, and rather acrid.</p> <p>f. Almost entirely soluble in alcohol.</p> | <p><i>Enema Assafætida.</i> Assafætida, gr. 30 } Rub into an Water, ʒ 4 } emulsion.</p> <p><i>Pilula Assafætida Composita.</i> Assafætida, 2 } Galbanum, 2 } Melt in a water- Myrrh, 2 } bath. Treacle, 1 } Dose.—gr. 5 to 10.</p> <p><i>Tinctura Assafætida.</i> Assafætida, 1 } Macerate 7 Rectified spirit, 8 } days; strain; filter; and make up 8. Dose.—5 ½ to 1.</p> <p>Assafætida is contained in:— Pilula Aloes et Assafætida. Spiritus Ammonia Fætidus.</p> <p>ACTION.—Antispasmodic. Stimulant. Expectorant. Laxative. Emmenagogue.</p> |
| 3. GALBANUM — Probably from FERULA GALBANIFLUA or RUBICAULIS. — N.O. UMBELLIFERÆ. — Probably obtained by cutting the stick a little above the root, and allowing the juice which exudes to solidify. | <p>a. Usually in masses of agglutinated tears; sometimes in very small tears.</p> <p>b. Greenish-yellow colour, and translucent; lighter than assafætida</p> <p>c. Firmer than assafætida.</p> <p>d. Slighter odour than assafætida, and less unpleasant.</p> <p>e. Bitter and acrid taste.</p> | <p><i>Emplastrum Galbani.</i> Melt and } Galbanum, 1 strain } Ammoniacum, 1. Melt and } Yellow wax, 1 add } Lead plaster, 8.</p> <p>Galbanum is contained in <i>Pilula Assafætida Composita.</i></p> <p>ACTION.—External absorbent. Antispasmodic. Stimulant. Expectorant.</p> |

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|---|--|---|
| 5. CAMBOGIA —GAMBOGE. — GARCINIA MORELLA. — N.O. GUTTIFERÆ. — Obtained by making incisions into the stem; or cutting away some of the bark, and scraping away the juice that exudes; it is collected in bam- boo reeds. | a. In pipes or cylinders, streaked externally. b. $\frac{1}{2}$ to $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch or more in diameter. c. Of a tawny yellow colour. d. Hard, but brittle, and easily pulverised. e. Fracture smooth, conchoidal, glisten- ing. f. Powder is bright- yellow. g. No odour, but the powder is very irri- tating. h. Taste slight at first, then acrid. i. Forms a yellow emulsion with water. Soluble in rectified spirit; and most of it in ether. j. Adulterations:— Starch or flour; the emulsion with boiling water becomes green. | <i>Pilula Cambogiæ Composita.</i> Gamboge, 1 Barbadoes aloes, 1 Compound powder of } cinnamon, 1 Mix. Hard soap, 2 Syrup, q.s. Dose.—gr. 5 to 10. ACTION.—Drastic purgative. Anthelmintic. Diuretic. |
| 6. MYRRHA— MYRRH. — BALSAMODEN- DRON MYRRHA. — N.O. AMYRIDACEÆ. — An exudation from the stem. | a. In irregular tears or masses, of variable size. b. Reddish-yellow or reddish-brown, but often covered with white powder. c. Translucent. d. Fractured surface is irregular, and some- what oily. e. Odour peculiar and aromatic. f. Taste pungent, warm, acrid, and bitter. g. Partially soluble in water; more in alco- hol and ether. | <i>Tinctura Myrrhæ.</i> Myrrh, 1 Rectified spirit, 8 } Macerate and percolate. Dose.—3 $\frac{1}{2}$ to 1. Myrrh is contained in:— Decoctum Aloes Compositum. Mistura Ferri Composita. Pilula Aloes et Myrrhæ. Pilula Assafetidæ Composita. Pilula Rhei Composita. ACTION.—Stimulant. Antispas- modic. Emmenagogue. Local stimulant. |

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|--|--|---|
| 7. SCAMMONIUM— SCAMMONY. — CONVOLVULUS SCAMMONIA. — N.O. CONVOLVULACEÆ | a. In irregular masses, of variable size. b. Blackish-green, but covered with a fine grey powder. Rough and porous externally. c. Brittle, and easily powdered. d. Fracture resinous, shining, black. | <i>Confectio Scammonii.</i> Scammony, 5 3 Ginger, 3 1½ Oil of caraway, 5 1 Oil of cloves, 5 ½ Syrup, 3 3 Clarified honey, 5 1½ <i>Dose.</i> —gr. 10 to 30. |
| Obtained by incision from the living root. The juice is collected in shells, and allowed to con- crete. | e. Powder is dirty-grey. f. Musty and cheesy odour. g. Taste nauseous, and causes a slight prickly sensation in throat. h. <i>Adulterations</i> :— Chalk and starch. | <i>Pulvis Scammonii Compositus.</i> Scammony, 4 Jalap, 3 Ginger, 1 <i>Dose.</i> —gr. 10 to 20. ACTION. —Drastic purgative. Anthelmintic. |

D. BALSAMS OR BALSAMIC RESINS.

These are drugs which consist of a *resin* with either *benzoic* or *cinnamic acid*, which is sublimed by heat.

| | | |
|--|--|---|
| 1. BALSAMUM PERUVIANUM —BALSAM OF PERU. — MYROXYLON PEREIRÆ. — N.O. LEGUMINOSÆ. | a. A thick, viscid, treacle-like liquid. b. Reddish-brown or nearly black; opaque; translucent in thin layers. c. Peculiar fragrant, balsamic odour. d. Acrid, slightly bitter, aromatic taste. e. Soluble in an equal part of rectified spirit. Insoluble in water. f. <i>Adulterations</i> = Fixed oil; castor oil; copaiba. | No officinal preparations. <i>Dose.</i> —in 10 to 15. ACTION. —Externally, antiseptic and stimulant; applied to ulcers. Internally, stimulant expectorant; stimulant; acts on urinary mucous membrane. |
| An exudation from the trunk of the tree, after the bark has been scorched and removed. | | |

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|---|--|--|
| 2. BALSAMUM TOLUTANUM —BALSAM OF TOLU. — MYROXYLON TOLUIFERA. — N.O. LEGUMINOSÆ. — An exudation from the <i>trunk</i> of the tree, after in- cisions have been made in the <i>bark</i> . | a. A soft solid, becom- ing firmer with age. b. Reddish-brown or brownish colour. c. More or less trans- parent. d. Aromatic balsamic odour. e. Aromatic taste. f. Soluble in rectified spirit and ether. | <i>Syrupus Tolutanus</i> . Balsam of tolu, $1\frac{1}{2}$ } Boil the bal- Sugar, 32 } sam in water; Water, 20 } cool; filter; and dissolve the sugar. Dose.— $\frac{3}{4}$ i to 2. <i>Tinctura Tolutana</i> . Balsam of tolu, $\frac{1}{2}$ } Dissolve and Rectified spirit, 8 } filter. Dose.—iii 15 to 30. ACTION.— Similar to balsam of Peru. |
| 3. BENZOINUM —BENZOIN. — STYRAX BENZOIN. — N.O. STYRACACEÆ. — An exudation from incisions made in the <i>bark</i> . | a. Usually in masses of agglutinated tears; sometimes a compact mass of resin with more or less tears in it. b. Tears are reddish- white; intervening substance is rich brown. c. Pleasant odour; but little taste. d. Tears are soluble in rectified spirit and solution of potash. | Benzoin is the source of <i>benzoic acid</i> . <i>Tinctura Benzoini Composita</i> . (Friars's Balsam). Benzoin, 8 Storax, 6 Balsam of tolu, 2 } Macerate 7 Socotrine aloes, } days; filter; nearly $1\frac{1}{2}$ } make up to Rectified spirit, 80 } 80. Dose.— $\frac{3}{4}$ i to 1. Contained in <i>Adeps Benzoatus</i> . ACTION.—Externally styptic; stim- ulant; antiseptic. Internally, stimulant expectorant; diure- tic; acts on urinary mucous membrane. |
| 4. STYRAX PRÆPARATUS —PREPARED STORAX. — LIQUIDAMBAR ORIENTALE. — N.O. LIQUIDAM- BARACEÆ. — A balsam pre- pared from the <i>bark</i> ; purified by means of rectified spirit, and strain- ing. | a. A liquid, of the con- sistence of bird-lime. (A solid form is <i>non- officinal</i>). b. Of brown colour; almost opaque. c. Aromatic odour. d. Soluble in alcohol and ether. | No <i>officinal preparations</i> . Contained in <i>Tinctura Benzoini Composita</i> . Dose.—gr. 10 to 20. ACTION.— Stimulant. Expecto- rant. Acts on urethral mucous membrane. |

E. TURPENTINES OR OLEO-RESINS.

These are drugs which consist of a *volatile oil* and a *resin*; the oil can be obtained by heating the oleo-resin, the resin being left behind.

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|---|--|---|
| <p>1. COPAIBA— COPAIVA. — COPAIFERA MULTIJUGA. — N.O. LEGUMINOSÆ. — The oleo-resin obtained by inci- sion from the trunk of the tree.</p> | <p><i>a.</i> A viscid fluid, about the consistence of honey. <i>b.</i> Pale-yellow to golden or brown colour; transparent; not flu- orescent. <i>c.</i> Peculiar aromatic odour. <i>d.</i> Nauseous, bitter, acrid taste. <i>e.</i> Insoluble in water; soluble in an equal volume of benzol, in alcohol, ether, fixed and volatile oils. <i>f.</i> Does not gelatinize at 270°.</p> | <p><i>Oleum Copaibæ</i>, (See OILS). <i>Dose.</i>—℥ 20 to 60. ACTION.—Diuretic. Has a speci- fic action on the urinary mu- cous membrane, especially the urethra. Stimulant expecto- rant.</p> |
| <p>2. TEREBIN- THINA CANADENSIS —CANADA BALSAM. — ABIES BALSAMEA. — N.O. CONIFERÆ. — The oleo-resin obtained by inci- sion from the stem.</p> | <p><i>a.</i> A liquid of the consistence of thin honey. <i>b.</i> Pale straw colour. <i>c.</i> Dries very slowly into a transparent, adhesive varnish. <i>d.</i> Peculiar agreeable odour. <i>e.</i> Slightly bitter, feebly acrid taste.</p> | <p>Canada balsam is contained in:— <i>Charta Epispastica.</i> <i>Collodium Flexile.</i> ACTION.—External stimulant. Chiefly used for pharmaceuti- cal purposes.</p> |

| Name. Plant. Natural Order. Nature. | Description. | Pharmacy and Action. |
|--|---|--|
| 3. THUS AMERICANUM —COMMON FRANKIN- CENSE. — PINUS TEDA and PALUSTRIS. — N.O. CONIFERÆ. — A concrete tur- pentine from the bark. | a. A softish solid. b. Bright-yellow ; opaque. c. Resinous, but tough. d. Possesses the odour of turpentine. | Contained in <i>Emplastrum Picis</i> . ACTION. — External stimulant. Used mainly to give consis- tence to plasters. |

GROUP XIV.—VEGETABLE OILS AND THEIR PRODUCTS.

The *officinal oils* derived from the vegetable kingdom may be divided into four groups, and it will also be convenient to discuss here certain products obtained from oils, as follows:—

1. **Simple fixed oils.**
2. **Ordinary volatile oils.**
3. **Concrete oils.**
4. **Special oils, fixed and volatile.**
5. **Glycerine.**
6. **Soaps.**

I. SIMPLE FIXED OILS.

SOURCE AND PREPARATION.—The oils belonging to this group are all obtained by *pressure* from certain parts of plants, and they include the following:—

1. **Oleum Amygdalæ**—**Almond oil**—from the bitter and sweet almond, which are the *seeds* of *Amygdala Amara* and *Dulcis*. *N.O. Rosaceæ*.

2. **Oleum Lini**—**Linseed oil**—from the *seeds* of *Linum Usitatissimum*. *N.O. Linaceæ*.

3. **Oleum Olivæ**—**Olive oil**—from the *ripe* fruit of *Olea Europæa*. *N.O. Oleaceæ*.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES.—1. The members of this group are liquids of an oily consistence, linseed oil being rather viscid.

2. Their colour is more or less yellow, linseed oil being the darkest.

3. Their odour is faint, but peculiar; almond oil is almost inodorous. Taste bland and oleaginous.

4. They are insoluble in water; soluble in ether; only slightly soluble in alcohol. They mix with each other in all proportions.

5. They are liable to decompose by prolonged exposure to air, becoming rancid; olive oil is the most stable; linseed oil is a "drying" oil, becoming solid after prolonged exposure.

COMPOSITION. — The oils consist of compounds of certain acids with glyceryl, and the composition of the several oils may be thus stated:—

Almond oil—Chiefly *Glyceric oleate* or *Olein*.

Linseed oil { *Glyceric Lin-oleate*.
 { *Glycerine Margarate* or *Margarin*.

Olive oil { *Olein* = 72 per cent.
 { *Margarin* = 28 per cent.

PHARMACY.—There are no named *officinal preparations* of the simple fixed oils.

Almond oil is { *Unguentum Cetacei*.
contained in { ,, *Simplex*.

It is used because it makes a white ointment.

Olive oil is contained in { Cataplasma Lini.
Enema Magnesia Sulphatis.
Linimentum Ammoniaë.
,, Calcis.
,, Camphoræ.
Several Emplastra and Unguenta.

Almond oil is the solvent in *Oleum Phosphoratum*.

ACTION.—Externally, emollient and protective. Internally, almond and olive oils are nutrient and emollient; olive oil is laxative.

2. ORDINARY VOLATILE OILS.

SOURCE AND PREPARATION.—The volatile oils belonging to this class are all obtained by *distilling* certain parts of plants with water, and collecting the oil; one, however,—*Oleum Limonis*—may also be prepared by *expression*. Those which are recognised in the B.P. are as follows:—

1. Volatile oils from Umbelliferous fruits.

a. *Oleum Anethi*—Oil of Dill. From *Anethum graveolens*.

b. *Oleum Anisi*—Oil of Anise. From *Pimpinella Anisum*. (Also from the fruit of *Illicium Anisatum* or *Star Anise*. N.O. **Magnoliaceæ**).

c. *Oleum Carui*—Oil of Caraway. From *Carum Carui*.

d. *Oleum Coriandri*—Oil of Coriander. From *Coriandrum Sativum*.

2. Volatile oils from N.O. Labiatæ.

a. *Oleum Lavandulæ*—Oil of Lavender. From the flowers of *Lavandula vera*. (Also Oil of *Spike*, from French Lavender).

- b. Oleum Menthæ Piperitæ*—Oil of Peppermint. From the flowering plant—*Mentha Piperita*.
- c. Oleum Menthæ Viridis*—Oil of Spearmint. From the fresh herb—*Mentha Viridis*.
- d. Oleum Rosmarini*—Oil of Rosemary. From the flowering-tops of *Rosmarinus Officinalis*.
- 3. **Volatile oils from N.O. Myrtaceæ.**
 - d. Oleum Cajuputi*—Oil of Cajeput. From the leaves of *Melaleuca minor*.
 - b. Oleum Caryophylli*—Oil of Cloves. From cloves, which are the unexpanded dried flower-buds of *Caryophyllus Aromaticus*.
 - c. Oleum Pimentæ*—Oil of Pimento. From the unripe berries of *Eugenia Pimenta*.
- 4. **Volatile oils from various Sources.**
 - a. Oleum Anthemidis*—Oil of Chamomile. From the flowers of *Anthemis Nobilis*. **N.O. Compositæ.**
 - b. Oleum Cinnamomi*—Oil of Cinnamon. From the inner bark of *Cinnamomum Zeylanicum*. **N.O. Lauraceæ.**
 - c. Oleum Limonis*—Oil of Lemon. Distilled or expressed from the fresh peel of the fruit of *Citris Limonis*. **N.O. Aurantiaceæ.**
 - d. Oleum Myristicæ*—Oil of Nutmeg. From nutmeg, the kernel of the seed of *Myristica Officinalis*. **N.O. Myristicaceæ.**

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES.—1. All the oils in this division are either colourless, or more or less yellow or brownish, except *Oleum Cajuputi*, which is of a pale bluish-green colour.

2. Each oil has a powerful and peculiar odour and taste, the latter being also warm and aromatic.

3. They are slightly soluble in water; completely in alcohol and fixed oils.

4. They can be distilled without decomposition.

COMPOSITION.—It is unnecessary to learn the exact composition of the several volatile oils, and it will be sufficient to remember that they consist of certain *hydrocarbons*, usually mixed more or less with *oxygenated derivatives*, or the latter may be alone present. In some cases one of the constituents is regarded as an *alcohol*.

PHARMACY.—I. *Officinal preparations*.—There are three classes of pharmaceutical preparations in which volatile oils are specially contained, and these must be separately considered.

A. *AQUÆ*.—As already mentioned, there is a class of *aquæ* or *waters* which contain volatile oils, being prepared either by distilling some part of the plant, or a volatile oil itself, with water. It will be convenient to give a complete list here of these preparations, and to indicate how they are made, although in several instances the volatile oils are not recognised officinally as separate drugs.

a. **Aquæ prepared from Umbelliferous fruits.**

- | | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------|--|
| (i) <i>Aqua Anethi</i> | } Bruised fruit, 1 } Distil 10. | |
| (ii) „ <i>Carui</i> | | |
| (iii) „ <i>Fœniculi</i> | | |
| | Water, 20 | |

b. **Aquæ prepared from Volatile oils.**

- | | | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|-----|
| (i) <i>Aqua Menthæ Piperitæ</i> | } Volatile oil, 3 ½ } Distil | |
| (ii) „ „ <i>Viridis</i> | | |
| | Water, C 1½ | C 1 |

c. **Aquæ prepared from Flowers.**

- | | | | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|---|----------------|
| (i) <i>Aqua Floris Aurantii</i> | —Orange flower water. | | |
| (ii) „ <i>Rosæ</i> | } Fresh cabbage } Distil 1. | } | |
| | | | rose petals, 1 |
| | | | Water, 2 |
| (iii) „ <i>Sambuci</i> | } Fresh elder } Distil 1. | } | |
| | | | flowers, 1 |
| | | | Water, 2 |

Oleum Coriandri in *Syrupus Sennæ*.

Oleum Lavandulæ in *Linimentum Camphoræ Compositum*.

Oleum Limonis in { *Linimentum Potassii Iodidi cum Sapone.*

Oleum Menthæ Piperitæ in *Pilula Rhei Composita*.

Oleum Myristicæ in { *Pilula Aloes Socotrinæ.*

Oleum Rosmarini in *Linimentum Saponis*.

ACTION.—All the volatile oils in this group have similar actions, namely:—Externally, stimulant or rubefacient. Internally, carminative; aromatic; antispasmodic. Many of them are chiefly used as flavouring agents.

Dose—of Oils, ml to 4; of *Aquæ*, $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 2; of *Spiritus*, ml 20 to 60 or 100; of *Essentiæ*, ml 10 to 20.

3. CONCRETE OILS.

The oils belonging to this division are three in number, and require to be considered individually.

A. Camphora—Camphor. The *concrete volatile oil* obtained from the wood of *Camphora Officinarum*, *N.O. Lauraceæ*. Composition = $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{16}\text{O}$.

PREPARATION.—The chips are boiled in water, and the camphor is collected as it sublimes. This *crude camphor*, which is imported in dirty white crystalline grains or granular masses, is purified in this country by mixing it with quick-lime, and re-subliming into glass vessels, where it collects in bell-shaped masses, which are then broken up.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES.—Camphor presents the following characters and properties:—

- a. It occurs in hemispherical cakes or fragments, about 3 inches in diameter.

- b.* It is white and translucent ; and of crystalline texture.
- c.* It is tough, and difficult to powder, unless a little rectified spirit is added.
- d.* It floats on water ; Sp. gr., 0.986 to 0.996.
- e.* Has a powerful, characteristic, penetrating odour.
- f.* The taste is pungent, followed by a sensation of coldness.
- g.* Camphor volatilizes slowly at ordinary temperatures, and crystallizes on the interior of the containing vessel ; it melts, boils, and sublimates with heat.
- h.* It is soluble in water (1 in 900) ; in milk ; in rectified spirit (1 in $1\frac{1}{4}$) ; freely in ether, chloroform, volatile and fixed oils, and acetic acid. Insoluble in alkalies. When camphor is rubbed with carbolic acid crystals (3 to 1), or with hydrate of chloral (3 to 3), liquids are formed.

PHARMACY.—1. *Officinal Preparations.*—

a. Aqua Camphoræ.

Camphor, $\frac{3}{4}$ } Digest 2 days, enclosing the
Water, C 1 } camphor in a muslin bag.

Dose— $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 2.

b. Linimentum Camphoræ.

Camphor, 1 }
Olive oil, 4 } Dissolve.

c. Linimentum Camphoræ Compositum.

| | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Camphor, 5 | } Dissolve the oil and camphor in the spirit, and add the ammo- nia gradually, shaking them together. |
| Oil of lavender, $\frac{1}{4}$ | |
| Strong solution of ammonia, 10 | |
| Rectified spirit, 30 | |

d. *Spiritus Camphoræ.*

Camphor, i
Rectified spirit, 9 } Dissolve.

Rectified spirit, 9

Dose—m 10 to 30.

e. *Tinctura Camphoræ Composita—Paregoric Elixir.*

Opium, gr. 40

| | |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| Benzoic acid, gr. 40 | Macerate 7 days; |
| Camphor, gr. 30 | filter; and make up |

Camphor, gr. 30

Oil of anise, $3\frac{1}{2}$

Proof spirit, $\frac{7}{8}$ 20

Macerate 7 days;
filter; and make up
to 20.

Dose—m 15 to 60.

2. *Camphor* is an ingredient in several *Liniments*;

and in { Unguentum Hydrargyri Compositum.
" Plumbi Subacetatis Compositum.

mbi Subacetatis Compo-
situm.

ACTION.—Externally, stimulant and rubefacient. Internally, stimulant and sedative; antispasmodic; diaphoretic; anaphrodisiac. In large doses causes dangerous symptoms.

B. Oleum Myristicæ Expressum — **Expressed Oil of Nutmeg.**—A concrete oil obtained from *Nutmeg* by expression and heat; yields about 30 per cent. *N.O. Myristicaceæ.*

CHARACTERS.—This is a substance of firm consistence; orange yellow colour; and fragrant odour, like that of nutmeg. It consists of fixed fat, yielding myristic acid; and some volatile oil.

PHARMACY.—It is { Emplastrum calefaciens.
contained in { „ picis.

contained in { „ picis.

ACTION.—External stimulant.

C. Oleum Theobromæ—Oil of Theobroma—**Cacao butter**.—A concrete oil obtained by expression and heat from the ground seeds of *Theobroma Cacao*. **N.O. Byttneriaceæ.**

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES:—

- a.* Oil of theobroma is a soft solid, of the consistence of tallow.
- b.* It occurs in cakes, of a yellowish colour, with a clean fracture.
- c.* It has a pleasant odour, resembling chocolate.
- d.* The taste is bland and agreeable.
- e.* It softens at the temperature of the body; and melts at about 122°.
- f.* It does not become rancid on exposure.

PHARMACY.—Cacao butter is used in the preparation of the *Suppositories*.

ACTION.—External emollient. Internally, nutritive; recommended as a substitute for cod-liver oil.

4. SPECIAL OILS.

Several important drugs belong to this group, and each demands separate consideration. It will be well to enumerate them at the outset, in the order in which they will be discussed:—

| | | |
|---------------|---|--|
| Special | { | <i>Oleum Ricini</i> —Castor oil. |
| Fixed oils | | „ <i>Crotomis</i> —Croton oil. |
| | { | <i>Oleum Copaibæ</i> —Oil of Copaiva. |
| | | „ <i>Cubebæ</i> —Oil of Cubebs. |
| | | „ <i>Jumperi</i> —Oil of Juniper. |
| Special | | „ <i>Rutæ</i> —Oil of Rue. |
| Volatile oils | | „ <i>Sabinæ</i> —Oil of Savin. |
| | | „ <i>Sinapis</i> —Oil of Mustard. |
| | | „ <i>Terebinthineæ</i> —Oil of Turpentine. |

A. *Oleum Ricini*—Castor Oil.—The oil expressed from the seeds of *Ricinus Communis*, either without (cold-drawn) or with the aid of heat, or

sometimes with alcohol. *N.O.* **Euphorbiaceæ**. The seeds yield about 25 to 30 per cent. of oil. It is composed mainly of *ricinic*, *ricin-oleic*, and *ricin-stearic* acids, combined with glycerine; with some acrid resinous matter.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES.—*a.* A thick and viscid oil; sp. gr., 0·96.

b. Colourless or of pale-straw colour.

c. Has a peculiar, slightly nauseous odour.

d. Disagreeable, somewhat acrid taste.

e. Soluble in rectified spirit (1 in 2); in absolute alcohol (1 in 1).

f. It thickens and congeals on exposure, and becomes rancid.

PHARMACY.—*Castor oil* is contained in:—

Collodium Flexile.

Linimentum Sinapis Compositum.

Pilula Hydrargyri Subchloridi Composita.

ACTION.—Aperient.

Dose— $\frac{3}{4}$ to 1 for an adult; 3 i to 3 for children or persons who are weak.

B. Oleum Crotonis—**Croton Oil**.—The oil expressed from the seeds of *Croton Tiglium*. *N.O.* **Euphorbiaceæ**. The kernels of the seeds yield about 50 to 60 per cent. of oil. It consists of an active fixed oil; and a volatile oily liquid—*crotonic acid*.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES.—*a.* A rather viscid oil; sp. gr., 0·940 to 0·950.

b. Of brownish-yellow colour.

c. Odour faintly nauseous; taste acrid.

d. Soluble in ether, olive oil, and turpentine; to various degrees in alcohol.

PHARMACY.—*Officinal Preparation*:—

| | | | |
|----------------------------|---|----------------------------------|--------|
| <i>Linimentum Crotonis</i> | { | Croton oil, 1 | } Mix. |
| | | Oil of Cajepu, $3\frac{1}{2}$ | |
| | | Rectified spirit, $3\frac{1}{2}$ | |

ACTION.—Pustulant. Drastic purgative.

C. The *special volatile oils* are all obtained by *distillation*, and the principal facts relating to the several oils may be readily summarized. Each has a peculiar and characteristic odour and taste.

1. **Oleum Copaibæ—Oil of Copaiba.** *N.O. Leguminosæ.* From the oleo-resin—*Copaiba* = about 40 per cent. Colourless or pale-yellow.

ACTION.—Like *Copaiba*. Dose.—℥5 to 20.

2. **Oleum Cubebæ—Oil of Cubebs.** Distilled in Britain from *Cubebs*, the *unripe fruit*. *N.O. Piperaceæ.* Faintly green.

ACTION.—Like *Cubebs*. Dose.—℥5 to 20.

3. **Oleum Juniperi—Oil of Juniper.** Distilled in Britain from the *unripe fruit* of *Juniperus Communis*. *N.O. Coniferæ.*

PHARMACY.—*Officinal Preparation* :—

| | | |
|--------------------------|---|------|
| <i>Spiritus Juniperi</i> | { Oil of juniper, 1 Rectified spirit, 49 } | Mix. |
|--------------------------|---|------|

ACTION.—Stimulant. Carminative. Diuretic. Dose.—℥1 to 3; of *Spirit*, ℥30 to 60.

4. **Oleum Rutæ—Oil of Rue.** Distilled from the fresh herb of *Ruta Graveolens*. *N.O. Rutaceæ.* Pale-straw colour.

ACTION.—Externally, stimulant and rubefacient. Internally, stimulant; antispasmodic; emmenagogue; and oxytocic. Dose.—℥2 to 6.

5. **Oleum Sabinæ—Oil of Savin.** Distilled in Britain from fresh *Savin tops*—*Juniperus Sabina*. *N.O. Coniferæ.* Pale straw colour.

ACTION. Stimulant. Emmenagogue. Oxytocic.

6. **Oleum Sinapis—Oil of Mustard.** Distilled with water from the *Black Mustard-seeds*—*Sinapis Nigra*, after expressing the fixed oil. *N.O. Cruciferæ.* A product of the action of *myrosine* on *myronate of potash*; and consists of *sulphocyanide of allyl*. Yellow; has a powerful pungent odour.

Soluble in water (1 in 50); readily in rectified spirit and ether.

PHARMACY.—Oil of mustard is contained in *Linimentum Sinapis Compositum*.

ACTION.—Powerful vesicant, rubefacient or stimulant when diluted.

7. Oleum Terebinthinæ—Oil or Spirit of Turpentine. Distilled from the *Turpentine* or *Oleo-resin* derived from *Pinus Palustris*, *Pinaster*, and *Tæda*. *N.O. Coniferæ*.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES.—*a.* Oil of turpentine is a limpid colourless liquid; sp. gr. = 0.86.

b. Possesses a strong peculiar odour.

c. Pungent and bitter taste.

d. Scarcely soluble in water; soluble in rectified spirit (1 in 10); and ether. Remains transparent with chloroform in all proportions.

e. It dissolves sulphur, phosphorus, iodine, wax, fixed oils, and resins.

f. When exposed to air, oil of turpentine partly volatilizes, partly resinifies, absorbing oxygen.

g. It is highly inflammable, burning with a yellow smoky flame.

PHARMACY.—*Officinal Preparations* :—

a. Confectio Terebinthinæ.

| | |
|----------------------|--------|
| Oil of Turpentine, 1 | } Mix. |
| Liquorice powder, 1 | |
| Clarified Honey, 2 | |

Dose—gr. 60 to 240.

b. Enema Terebinthinæ.

| | |
|--------------------------------------|--------|
| Oil of Turpentine, $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 | } Mix. |
| Mucilage of Starch, $\frac{3}{4}$ 15 | |

c. Linimentum Terebinthinæ.

| | |
|-----------------------|---|
| Oil of Turpentine, 16 | } Dissolve camphor in the turpentine, and mix the soap. |
| Camphor, 1 | |
| Soft soap, 2 | |

d. Linimentum Terebinthinæ Aceticum.

| | |
|------------------------|--------|
| Oil of Turpentine, 1 | } Mix. |
| Acetic acid, 1 | |
| Liniment of Camphor, 1 | |

e. Unguentum Terebinthinæ.

| | |
|--|---|
| Oil of Turpentine, $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 | } Melt over a water bath, and stir till cold. |
| Resin, gr. 60 | |
| Yellow wax, $\frac{3}{4}$ $\frac{1}{2}$ | |
| Prepared lard, $\frac{3}{4}$ $\frac{1}{2}$ | |

ACTION.—Externally, vesicant, rubefacient, or stimulant. Internally, stimulant; diuretic; anthelmintic; diaphoretic; antispasmodic; hæmodynamic.

Dose.— \mathfrak{m} 10 to 30; as anthelmintic, 3 2 to 4.

5. GLYCERINUM—GLYCERINE.

Glycerine is a sweet principle, of composition $C_3H_8O_3$, obtained from fats and fixed oils. It is a triatomic alcohol, a *hydrate of glyceryl*, which is the salifiable base of oil; with about 5 per cent. of water.

PREPARATION.—Glycerine is obtained by the saponification of vegetable or animal fixed oils or fats; or by distilling them with superheated steam. It is largely made from palm-oil.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES:—

- a.* A syrupy-looking liquid, oily to the touch; sp. gr. = 1.250 to 1.260.
- b.* Clear and colourless, or may be slightly yellowish.
- c.* Odourless; has a very sweet taste.
- d.* Soluble in all proportions in water and alcohol; insoluble in chloroform, ether, and oils.
- e.* At the ordinary temperature glycerine absorbs moisture from the atmosphere.

f. It is decomposed by heat, evolving intensely irritating vapours (*Acrolein*).

g. Glycerine is a solvent of iodine and iodide of sulphur; bromine; the fixed alkalies; chloride of potassium and sodium; borax freely; crystallized perchloride of iron; nitrate of bismuth; arsenious acid; carbolic acid freely; many neutral salts; vegetable acids; and many vegetable alkaloids, while it suspends others.

IMPURITIES.—Water; oils; sugar; gum or dextrin; acids.

PHARMACY.—1. *Officinal Preparations.* There is a recognized group of *Glycerina* or *Glycerines* in the B.P. (see PHARMACEUTICAL PREPARATIONS), five in number namely:—

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>a.</i> Glycerinum Acidi Carbolici | } = 1 in $4\frac{1}{2}$. |
| <i>b.</i> Glycerinum Acidi Gallici | |
| <i>c.</i> Glycerinum Acidi Tannici | |
| <i>d.</i> Glycerinum Amyli | = 1 in $8\frac{1}{2}$. |
| <i>e.</i> Glycerinum Boracis | = 1 in $4\frac{1}{2}$. |

2. *Glycerine* is an ingredient in:—

Linimentum Potassii Iodidi cum Sapone.

ACTION.—External and local emollient. Internally, nutrient. Used also as a flavouring agent.

Dose = 3 i to 2.

6. SAPONES—SOAPS.

There are three officinal soaps, namely:—

1. **Sapo Animalis—Curd Soap.**
2. **Sapo Durus—Hard Soap** = oleate and margarate of soda.
3. **Sapo Mollis—Soft Soap** = oleate and margarate of potash.

SOURCE AND PREPARATION.—The soaps are derived from fats and oils, by the action upon them of soda or potash, salts of these bases with the

fatty acids being thus formed. They are severally prepared as follows:—

1. *Sapo Animalis*.—Made with soda and a purified animal fat, consisting principally of stearin.
2. *Sapo Durus*.—Made with soda and olive oil.
3. *Sapo Mollis*.—Made with potash and olive oil.

CHARACTERS.—*Curd soap* is white or very light greyish; dry but horny, and pulverizable in dry warm air; easily moulded when heated. *Hard soap* has similar characters, but is greyish-white. *Soft soap* is yellowish-green; and of a gelatinous consistence. These soaps should have little or no odour.

PHARMACY.—I. *Officinal Preparations*. The named preparations of soap in the B.P. are all made with *Hard soap*, namely:—

a. *Emplastrum Cerati Saponis*.

Hard soap, powdered, 10
 Yellow wax, 12½
 Oxide of lead, 15
 Olive oil, 20
 Vinegar, 160

Boil the vinegar and oxide slowly together, constantly stirring; add the soap, and evaporate by boiling; mix with the wax and oil, previously dissolved; evaporate to the consistence of plaster.

b. *Emplastrum Saponis*.

Hard soap, 6
 Lead plaster, 36
 Resin, 1

Melt the lead plaster; add the soap and resin, liquefied; evaporate, constantly stirring.

c. *Linimentum Saponis*.

Hard soap, cut small, 3 2½
 Camphor, 3 1¼
 Oil of rosemary, 3 3
 Rectified spirit, 3 18
 Distilled water, 3 2

Add the ingredients to the water and spirit mixed; digest for 7 days under 70°, occasionally agitating; filter.

d. Pilula Saponis Composita. Contains *Opium*, gr. 1 in 6 nearly. (See *OPIMUM*).

2. The other preparations in which soap is contained are:—

a. Hard Soap in *Linimentum Potassii Iodidi cum Sapone* (*Curd Soap* also used); and in several pills.

b. Linimentum Saponis in *Linimentum Opii*.

c. Soft Soap in *Linimentum Terebinthinæ*.

ACTION.—Detergent. Antacid. Laxative. Emetic.

GROUP XV.—CONCRETE JUICES AND EXTRACTS.

This group includes certain drugs which are of a more or less complex composition, and cannot be referred to any of the groups already considered. Each must be considered separately, and they may be taken in alphabetical order.

1. **Aloe—Aloes.** This is an inspissated juice from the leaf, and there are two *official* varieties, namely:—*a. Aloe Barbadensis*—*Barbadoes Aloes*, from the *Aloe Vulgaris*; *b. Aloe Socotrina*—*Socotrine Aloes*, from one or more undetermined species. There are several *non-official* varieties. *N.O. Liliaceæ.*

PREPARATION.—*Barbadoes Aloes* is obtained by merely cutting the leaves transversely, and allowing the juice to flow out, which is then evaporated to an extract. It is usually imported from Barbadoes in gourds.

Socotrine Aloes is supposed to be made by boiling the leaves. It is usually imported in skins and casks.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES.—Aloes occurs in various-sized masses, and the characters of the two officinal varieties may be thus contrasted:—

BARBADOES.

a. Yellowish or dark-brown colour; opaque.

b. Fracture dull and conchoidal.

c. Strong, disagreeable odour, especially when breathed upon.

d. Bitter, nauseous taste.

e. Soluble in water (75 per cent.); almost entirely in proof spirit. (Contains a larger proportion of watery extract).

f. Powder=dull olive-green.

SOCOTRINE.

a. Reddish-brown colour; opaque or translucent at edges.

b. Fracture irregular or smooth, and resinous.

c. Strong fragrant odour.

d. Bitter taste.

e. Soluble in water (50 per cent.); entirely in proof spirit. (Contains a smaller proportion of watery extract, and more resin).

f. Powder = bright orange-yellow.

PHARMACY. 1. *Officinal Preparations:—*

These are numerous and may be arranged as follows:—

A. Preparations common to both Aloes.

a. Enema Aloes = Barbadosis—Socotrina.

| | |
|--------------------------------------|--------|
| Barbadoes or Socotrine aloes, gr. 40 | } Mix. |
| Carbonate of Potash, gr. 15 | |
| Mucilage of starch, $\frac{3}{4}$ 10 | |

Dose— $\frac{3}{4}$ 3 to 4.

b. Extractum Aloes = Barbadosis—Socotrina.

| | |
|-------------------------|--|
| Barbadoes or Socotrine | } Thoroughly mix; allow to stand 12 hours; and evaporate to dryness. |
| aloes, $\frac{3}{4}$ 10 | |
| Boiling water, C 1 | |

Doses { Barbadoes, gr. $\frac{1}{2}$ to 2.
Socotrine, gr. $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 3.

c. Pilula Aloes = Barbadoensis—Socotrine.

| | |
|--|--------|
| Barbadoes or Socotrine aloes, 2 | } Mix. |
| Hard soap, 1 | |
| Oil of caraway (in Barbadoes), $\frac{1}{8}$ | |
| Oil of nutmeg (in Socotrine), $\frac{1}{8}$ | |
| Confection of Roses, 1 | |

Doses { Barbadoes, gr. 4 to 8.
 Socotrine, gr. 5 to 10.

B. Special Preparation of Barbadoes Aloes.*a. Pilula Aloes et Ferri.*

| | |
|----------------------------------|--------|
| Barbadoes aloes, 2 | } Mix. |
| Sulphate of iron, $1\frac{1}{2}$ | |
| Compound powder of cinnamon, 3 | |
| Confection of roses, 4 | |

Dose—gr. 5 to 10.

C. Special Preparations of Socotrine Aloes.*a. Decoctum Aloes Compositum. (Baume de Vie).*

| | |
|---|---|
| Extract of Socotrine | } Boil the solid ingredients (except saffron) gently with OI of water for five minutes; add the saffron; cool; add the tincture of cardamoms; macerate for 2 hours; strain through flannel; and pour water on the contents of the strainer to $\frac{3}{4}$ 30. |
| aloes, gr. 120 | |
| Myrrh, gr. 90 | |
| Saffron, gr. 90 | |
| Carbonate of potash, gr. 60 | |
| Extract of Liquorice, $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 | |
| Compound tincture of cardamoms, $\frac{3}{4}$ 8 | |
| Water, a sufficiency | |

Dose— $\frac{3}{4}$ $\frac{1}{2}$ to 2.

b. Pilula Aloes et Assafœtida.

| | |
|------------------------|--------|
| Socotrine aloes, 1 | } Mix. |
| Assafœtida, 1 | |
| Hard soap, 1 | |
| Confection of roses, 1 | |

Dose—gr. 5 to 10.

c. *Pilula Aloes et Myrrhæ.*

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--------|
| Socotrine aloes, 2 | } Mix. |
| Myrrh, 1 | |
| Dried saffron, $\frac{1}{2}$ | |
| Confection of roses, $2\frac{1}{2}$ | |

Dose—gr. 5 to 10.

d. *Tinctura Aloes.*

| | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| Socotrine aloes, 1 | } Macerate 7 days; | |
| Extract of Liquorice, 3 | | press; and wash |
| Proof spirit, 40 | | the marc with spirit |
| | | to 40. |

Dose—3 i to 2.

e. *Vinum Aloes.*

| | | |
|---|------------------|------------------|
| Socotrine aloes, \mathfrak{z} 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ | } Digest 7 days; | |
| Ginger, gr. 80 | | strain; and make |
| Cardamom seeds, gr. 80 | | up to 40. |
| Sherry wine, \mathfrak{z} 40 | | |

Dose—3 i to 2.

2. The *other preparations* in which *aloes* is contained, are as follows:—

| | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|--|
| <i>Barbadoes</i> <i>Aloes</i> in | { | <i>Pilula Cambogia Composita.</i> |
| | | „ <i>Colocynthis Composita.</i> |
| | | „ „ <i>et Hyoscyami.</i> |
| <i>Socotrine</i> <i>Aloes</i> in | { | <i>Extractum Colocynthis Compositum.</i> |
| | | <i>Pilula Rhei Composita.</i> |
| | | <i>Tinctura Benzoini Composita.</i> |

ACTION.—Stomachic tonic. Purgative, acting especially on lower bowel. Hepatic stimulant. Emmenagogue.

2. **Catechu Pallidum—Pale Catechu.**—An *extract* prepared from the leaves and young shoots of *Uncaria Gambir*. *N.O. Cinchonaceæ*. (*Catechu nigrum* or *black catechu* is obtained from *Acacia catechu*, but is *non-officinal*). Catechu consists chiefly of catechu-tannic acid and catechin, with gum, &c. It may be discussed in a tabular arrangement.

| CHARACTERS. | PHARMACY. ACTION. |
|--|--|
| a. Pale catechu occurs in cubes or masses of coherent cubes, about an inch in diameter. | <i>Infusum Catechu.</i> Catechu, gr. 160 Cinnamon, gr. 30 Boiling water, $\frac{3}{4}$ 10 } Infuse half an hour, and strain. <i>Dose</i> — $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 2. |
| b. Externally, it is brown or reddish-brown; internally, yellow. | <i>Pulvis Catechu Compositus.</i> Catechu, 4 Kino, 2 Rhatany, 2 Cinnamon, 1 Nutmeg, 1 } Powder and mix. <i>Dose</i> —gr. 20 to 40. |
| c. Presents a porous texture; and breaks with a dull, earthy fracture. | <i>Tinctura Catechu.</i> Catechu, 2½ Cinnamon, 1 Proof spirit, 20 } Macerate 7 days; strain, press, filter, and make up 20. <i>Dose</i> — $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 2. |
| d. Soluble in cold water (60 per cent.); entirely in boiling water. | <i>Trochisci Catechu.</i> Made in the ordinary way. Each lozenge contains gr. 1. <i>Dose</i> —1 to 6. |
| e. Taste, astringent, bitter, and mucilaginous, followed by slight sweetness. | <i>Incompatibles.</i> —Alkalies; metallic salts; gelatine. |
| f. A solution in boiling water, cooled, does not give a blue colour with iodine=absence of starch, which is used as an adulteration. | <i>ACTION.</i> —Powerful astringent. |

3. **Elaterium.**—A sediment from the expressed juice of the fruit *Ecbalium officinarum* or *Squirting Cucumber*. N.O. **Cucurbitaceæ**. Its active principle is *Elaterin*, which is a neutral glucoside.

PREPARATION.—Cut the nearly-ripe fruit lengthwise, and lightly press out the juice. Strain through a hair-sieve, and set it aside to deposit. Carefully pour off the supernatant liquor; drain the sediment on a linen filter; and dry it on porous tiles with a gentle heat.

CHARACTERS.—There are two recognized varieties of elaterium—English and Maltese, but the former is the better and more reliable. It has the following characters:—

- a. It occurs in small cakes or plates; flat or slightly incurved; about a line thick.
- b. It has a greenish-grey colour; and somewhat resembles vulcanized india-rubber.
- c. Elaterium is of light texture; brittle, with a finely-granular fracture.
- d. It has an acrid and bitter taste.
- e. Half dissolves in boiling rectified spirit; and this solution, concentrated and added to warm solution of potash, yields, on cooling, not less than 20 per cent. of *elaterin*.
- f. Elaterium does not effervesce with acids = absence of *chalk* as an adulteration. It is not injured by light. *Starch* is also used as an adulteration.

PHARMACY. *Officinal Preparation*:—

Pulvis Elaterii Compositus = 1 in 10.

| | |
|------------------|------------------------------|
| Elaterium, 1 | } Powder and mix intimately. |
| Sugar of milk, 9 | |

ACTION.—Hydragogue purgative.

Dose—Of *Elaterium*, gr. $\frac{1}{16}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$; of *Compound Powder*, gr. $\frac{1}{2}$ to 5.

4. **Gutta-Percha.**—The *concrete juice* of *Isonandra gutta*. N.O. **Sapotaceæ**.

CHARACTERS.—a. In tough, flexible pieces.

b. Of light-brown or chocolate colour.

c. Insoluble in water; soluble in chloroform (forming a turbid solution), ether, and bisulphide of carbon.

d. Gutta percha is soft and plastic at 212° , and can then be moulded into any shape, which it retains when cold.

PHARMACY.—*Officinal Preparation.*

Liquor Gutta-Percha.

Gutta-percha, 1
Carbonate of lead, 1
Chloroform, 8

} Dissolve the gutta-percha in $\frac{3}{6}$ of the chloroform;

add the carbonate of lead dissolved in the remainder; shake several times; set aside until the insoluble matter has subsided; and decant the clear liquid.

Liquor gutta-percha is used in the preparation of *Charta Sinapis*.

ACTION.—The solution is protective, a film of gutta-percha remaining after the evaporation of the chloroform. Gutta-percha is much used in surgical practice.

5. **Kino.**—The *inspissated juice* obtained from incisions made in the trunk of *Pterocarpus Marsupium*. **N.O. Leguminosæ.** Consists mainly of kino-tannic acid, with kino-red, gum, etc.

| CHARACTERS. | PHARMACY. ACTION. |
|--|---|
| a. Kino is met with in small, angular fragments. | <i>Pulvis Kino Compositus.</i> Kino, 15 Opium, 1 Cinnamon, 14 } Powder and mix. <i>Dose.</i> —gr. 5 to 20. |
| b. Of reddish-black colour; glistening, ruby-red, and translucent at the edges. | <i>Tinctura Kino.</i> |
| c. Brittle in texture. | Kino, 1 Rectified spirit, 10 } Macerate 7 days; filter; and make up to 10. |
| d. Soluble in water (about 88 per cent.); and in alcohol. | <i>Dose.</i> — $\frac{3}{4}$ to 2. <i>Kino</i> is an ingredient in <i>Pulvis Catechu Compositus.</i> |
| e. Kino has no odour; it possesses a very astringent taste, and tinges the saliva blood-red. | <i>Incompatibles.</i> —Mineral acids; alkalies and their carbonates metallic salts; gelatine. <i>ACTION.</i> —External styptic. Astringent. <i>Dose.</i> —gr. 10 to 30. |

6. **Manna.**—The *concrete saccharine exudation* obtained by incision from the *stem* of *Fraxinus Ornus* and *Rotundifolia*. *N.O.* **Oleaceæ.** It consists chiefly of *Mannite*, with ordinary sugar, and extractive matter, &c.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES:—

- a. Manna forms stalactiform pieces, uneven, curved on one surface.
- b. From 1 to 6 inches long; 1 to 2 inches wide.
- c. Of yellowish-white colour.
- d. Porous and friable.
- e. Has a faint, nauseous odour; sweetish, but rather bitter taste.
- f. Soluble in water (1 in 5); in rectified spirit (1 in 12C).

ACTION.—Nutrient. Laxative. *Dose*—3 2 to 8.

7. **Opium.**—The *juice, inspissated by spontaneous evaporation* obtained by incision from the *unripe capsules* of the poppy—*Papaver Somniferum*. *N.O.* **Papaveraceæ.** Opium is a very complex substance, consisting of alkaloids, acids, neutral principles, &c. (*See* PAPAVERACEÆ).

PREPARATION.—Superficial horizontal incisions are made with a sharp instrument into the unripe capsules, a few days after the fall or the gathering of the petals, taking great care not to penetrate their interior. A milky juice exudes, and the tears are scraped from the capsules, and carefully deposited on a poppy-leaf. When a sufficient quantity has been collected, it is made into a cake or lump, wrapped in poppy-leaves, and placed for a short time to dry in the shade. It soon becomes of a brown colour.

The *non-official* varieties of opium are manipulated in various ways.

CHARACTERS.—There are several known varieties of opium, namely, Turkey, Egyptian, East Indian, Persian, and European. Only the first is *officinal*, and it includes *Smyrna* and *Constantinople Opium*, named according to the port from which it is shipped, that from Smyrna being most commonly imported into this country. Their chief characters may be thus arranged:—

SMYRNA OPIUM.

a. Occurs in irregular lumps, more or less flattened.

b. Weight, $\frac{1}{4}$ to 2 pounds.

c. Is enveloped in the remains of poppy-leaves, and generally covered with the capsules of a species of rumex.

d. When fresh it is soft and plastic; tearing with an irregular, slightly moist, rich brown surface, which shines when rubbed smooth with the finger.

e. Has a peculiar, heavy, narcotic odour.

f. Nauseous, bitter taste.

CONSTANTINOPLE OPIUM.

Occurs in two forms, the one in large irregular cakes, more

or less like the Smyrna opium; the other presenting the following characters:—

a. Flattened cakes of lenticular form.

b. Weight, $\frac{1}{4}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$ pound; 2 to 3 inches in diameter.

c. Covered with a poppy leaf, the midrib of which crosses the middle of each piece; not covered with rumex leaves.

IMPURITIES AND ADULTERATIONS.—Opium should yield, according to the B.P., from 6 to 8 per cent. of morphia, and a *quantitative test* is introduced to determine that this amount is present. Good opium, however, yields from 10 to 12 or 15 per cent. of morphia. It is liable to have its active principles removed before it is sold; and may also contain the following adulterations:—1. Vegetable Extracts. 2. Sugar and Treacle. 3. Mechanical admixtures = sand, clay, stones, bullets, &c. 4. Water.

PHARMACY. I. *Officinal Preparations*:—

It will be well to give a complete list of the preparations which contain opium, with the proper-

tions in each. They may be arranged in groups, thus:—

A. Preparations for External Use.

a. *Emplastrum Opii* = 1 in 10.

| | |
|--------------------------|--|
| Opium, in fine powder, 1 | } Melt the plaster by the steam- or water-bath, and gradually mix the opium. |
| Resin plaster, 9 | |

b. *Linimentum Opii* = 1 of Tincture in 2.

| | |
|----------------------|--------|
| Tincture of opium, 1 | } Mix. |
| Liniment of soap, 1 | |

c. *Unguentum Gallæ cum Opiò*, 1 in 14 $\frac{2}{3}$. (See GALLS.)

B. Preparations for Internal Use.

a. *Confectio opii* = 1 in 40.

| | |
|-----------------------------------|--------|
| Compound powder of opium, gr. 192 | } Mix. |
| Syrup, $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 | |

Dose—gr. 5 to 20.

b. *Extracta* or *Extracts*.

(i) *Extractum Opii*, gr. $\frac{1}{2}$ = gr. 1 of opium.

| | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Opium, in slices, $\frac{3}{4}$ 16 | } Made by three repeated macerations for 24 hours, in O 2 of water, and expression; mixing the liquors; straining through flannel; and evaporating by a water-bath. |
| Water, $\frac{3}{4}$ 120 | |
| Dose—gr. $\frac{1}{2}$ to 1 or more. | |

(ii) *Extractum Opii Liquidum*, m 22 = m 25 of Tincture.

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| Extract of opium, 1 | } Digest the extract in the water for an hour, stirring frequently; add the spirit, and filter. |
| Water, 16 | |
| Rectified spirit, 4 | |

Dose—m 10 to 40.

c. *Pilula* or *Pills*.(i) *Pilula Saponis Composita* = 1 in 6 nearly.

| | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| Opium, 1 | } Powder and mix the |
| Hard soap, 4 | |
| Water, a sufficiency. | |

opium and soap; add
sufficient water to make
a pill mass.

Dose—gr. 3 to 5.(ii) *Pilula Ipecacuanhæ cum Scilla*. Made with Dover's powder = 1 of opium in 23. (See IPECACUANHA). *Dose*—gr. 5 to 10.(iii) *Pilula Plumbi cum Opio* = 1 in 8. (See PLUMBUM). *Dose*—gr. 2 to 4.d. *Pulveres* or *Powders*.(i) *Pulvis Cietæ Aromaticus cum Opio* = 1 in 40. (See CALCIUM). *Dose*—gr. 10 to 40.(ii) *Pulvis Ipecacuanhæ Compositus* = 1 in 10. (See IPECACUANHA). *Dose*—gr. 5 to 10.(iii) *Pulvis Kino Compositus* = 1 in 20. (See KINO). *Dose*—gr. 5 to 10.(iv) *Pulvis Opii Compositus* = 1 in 10.

| | |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| Opium, 3 | } Powder and mix. |
| Black pepper, 4 | |
| Ginger, 10 | |
| Caraway, 12 | |
| Tragacanth, 1 | |

Dose—gr. 2 to 5.

e. *Tincturæ* or *Tinctures*.(i) *Tinctura Camphoræ Composita* = gr. 1 in $\frac{3}{2}$. (See CAMPHOR). *Dose*—℥ 15 to 60.(ii) *Tinctura Opii* = gr. 1 in ℥ 14 $\frac{2}{3}$.

| | |
|------------------------|----------------------------|
| Opium, 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ | } Macerate 7 days; strain, |
| Proof spirit, 20 | |

press, filter, and make up
to 20.

Dose—℥ 5 to 40.

(iii) *Tinctura Opii Ammoniata* = gr. 1 in ℥ 96.

Opium, gr. 100

Saffron, gr. 180

Benzoic acid, gr. 180

Oil of anise, ℥ 60

Strong solution of

ammonia, $\frac{3}{4}$

Rectified spirit, $\frac{3}{16}$

Macerate 7 days in a closed vessel, with occasional agitation; strain; and make up to 20.

Dose— $3\frac{1}{2}$ to 1.

f. *Trochisci Opii* = gr. $\frac{1}{10}$ of *Extract of opium* in each lozenge. Made with extract of opium, tincture of tolu, refined sugar, gum acacia, and extract of liquorice.

Dose—1 to 2.

g. *Vinum Opii* = gr. 1 of *Extract of opium* in ℥ 22.

Extract of opium, $\frac{3}{1}$

Cinnamon, gr. 75

Cloves, gr. 75

Sherry wine, $\frac{3}{20}$

Macerate 7 days, with occasional agitation; and filter.

Dose—℥ 10 to 40.

C. Preparations administered per rectum.

(a) *Enema Opii*.

Tincture of opium, $3\frac{1}{2}$

Mucilage of starch, $\frac{3}{2}$ } Mix.

(b) *Suppositoria Plumbi Composita* = gr. 1 of opium in each. (See PLUMBUM).

2. *Incompatibles*. The chief drugs chemically incompatible with opium are alkaline carbonates; lime-water; salts of lead, iron, copper, mercury, and zinc: liquor arsenicalis; and vegetable astringents. It is often given, however, in combination with some of these incompatibles.

ACTION.—Anodyne and sedative. Cerebral excitant and narcotic. Spinal excitant. Vascular stimulant, followed by sedative effects. Diminishes

all secretions and excretions, except perspiration. Diaphoretic. Pulmonary sedative. Myositic. Aphrodisiac.

Dose—Of *Opium*, gr. $\frac{1}{2}$ to 2. (*See Official Preparations*).

GROUP XVI.—ALKALOIDS.

There are certain alkaloids which are recognized in the B.P. as separate drugs, either alone or in the form of salts. These will now be considered in alphabetical order.

I. **Aconitia** = $C_{30}H_{47}NO_7$.

SOURCE AND PREPARATION.—From *Aconiti Radix*, *N.O. Ranunculaceæ*.

a. Coarsely powdered aconite root is heated to ebullition with *rectified spirit*; then cooled, and macerated for 4 days; and percolated until the root is exhausted.

b. The spirit is mainly distilled off, and the remainder is evaporated.

c. The residual extract is thoroughly mixed with *boiling water*, and on cooling, this is filtered through paper. (An infusion containing *salts of aconitia* is formed).

d. *Solution of ammonia* is added to the filtered liquid in slight excess, and the mixture is gently heated over a water bath. (*Impure aconitia* is precipitated).

e. The precipitate is separated on a filter, dried, coarsely powdered, and macerated in successive portions of pure *ether*, with frequent agitation. The several products are decanted, mixed, and the *ether* distilled off.

f. The dry extract (almost pure aconitia) is dissolved in warm water, acidulated with *sulphuric acid*. (A solution of *sulphate of aconitia* is formed).

g. When cold, diluted *solution of ammonia* is added cautiously to precipitate the aconitia; which is washed on a filter with a small quantity of water; and dried by slight pressure between folds of filtering paper.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES :—

- a.* White; usually amorphous, but may be crystalline.
- b.* Alkaline to test-paper.
- c.* Soluble in cold water (1 in 150); boiling water (1 in 50); much more in alcohol and ether.
- d.* Fusible; when burnt leaves no residue.

PHARMACY.—*Officinal preparation* :—

Unguentum Aconitice.

| | | |
|-----------------------|---|---|
| Aconitia, gr. 8 | } | Dissolve in the spirit, and mix with the lard. |
| Rectified spirit, 3 ½ | | |
| Lard, ℥ 1 | | |

ACTION.—A powerful poison. Only used externally as an anodyne; causes tingling and numbness.

2. **Atropia** = $C_{17}H_{23}NO_3$.

SOURCE AND PREPARATION.—From *Belladonna Radix*. *N.O.* **Atropaceæ**.

a. Recently dried belladonna root, coarsely powdered, is macerated in *rectified spirit* for 24 hours, with frequent stirring; and then exhausted by slow percolation. (This tincture contains *salts of atropia*, with colouring and resinous matters, &c).

b. *Slaked lime* is added, and the tincture shaken. (Colouring matters are precipitated).

c. Filter; add *diluted sulphuric acid* in feeble excess; and filter again. (The excess of lime is neutralized).

d. Three-fourths of the alcohol is distilled off, and water added to the residue, which is rapidly evaporated at a gentle heat, to one-third its volume, and then allowed to cool. (A watery solution of *salts of atropia*, resins, sulphuric acid, and calcic sulphate is formed).

e. Solution of *carbonate of potash* is added very cautiously, with constant stirring, nearly to neutralization. Set aside for 6 hours, (resin precipitated); filter; and add carbonate of potash to a decided alkaline reaction. (*Atropia* is precipitated).

f. The whole is mixed with *chloroform* in a bottle, by frequent brisk agitation, and the mixed liquids poured into a funnel furnished with a stop-cock. (The *chloroform* dissolves the *atropia*).

g. When the chloroform solution subsides, it is drawn off by the stop-cock, and the chloroform distilled off.

h. The residue of *atropia* is dissolved in warm *rectified spirit*; digested with *animal charcoal* (to decolorize it); and the solution filtered, evaporated, and cooled, until colourless crystals are obtained = *atropia*.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES :—

- a. *Atropia* is in colourless acicular crystals.
- b. Soluble in water (1 in 500); in rectified spirit (1 in 8); in ether (1 in 20).
- c. The solution in water is alkaline.
- d. Has a bitter taste.
- e. *Atropia* leaves no ash when burnt with free access of air.
- f. It gives a citron-yellow precipitate with *chloride of gold*.

PHARMACY.—*Official preparations*:—

a. *Atropiæ Sulphas*. This is an important salt of atropia, made in the following way:—

Mix $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Atropia, gr. 120} \\ \text{Water, 3 4} \end{array} \right\}$; and add diluted sulphuric acid gradually, stirring until the alkaloid is dissolved, and the solution is neutral. Evaporate to dryness under 100° .

Sulphate of atropia is a colourless powder; soluble in water; the solution is neutral.

b. *Liquor Atropiæ* = gr. 4 in $\frac{3}{4}$ 1.

$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Atropia, gr. 4} \\ \text{Rectified spirit, 3 1} \\ \text{Water, 3 1} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{Dissolve the atropia in} \\ \text{the spirit, and add} \\ \text{gradually to the water.} \end{array}$

c. *Liquor Atropiæ Sulphatis* = gr. 4 in $\frac{3}{4}$ 1.

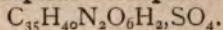
$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Sulphate of atropia, gr. 4} \\ \text{Water, } \frac{3}{4} \text{ 1} \end{array} \right\} \text{Dissolve.}$

d. *Unguentum Atropiæ*.

$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Atropia, gr. 8} \\ \text{Rectified spirit, 3 } \frac{1}{2} \\ \text{Prepared lard, } \frac{3}{4} \text{ 1} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{Dissolve the atropia in} \\ \text{the spirit, and mix} \\ \text{with the lard.} \end{array}$

ACTION.—Local anodyne and sedative. Mydriatic. Checks most secretions, especially saliva, milk, and sweat. Cerebral excitant and narcotic. Respiratory stimulant and sedative. First slows and then quickens cardiac action; in large doses cardiac depressant. Contracts and then dilates vessels. Stimulates muscular coat of intestines, bladder, etc.

3. *Beberia Sulphas*—*Sulphate of Beberia* =



SOURCE AND PREPARATION.—From the bark of *Nectandra Rodiæi*, the Bebeeru tree. *N.O. Lauraceæ*. There are several steps in the process of preparation as follows:—

a. Coarsely powdered *bebeeru bark*, lb 1, is moistened thoroughly with much diluted sulphuric acid,

$\frac{3}{4}$ in C1; allowed to macerate for 24 hours; and then percolated with the remainder of the acidulated water. (A solution of *sulphate of beberia* with colouring matters, &c., is formed.)

b. The solution is concentrated to O1; cooled; *milk of lime* gradually added, with agitation, but not sufficient to neutralize the acid; and the mixture allowed to stand for 2 hours. (Colouring matters are precipitated).

c. Filter through calico; wash the precipitate with a little cold water; and to the filtrate add *solution of ammonia* until it has a faint ammoniacal odour. (*Impure beberia* is precipitated).

d. Collect the precipitate on a cloth; wash with cold water, squeeze, and dry; pulverize; exhaust by boiling with successive portions of *rectified spirit*; and mix them together. (A solution in spirit of nearly pure *beberia*).

e. Add *water* ($\frac{3}{4}$); distil to recover the spirit; and add by degrees, with constant stirring, *diluted sulphuric acid*, till the fluid has a slight acid reaction. (A solution of nearly pure *sulphate of beberia*).

f. Evaporate to dryness; powder; pour on it gradually cold water (O 1), stirring diligently; filter through paper; evaporate to a syrupy consistence; and dry in thin layers on porcelain or glass plates under 140° . Preserve in stoppered bottles.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES:—

1. Sulphate of beberia is in thin scales.
2. Dark-brown in colour; translucent. Yellow when in powder.
3. Soluble in water and alcohol.
4. Has a strong bitter taste.

ACTION.—Bitter tonic. Antiperiodic. Antipyretic. **Dose.**—gr. 1 to 5; gr. 10 to 20 as antiperiodic.

4. **Morphia.**— $C_{17}H_{19}NO_3$.

This is the principal alkaloid present in *Opium*. **N.O. Papaveraceæ.** It is recognized in the B.P. in the form of two salts, namely:—

1. *Morphiæ Hydrochloras*—*Hydrochlorate of Morphia*.— $C_{17}H_{19}NO_3, HCl, 3H_2O$.

2. *Morphiæ Acetas*—*Acetate of Morphia*.— $C_{17}H_{19}NO_3, C_2H_4O_2$.

PREPARATION.—I. The *Hydrochlorate* is the salt directly obtained from opium, and it is prepared by the following process:—

a. Macerate sliced *opium* (℥i) in successive quantities of *cold water*, subjecting it finally to strong pressure; unite the decanted liquors; evaporate to 1 pint; and strain through calico.

(A concentrated infusion of *meconates* and *sulphate of morphia* and *codeia*, with resins, extractive matters, &c.)

b. Add $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Calcic chloride, } \frac{3}{4} \\ \text{Water, } \frac{3}{4} \end{array} \right\}$, and evaporate until the solution becomes solid on cooling.

(*Hydrochlorate of morphia* and *codeia* are formed).

c. Subject the mass to powerful pressure, preserving the dark fluid which exudes. Then triturate the squeezed cake with boiling water; wash it well on a paper filter with more boiling water; evaporate the filtered liquids as before, cool, solidify, and press; and if the mass be still much coloured, repeat this process again, always preserving the expressed fluids.

(The dark liquid contains colouring matters, &c., with a small proportion of alkaloids).

d. Dissolve the pressed cake in *boiling water* ($\frac{3}{4}$ 6); digest with *purified animal charcoal* ($\frac{3}{4}$ 1) for 20 minutes; filter, and wash the filter and charcoal with boiling water.

(The colouring matters are thus removed).

e. Add *solution of ammonia* in slight excess. Collect the precipitate formed as the liquid cools on a paper filter, and wash with cold water until the washings cease to give a precipitate with solution of nitrate silver acidulated by nitric acid.

(*Morphia* is precipitated, *codeia* remains in solution; and the *morphia* is washed free from *codeia*).

f. Diffuse the *morphia* through boiling water ($\frac{2}{3}$ 2) in a porcelain capsule, kept hot; add *dilute hydrochloric acid* carefully, constantly stirring, until the *morphia* is entirely dissolved, and the solution is neutral.

(A solution of pure *hydrochlorate of morphia* is obtained).

g. Cool; crystallize; drain and dry the crystals on filtering paper. More crystals may be obtained by evaporating and cooling.

h. A small quantity of *morphia* may be obtained from the dark liquids, by diluting them with water, precipitating with solution of potash in much excess; filtering; super-saturating the filtrate with hydrochloric acid; digesting with a little animal charcoal, and filtering; and adding solution of ammonia.

2. *Acetate*.—This is prepared from the *hydrochlorate*, by precipitating the *morphia* by *solution of ammonia*; collecting, washing, and dissolving in *dilute acetic acid*; evaporating over a water-bath until it concretes on cooling; drying at a gentle heat; and powdering.

PROPERTIES AND TESTS.—The two salts of *morphia* may be considered together.

1. *Hydrochlorate* is in flexible acicular prisms, white, with a silky lustre. *Acetate* is a white powder.

2. Soluble in water (*acetate* 1 in 6, *hydrochlorate*

1 in 20); and in rectified spirit (*acetate* 1 in 100, *hydrochlorate* 1 in 90).

3. Give a white precipitate with solution of potash, soluble in excess.

4. An orange-red colour is produced when moistened with strong nitric acid.

5. A greenish-blue colour is given with solution of perchloride of iron.

PHARMACY.—1. There are several *officinal preparations* containing morphia, in most cases in the form of *hydrochlorate*. They may be arranged thus in alphabetical order:—

a. Injectio Morphiæ Hypodermica.—A solution of *acetate of morphia* = gr. 1 in $\mathfrak{m}12$. The solution of acetate is prepared from the hydrochlorate by the process above described, and water added to the proper strength.

b. Liquor Morphiæ $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{Acetatis.} \\ \textit{Hydrochloratis.} \end{array} \right.$

These solutions may be considered together, as they are practically made in the same way, only the salt and acid used being different, and each contains gr. 4 in $\frac{3}{4}$ i.

Their preparation may be thus indicated:—

Mix $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Diluted acetic or hydrochloric acid, } \mathfrak{m} 8 \\ \text{Rectified spirit, } 3 2 \\ \text{Water, } 3 6 \end{array} \right.$

Dissolve $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Acetate of morphia, or} \\ \text{Hydrochlorate of morphia} \end{array} \right\}$ gr. 4

c. Suppositoria $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{Morphiæ.} \\ \textit{Morphiæ cum Sapone.} \end{array} \right.$

These preparations both contain the *hydrochlorate* = gr. $\frac{1}{2}$ in each.

Suppositoria Morphiæ $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Benzoated lard,} \\ \text{White wax,} \\ \text{made up with} \quad \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Oil of theobroma.} \end{array} \right. \end{array} \right.$

Suppositoria Morphiae cum Sapone made up with { Glycerine of starch.
Curd soap.
Starch.

d. Trochisci { *Morphiae*.
Morphiae et Ipecacuanhae.

These also contain the *hydrochlorate* = gr. $\frac{1}{36}$ in each lozenge, combined in the latter with *ipecacuanha* = gr. $\frac{1}{12}$.

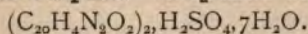
They are made up with { Tincture of tolu.
Refined sugar.
Gum acacia.
Mucilage.

2. *Incompatibles*.—Alkalies and alkaline earths; astringent vegetable infusions and decoctions.

ACTION.—Anodyne. Antispasmodic. Sedative. Narcotic. Morphia differs from opium in being less exciting; less diaphoretic and constipating; and less likely to produce unpleasant after-effects.

Dose—gr. $\frac{1}{16}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$. *Officinal preparations* in proportion. *Injectio*—m 1 to 6.

5. *Quiniæ Sulphas*—**Sulphate of Quinia.**



SOURCE AND PREPARATION.—In the B.P. sulphate of quinine is directed to be made from yellow cinchona bark, *Cinchona Calisaya*; it is also prepared from *Cinchona Lancifolia*. *N.O. Cinchonaceæ*.

a. Thoroughly moisten coarsely-powdered yellow cinchona bark (lb 1) with diluted hydrochloric acid ($\frac{3}{4}$ 3 to O 10); macerate for 24 hours, occasionally stirring; and thoroughly percolate with the acid.

(A solution of *hydrochlorates* of the alkaloids, with colouring matters, etc., is formed).

b. Add solution of soda (O 4); agitate well; allow the precipitate to subside; decant the supernatant

e. Evaporate the liquid to $\frac{3}{8}$; when cold, add solution of ammonia in slight excess, stirring thoroughly; allow the mixture to stand 12 hours.

(*Strychnia* and *brucia*, with other matters, are precipitated).

f. Collect the precipitate on a filter; wash with cold water; dry; boil with successive portions of rectified spirit, till the fluid scarcely tastes bitter; distil off most of the spirit; evaporate to about $\frac{3}{8}$; and set aside to cool.

(*Strychnia*, with a little *brucia*, crystallizes out as a white adherent crust; *brucia* remains in solution).

g. Cautiously pour off the liquid; and wash the crust on a paper filter with $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Rectified Spirit, 4} \\ \text{Water, 1} \end{array} \right\}$ till the washings do not redden with nitric acid.

(*Brucia* is thus separated).

h. Dissolve by boiling in rectified spirit, $\frac{3}{8}$ 1; and set aside to crystallize.

i. More crystals may be obtained by evaporating the mother liquor.

PROPERTIES AND TESTS:—

1. *Strychnia* occurs in minute crystals=right square octahedra or 4-sided prisms; colourless.

2. It has no odour; an intensely bitter taste.

3. Very slightly soluble in cold water, (1 in 5760), but imparts to the water its bitter taste; boiling water (1 in 2500); soluble in boiling rectified spirit and chloroform; insoluble in cold alcohol, ether, and alkalies.

4. Fusible, but not volatile with heat; leaves no ash when burned with free access of air.

5. Strychnine is not coloured by sulphuric or nitric acid. With sulphuric acid and bichromate of potash it acquires an intensely violet hue, speedily passing through red to yellow.

PHARMACY.—*Officinal Preparation*:—

Liquor Strychniæ = gr. 4 in $\frac{2}{3}$ l.

Strychnia, gr. 4

Dilute hydrochloric acid, ℥ 6

Rectified spirit, 3 2

Water, 3 6

Dissolve the strychnia in the acid with $\frac{3}{4}$ of water by heat; add the spirit and remainder of water.

Dose—℥ 4 to 10.

ACTION.—Stomachic and general tonic. Spinal stimulant, exciting reflex activity, and ultimately causing tetanic spasms. Respiratory stimulant. Cardiac stimulant and tonic. *Dose*—gr. $\frac{1}{30}$, gradually increased.

7. **Veratria** = $C_{32}H_{52}N_2O_8$ (not quite pure).

SOURCE AND PREPARATION.—From Cevadilla, the dried fruit of *Assagræa Officinalis*. *N.O.* **Melan-thaceæ**.

a. Separate the seeds from Cevadilla (lb2), and grind them in a coffee-mill.

b. Make into a thick paste with *rectified spirit*, and percolate until the spirit ceases to be coloured.

(A *tincture* containing *gallate of veratria*, resins, &c., is formed).

c. Concentrate by distillation so long as no deposit forms; and pour the residue, while hot, into twelve times its volume of cold water.

(Resins are precipitated).

d. Filter through calico; wash the residue until the fluid ceases to precipitate with ammonia; and add *liquor ammoniæ* in slight excess.

(Impure *veratria* is precipitated).

e. Collect the precipitate on a filter, and wash it till the water passes through colourless. Diffuse

the moist precipitate through water ($\frac{3}{4}$ 12), and add gradually *hydrochloric acid*, diligently stirring, to make the fluid feebly acid.

(A solution of impure *hydrochlorate of veratria* is formed).

f. Digest with *purified animal charcoal* (gr. 60) at a gentle heat for 20 minutes, filter, and cool.

(The solution is decolorized).

g. Add *solution of ammonia* in slight excess; collect the precipitate; and wash it until the washings cease to be affected by nitrate of silver acidulated with nitric acid. Dry by filtering paper, and then by gentle heat. (*Veratria* is thus obtained).

PROPERTIES AND TESTS.

1. *Veratria* is in the form of amorphous, pulverulent masses; pale-grey.

2. It has no odour, but is powerfully irritating to the nostrils.

3. The taste is strongly and persistently bitter and acrid.

4. Insoluble in water; soluble in boiling water (1 in 1000); rectified spirit (1 in 11); ether (1 in 6); readily in dilute acids.

5. Strong sulphuric acid changes *veratria* successively to yellow, blood-red, and violet.

PHARMACY.—*Officinal preparation*.—

Unguentum Veratriæ.

| | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|
| Veratria, gr. 8 | } Rub the veratria and | |
| Olive oil, $3\frac{1}{2}$ | | oil together, and mix |
| Prepared lard, $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 | | with the lard. |

ACTION.—Local anodyne. Internally, powerful emetic and drastic purgative, causing severe irritation. Vascular depressant.

GROUP XVII.—NEUTRAL PRINCIPLES.

1. **Digitalinum—Digitaline.**

SOURCE AND PREPARATION.—From the leaves of *Digitalis Purpurea*. *N.O. Scrophulariaceæ*.

a. Digest coarsely powdered *digitalis* ($\frac{3}{4}$ 40), with *rectified spirit* (C1) for 24 hours, at a temperature of 120° ; percolate with this and another gallon; distil and evaporate.

(An *extract* is formed containing *digitaline*, extractive and colouring matters, &c.).

b. Mix the extract with $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Water, } \frac{3}{4} 5 \\ \text{Acetic Acid, } \frac{3}{4} \frac{1}{2} \end{array} \right\}$; digest the solution with *purified animal charcoal* ($\frac{3}{4}$ $\frac{1}{4}$); filter, and dilute the filtrate to O1.

(A solution is formed containing *digitaline*, and colouring matters, with free acetic acid; this is decolorized).

c. Add *solution of ammonia* nearly to neutralization; and then $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Tannic acid, gr. 160} \\ \text{Water, } \frac{3}{4} 3. \end{array} \right.$

(Impure *digitaline* is precipitated).

d. Wash the precipitate; mix it with a small quantity of *rectified spirit* and *oxide of lead* ($\frac{3}{4}$ $\frac{1}{4}$); and rub them together in a mortar.

(Tannic acid is removed as *plumbic tannate*).

e. Heat for an hour at 160° with *rectified spirit* ($\frac{3}{4}$ 4); and add *purified animal charcoal* ($\frac{3}{4}$ $\frac{1}{4}$).

(Colouring matter is removed).

f. Filter; distil off the spirit carefully by the heat of a water-bath; and wash the residue repeatedly with pure ether.

(Oily matters are removed; *digitaline* remains).

PROPERTIES AND TESTS:—

1. *Digitaline* occurs in the form of small scales or porous mamillated masses.

2. It has a white or yellowish colour.
3. It is inodorous, but powerfully irritates the nostrils; has an intensely bitter taste.
4. Almost insoluble in water and pure ether; readily soluble in spirit; soluble in acids, but does not form neutral compounds with them.
5. Digitaline leaves no residue when burned with free access of air.

ACTION.—(See DIGITALIS). Dose—gr. $\frac{1}{60}$.

2. **Santoninum**—**Santonin** ($C_{15}H_{18}O_3$).

SOURCE AND PREPARATION.—From the unexpanded flower-heads of *Artemisia Santonica*. N.O. **Compositæ**.

a. Boil bruised *Santonica*, ℥i, with $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Slaked lime, } \mathfrak{z} \ 5 \\ \text{Water, C } 1 \end{array} \right.$ for an hour; strain, and press. Repeat the process with $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Slaked lime, } \mathfrak{z} \ 2 \\ \text{Water, C } \frac{1}{2} \end{array} \right.$. Mix the liquids.

(A solution of *santonin* and oily matters, in combination with lime, is formed).

b. Allow the mixture to settle; decant the fluid; evaporate to O $2\frac{1}{2}$; while hot, add *hydrochloric acid*, with diligent stirring, until the fluid has become slightly but permanently acid; and set aside for 5 days.

(*Santonin* is precipitated; oil separates on the surface).

c. Skim off the oil; carefully decant the fluid; collect the precipitate on a paper filter; and wash it in succession with cold water, diluted *solution of ammonia* ($\mathfrak{z} \ \frac{1}{2}$ to $\mathfrak{z} \ 5$), and again with cold water.

(Acids and colouring matters are removed).

d. Separate and dry the precipitate; mix it with *purified animal charcoal* (gr. 60); digest with *rectified spirit* ($\mathfrak{z} \ 9$) for half an hour, and boil for 10

minutes; filter while hot; wash the charcoal with boiling spirit ($\frac{2}{3}$ 1); set aside the filtrate for 2 days in a cool dark place to crystallize. More crystals may be obtained by concentrating the mother-liquor.

(*Santonin* crystallizes out).

e. Drain the crystals; purify by re-dissolving in boiling spirit, and re-crystallizing; and dry on filtering paper in the dark.

PROPERTIES AND TESTS:—

1. *Santonin* occurs in flat rhombic prisms.
2. It is colourless, but becomes *yellow* by exposure to light.
3. It has a feebly bitter taste.
4. Scarcely soluble in cold water; sparingly in boiling water; abundantly in chloroform and boiling rectified spirit, in fatty oils, and in solutions of the fixed alkalies, forming definite salts.
5. *Santonin* is fusible and sublimable with moderate heat.

ACTION.—Anthelmintic. *Dose.*—gr. 1 to 6 or 8.

GROUP XVIII.—SPECIAL ORGANIC ACIDS.

In this group are included certain acids derived from the vegetable kingdom, which have peculiar physiological actions and therapeutic uses.

- I. { **Acidum Gallicum**—**Gallic Acid**— $\text{H}_3\text{C}_7\text{H}_3\text{O}_2$.
Acidum Tannicum—**Tannic acid** or
Tannin— $\text{C}_{27}\text{H}_{22}\text{O}_{17}$.

SOURCE AND PREPARATION.—These two acids are obtained from *gall-nuts*, the excrescences formed

by an insect (*Diplolepis Gallæ Tinctoriæ*) on the small twigs of the **Quercus Infectoria**.

N.O. Cupuliferæ.

Tannic acid exists in gall-nuts in the proportion of about 35 per cent.; gallic acid only amounts to about 5 per cent., but it is produced by the decomposition of tannic acid through the action of a nitrogenous ferment in the galls, and this explains the difference in the methods adopted for the preparation of the two acids. These methods may be thus contrasted:—

| TANNIC ACID, | GALLIC ACID. |
|---|--|
| <p>a. Expose <i>powdered galls</i> to a damp atmosphere for 3 days, and then make a paste with <i>ether</i>.</p> <p>b. In 24 hours submit this to strong pressure; powder the pressed cake; again form a paste with ether mixed with $\frac{1}{10}$th its bulk of water; and press as before.</p> <p>c. Evaporate the mixed expressed liquids, first spontaneously, and subsequently by a little heat, to the consistency of a soft extract; and dry under 212°.</p> | <p>a. Make a thick paste of <i>galls</i> (lb 1) with water; and keep it moistened for 6 weeks, at a temperature of between 60° and 70°, adding water when required.</p> <p>b. Boil for 20 minutes with <i>water</i> ($\frac{3}{4}$ 45); strain through calico; collect and drain the deposit which forms on cooling.</p> <p>c. Press strongly between folds of filtering paper; and redissolve in <i>boiling water</i> ($\frac{3}{4}$ 10).</p> <p>d. When the fluid has cooled to 80°, pour it off from the crystals formed; wash these with ice-cold water; and dry, first by filtering paper, and finally, by heat under 100°.</p> |

PROPERTIES AND TESTS.—These may also be presented in a tabular form, in order to indicate in what respects the two acids resemble and differ from each other.

TANNIC ACID.

GALLIC ACID.

a. In vesicular masses or thin scales.

b. Pale-yellow colour; glistering.

c. Strongly astringent taste.

d. Readily soluble in water (10 in 8); rectified spirit (10 in 8); very sparingly in ether; glycerine (1 in 3) or if warmed (1 in 2).

e. Bluish-black colour with persalts of iron.

f. Yellowish-white precipitates with gelatine and albumen; also precipitates alkaloïds.

g. Heated with free access of air, it partly melts, swells up, blackens, and finally burns away, leaving no residue.

h. Changed by the action of a ferment, and also by the action of alkalies or acids, into gallic acid and glucose.

a. In minute crystals, = acicular prisms or needles.

b. Generally pale-fawn colour; sometimes nearly white.

c. Taste much less astringent.

d. Much less soluble in water (1 in 100); boiling water (1 in 3); rectified spirit (1 in 8).

c. Bluish-black precipitate with persalts of iron.

f. No precipitate with gelatine, albumen, or alkaloids.

g. Changed by heating into pyrogalllic acid; leaves no residue when burned with free access of air.

PHARMACY.—I. *Officinal Preparations*:—

The officinal preparations are chiefly made from *tannic acid*, there being only one of *gallic acid*. They may be arranged thus:—

a. *Glycerinum* { *Acidi Gallici*
 Acidi Tannici }. Made respec-
tively by rubbing together { Gallic acid } 3
 Tannic acid } 4
with Glycerine, 3 4, and then dissolving by gentle
heat.

b. Suppositoria Acidi Tannici.

Made with $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Benzoated lard} \\ \text{White wax} \\ \text{Oil of Theobroma} \end{array} \right\}$.

Each suppository = gr. 15, and contains Tannic acid = gr. 3.

c. Suppositoria Acidi Tannici cum Sapone.

Made with $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Glycerine of Starch.} \\ \text{Curd Soap.} \\ \text{Starch.} \end{array} \right\}$ Tannic acid = gr. 3. in each.

d. Trochisci Acidi Tannici. Made with sugar, gum, &c.; and Tincture of Tolu. Each lozenge contains gr. $\frac{1}{2}$ of tannic acid.

2. *Incompatibles.* Of *tannic acid*, mineral acids; alkalis; salts of antimony, lead, and silver; per-salts of iron; vegetable alkaloids; gelatine; and emulsions.

Of *gallic acid*, metallic salts; spirits of nitre.

ACTION.—Powerful astringent and styptic. *Tannic acid* acts best locally; *gallic acid* is preferable as an internal astringent.

Dose—gr. 2 to 10, 15, or more.

2. **Acidum Benzoicum — Benzoic Acid** = $\text{HC}_7\text{H}_5\text{O}_2$.

SOURCE AND PREPARATION.—From benzoin, a balsamic resin obtained from **Styrax Benzoin**. *N.O. Styracaceæ*. The acid is separated from the benzoin by sublimation, and is then condensed.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES:—

1. Benzoic acid is in light, feathery, flexible, crystalline plates and needles.
2. Its colour is nearly white.
3. It has an agreeable aromatic odour, like benzoin.
4. Benzoic acid is sparingly soluble in water (1 in 400); boiling water (1 in 12); readily in

rectified spirit (1 in 3); also in solution of the caustic alkalies and lime, from which it is precipitated by hydrochloric acid, unless very dilute.

5. It melts, boils, and finally sublimes with heat.

PHARMACY.—Benzoic acid is used in making *Benzoate of Ammonia*.

ACTION.—Stimulant to mucous membranes. Stimulant expectorant. Diuretic, and makes the urine more acid, passing out as hippuric acid. Antiseptic.

Dose—gr. 5 to 30.

GROUP XIX.—SPECIAL PREPARATIONS.

There are a few preparations in the B.P., which cannot be classified under any of the foregoing groups, and which must be considered individually; but some of them will need little more than to be mentioned.

1. **Pyroxylin—Gun-Cotton.** This is made by immersing Cotton Wool, 1, in $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Sulphuric acid, 5} \\ \text{Nitric acid, 5} \end{array} \right\}$ for 3 minutes; washing with water until the washings give no precipitate with barium chloride; draining on filtering paper; and drying in a water-bath.

PHARMACY.—Gun-cotton is introduced into the B.P. for the purpose of making Collodion and Collodion Flexile.

2. { **Collodion.**
Collodion Flexile or Flexible Collodion.

PREPARATION.—*Collodion* is prepared by dissolving pyroxylin in $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Ether, 2} \\ \text{Rectified spirit, 30.} \end{array} \right.$

Mucilage of starch is in all the officinal *Enemata* except one (Tobacco).

ACTION.—Demulcent. Nutrient.

7. **Theriaca—Treacle.** The uncrystallized residue of the refining of sugar.

Saccharum Purificatum—Refined Sugar. The crystalline refined juice from the stem of **Saccharum officinarum.** *N.O. Graminaceæ.*

CHARACTERS.—*Treacle* is a well-known thick, brown, very sweet, fermentable syrup.

Refined sugar or “lump sugar” is in conical loaves, compact, white, and crystalline.

PHARMACY.—1. *Officinal Preparation* :—

| | | |
|----------------|---|----------------------|
| <i>Syrupus</i> | { | Refined Sugar, lb. 5 |
| Sp. gr. 1.33 | | Water, O 2. |

Dissolve by heat, and after cooling add water to make the weight = lb 7½.

2. *Treacle* is used in the preparation of certain pill-masses. *Sugar* is an ingredient of many confections, lozenges, mixtures, pills, powders, syrups, &c., to give cohesion or consistence, to suspend ingredients, to preserve from chemical changes, or to act as a flavouring agent.

ACTION.—*Treacle* is aperient. *Sugar* is nutrient, and demulcent in the form of syrup.

THE ANIMAL KINGDOM.

The therapeutic agents derived from the Animal kingdom may be conveniently discussed according to the following plan:—

I. LIVING ANIMAL.

1. **Hirudo—Leech.** There are two kinds of leeches, namely, (a). *Sanguisuga Medicinalis*, the *speckled leech*; which has a greenish-yellow belly, spotted with black. (b). *S. Officinalis*, the *green leech*, in which the belly is olive-green and not spotted. Class, *Annelida*. They are collected in Spain, France, Italy, and Hungary. Leeches are used for the local removal of blood, each drawing from 1 to 2 drachms.

II. DEAD INSECTS.

1. **Cantharis—Cantharides.** The dried *Cantharis vesicatoria*, *Blister Beetle*, or *Spanish Fly*. Order, *Coleoptera*. Chiefly collected in Russia, Sicily, and Hungary. These insects swarm on the trees about May or June, and are collected by shaking the branches, or brushing them off by masked persons, and catching them in linen cloths; they are then killed by plunging them into boiling vinegar, and afterwards dried.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES:—

- a. Cantharides is from 8 to 10 lines long
- b. It presents 2 wing-covers (*elytræ*), of a shining metallic-green colour; under which are two membranous transparent wings.

c. The powder is greyish-brown, and contains shiny green particles of the elytræ.

d. The odour is peculiar, strong, and disagreeable.

e. Spanish fly has a burning taste.

COMPOSITION.—The chief constituents of cantharides are:—

a. *Cantharidine*, the active principle—a crystalline, volatile substance; chiefly soluble in ether, chloroform, and glacial acetic acid.

b. Oily and fatty principles.

c. Green and yellow colouring matters.

ADULTERATIONS.—Coloured glass tubes and beads. The golden beetle. The powder should be free from mites.

PHARMACY.—*Officinal Preparations*:—

a. *Acetum Cantharidis*.—Intense brown.

(i) Digest for two hours at 200° { Cantharides, in powder, 2
Glacial acetic acid, 2
Acetic acid, 13.

(ii) Percolate when cold; pour acetic acid, 5, over the residuum; press; and make the whole liquid up to 20 with acetic acid.

b. *Charta Epispastica*—*Blistering paper*.

(i) Digest in a water-bath for 2 hours, stirring constantly { White wax, 4
Spermaceti, $1\frac{1}{2}$
Olive oil, 2
Resin, $\frac{3}{4}$
Cantharides in powder, 2
Water, 6.

(ii) Strain; and separate the plaster from the watery fluid.

(iii) Melt the plaster in a shallow vessel, and mix Canada balsam, $\frac{1}{4}$.

(iv) Pass one surface of strips of paper over the surface of the hot liquid, so that it shall receive a thin coating of plaster.

c. Emplastrum Cantharidis—Blistering plaster.

| | | | | | |
|------|---|----------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| Melt | { | Yellow wax, $7\frac{1}{2}$ | } Stir in Cantharides, 12, | | |
| | | Suet, $7\frac{1}{2}$ | | in very fine powder, and | |
| | | Resin, 3 | | | continue stirring until |
| | | Lard, 6 | | | |

d. Emplastrum Calefaciens.

(i) Infuse for { Cantharides, in coarse powder, 1 } ;
 6 hours { Boiling water, 5 } ;
 strain ; press through calico ;
 and evaporate to $\frac{1}{3}$.

| | | | | | |
|----------|---|----------------------------|-------------|----------|-----------|
| (ii) Add | { | Expressed oil of nutmeg, 1 | } Melt, and | | |
| | | Yellow wax, 1 | | stir all | |
| | | Resin, 1 | | | together. |
| | | Soap plaster, 13 | | | |
| | | Resin plaster, 8 | | | |

e. Liquor Epispasticus—Blistering fluid.

Macerate for { Cantharides, in } and percolate
 24 hours { powder, 8 } , with ether to
 Acetic acid, 4 } 20.

f. Tinctura Cantharidis.

| | | |
|------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| Cantharides, in coarse | } Macerate 7 days ; strain ; | |
| powder, 1 | | press ; filter ; and make |
| Proof spirit, 80. | | up to 80. |

g. Unguentum Cantharidis.

(i) Digest { Cantharides, 1 } , and then for $\frac{1}{4}$
 for 12 hours { Olive oil, 6 } ; hour at 212° .

(ii) Strain through muslin with strong pressure ;
 add to Yellow Wax, 1, melted ; and stir till cold.

ACTION.—Rubefacient or vesicant. Internally
 diuretic ; spinal stimulant ; aphrodisiac.

Dose.—Of tincture, $\mathfrak{m}5$ to 20.

2. **Coccus—Cochineal.** The dried female insect, *Coccus Cacti*. Class *Hemiptera*. Reared on plantations of the Nopal Cactus in Mexico and Teneriffe. When the female insects are fecundated, they are swept off the trees, killed by immersion in boiling water, and dried. They are about 2 lines long; ovate and plano-convex; black or greyish-white; and wrinkled. Cochineal contains a colouring matter, known as *carmine*, which is a dibasic acid—*carminic acid*. The powder is puce-coloured.

PHARMACY.—1. *Officinal Preparation* :—

Tinctura Cocci.

| | |
|-------------------------|---|
| Cochineal, in powder, 1 | } Macerate 7 days; strain; and make up to 20. |
| Proof spirit, 8. | |

Dose.—m 30 to 90.

2. *Cochineal* is contained in :—

Tinctura Cardamomi Composita.

Tinctura Cinchonæ Composita.

ACTION.—Chiefly used as a colouring agent. Supposed to act as a sedative in whooping-cough.

III. PARTS OF ANIMALS, MODIFIED OR PREPARED.

1. **Adeps Præparatus—Prepared lard.** The purified internal fresh fat of the abdomen of the Hog—*Sus Scrofa*, belonging to the *Ungulata*. It is purified by removing the attached membranes; washing with cold water; straining and draining; melting under 212° ; and again straining through flannel.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES :—

- a. Lard is a white, soft, fatty substance.
- b. It melts at about 100°.
- c. It should not have a rancid odour.
- d. Entirely soluble in ether and oil of turpentine.
- e. Consists chiefly of stearine, with some oleine.
- f. Lard is liable to be adulterated with salt and starch. If it contains water, it tends to become mouldy.

PHARMACY.—1. *Officinal Preparation* :—

Adeps Benzoatus. Prevents rancidity.

| | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Prepared lard, lb i | } Heat for 2 hours in a water-bath, and strain. |
| Benzoin, coarsely powdered, gr. 160 | |

2. *Lard* is contained in most ointments, and in curd soap. *Benzoated lard* is used for making suppositories; and in the ointment of galls, lead, sulphur, and zinc.

ACTION.—Emollient. Protective.

2. **Sevum Præparatum** — **Prepared Suet**.

The internal fat of the abdomen of the sheep—*Ovis Aries*, belonging to the *Ungulata*. It is purified by melting, and straining through coarse linen or flannel. Suet is white, smooth, almost odourless; fusible at 103°; and composed almost entirely of stearine, with a little oleine and palmitine, being the hardest of all the solid fats.

Suet is contained in Emplastrum Cantharidis and Unguentum Hydrargyri.

3. **Castoreum**—**Castor**. The dried preputial follicles and their secretions of *Castor Fiber*, the *Beaver*, belonging to *Rodentia*, imported from Hudson's Bay. The oil-sacks are rejected.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES :—

a. The follicles are in pairs, united by a common duct.

b. Each follicle is pear-shaped or fig-shaped; and about 3 inches long.

c. It is firm and heavy; full and plump, or wrinkled.

d. It has a brown or greyish-black colour.

e. The secretion has a strong peculiar odour; and consists of *castorine*, a white crystalline fatty principle, and a *volatile oil*. Salicine, carbolic acid, and carbonate of ammonia are also said to be present. The contents of the follicles should be in great part soluble in rectified spirit and ether.

PHARMACY.—*Officinal Preparation* :—

Tinctura Castorei.

| | |
|----------------------|--|
| Castor, in coarse | } Macerate 7 days; strain; and make up to 20. |
| powder, 1 | |
| Rectified spirit, 20 | |

Dose— $3\frac{1}{2}$ to 1.

ACTION.—Stimulant. Antispasmodic.

4. **Ichthyocolea**—**Isinglass** is recognised in the *Appendix* of the B.P. This substance is the swimming-bladder of the *Sturgeon*, dried, and cut into shreds. It consists of gelatine. A solution is employed as a test for tannic acid. It is nutritious and demulcent.

IV. SECRETIONS OR THEIR CONSTITUENTS.

1. **Lac**—**Milk**. Fresh milk from the *Cow*, *Bos Taurus*, belonging to *Ungulata*. It is only used in the B.P. in making *Mistura Scammonii*.

2. **Saccharum Lactis**—**Sugar of Milk**. A crystallized sugar—*Lactose*, obtained from the whey of cow's milk by evaporation. It is in cakes or fragments; white or greyish-white and translucent; hard, and gritty when chewed; faintly sweet. Soluble in water (1 in 5); boiling water, (1 in 3); slightly in rectified spirit.

Sugar of milk is only used in the B.P. to divide the dose of elaterium in *Pulvis Elaterii Compositus*.

3. **Mel—Honey.** A saccharine secretion deposited in the honey-comb by the *Hive bee—Apis Mellifica*, belonging to *Hymenoptera*. Its characters are sufficiently well-known. It is liable to be adulterated with starch.

PHARMACY.—1. *Officinal Preparations* :—

a. *Mel depuratum*—Clarified honey.

b. *Mel boracis* (see BORAX).

c. *Oxymel*.

| | |
|--------------------|--|
| Clarified honey, 8 | } Liquefy the honey by heat, and mix with the other ingredients. |
| Acetic acid, 1 | |
| Water, 1 | |

Dose—3 i to 2.

2. *Clarified honey* is contained in several Confections.

ACTION.—Demulcent. Laxative. Also as a flavouring agent.

4. **Cera Flava et Alba—Yellow and White Wax.** The honey-comb melted in boiling water and cooled constitutes *yellow wax*. When this is bleached by exposing it to moisture, air, and light, it forms *white wax*. The appearances of these two forms of wax are sufficiently familiar. They should not be unctuous to the touch. They are soluble in oil of turpentine; not in cold alcohol. They should not melt under 140° and 150° respectively. They are liable to be adulterated with lard, suet, tallow, resin, and starch.

PHARMACY.—*Yellow wax* is used as an ingredient in several ointments and plasters. The ointments keep for a longer time without becoming rancid, than if made with white wax. (Squire).

| | | |
|---|---|----------------------|
| <i>White wax</i> is an ingredient in | { | Unguentum Cetacei |
| | | „ Plumbi Subacetatis |
| | | Compositum |
| | | „ Simplex; |

in several suppositories; and in Charta Epispastica.

Unguentum Simplex.

| | | |
|------------------|---|--|
| White wax, 2 | } | Melt together, and stir <i>till</i> <i>the mixture becomes solid.</i> |
| Prepared lard, 3 | | |
| Almond oil, 3 | | |

ACTION.—Emollient. Chiefly employed to give consistence.

5. **Cetaceum—Spermaceti.** A white concretion prepared from the oily matter contained in cavities in the head of the *Physeter Macrocephalus*, or *Sperm Whale*, belonging to the *Cetacea*. It is separated from the sperm-oil by cooling, filtration, and pressure; and is afterwards purified by melting and straining. It consists of nearly pure *Cetine* or *palmitate of cetyl*.

CHARACTERS AND PROPERTIES:—

- a. Spermaceti is a crystalline, fatty substance, but scarcely unctuous to the touch.
- b. It is pearly-white, glistening, translucent.
- c. It has but little taste or odour.
- d. It can be powdered by adding a little rectified spirit.
- e. It should not melt under 100°.
- f. Soluble in fixed and volatile oils and fats; in boiling ether; and in boiling alcohol.

PHARMACY.—I. *Officinal Preparation:—**Unguentum Cetacei.*

| | | |
|----------------|---|---|
| Spermaceti, 5 | } | Melt, and stir <i>till the mixture</i> <i>cools.</i> |
| White wax, 2 | | |
| Almond oil, 20 | | |

2. Spermaceti is contained in Charta Epispastica.

ACTION.—Emollient and demulcent. Chiefly used externally.

6. **Pepsina.** A nitrogenous substance, one of the active constituents of gastric juice, prepared from the mucous lining of the fresh and healthy stomach of the pig, sheep, or calf. It is made by cleansing the mucous membrane; scraping it

with a blunt knife or other suitable instrument; and drying the viscid pulp thus obtained under 100° . Pepsine thus prepared is a light yellowish-brown powder; with a faint odour, and slightly saline taste; very little soluble in water or spirit.

Two grains with $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Water, } \frac{3}{4} \text{ i} \\ \text{Hydrochloric acid, m 5} \end{array} \right\}$ will digest 100 grains of hard-boiled white of egg, in thin shavings, when kept at 98° for 4 hours.

ACTION.—Digestant. Dose—gr. 2 to 5.

7. **Fel Bovinum Purificatum**—Fresh Ox-bile.

Prepared by agitating $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Fresh ox-gall, 1} \\ \text{Rectified spirit, 2} \end{array} \right\}$;

setting aside for 12 hours; decanting; and evaporating over a water-bath to a pill-consistence. Ox-gall is a yellowish-green substance; with a sweet and bitter taste; soluble in water and spirit; insoluble in ether.

ACTION.—Laxative. Substitute for bile. Dose—gr. 2 to 6.

8. **Moschus**—**Musk**. The inspissated and dried secretion from the preputial follicles of the *Moschus Moschiferus*, the *Musk Deer*, belonging to *Ungulata*. Each sac yields from 103 to 200 grains. There are two varieties of musk imported, namely, China or Thibet, which is the better, and Russian or Siberian. It is in the form of small, irregular, concreted grains; reddish-black; rather unctuous; with a powerful, peculiar, diffusible, and persistent odour; and a bitter aromatic taste. Musk is soluble in water and alcohol. It consists of a peculiar odorous principle, volatile oil, ammonia, cholesterine, stearine, oleine, albumen, and salts.

ACTION.—Stimulant. Antispasmodic.

Dose—gr. 5 to 10.

V. PREPARATION FROM AN ORGAN.

1. **Oleum Morrhue**—**Cod liver oil.** The oil extracted from the fresh liver of *Gadus Morrhua*, the *Cod*. Class, *Pisces*. It is obtained by the application of a heat not exceeding 180°. Cod liver oil contains glycerine; oleic, margaric, butyric, and acetic acids; gaduin, a peculiar substance; biliary principles; a small quantity of iodine; and traces of bromine, chlorine, phosphorus, and salts. The best oil is pale-yellow, but it varies in colour to dark-brown. It has a more or less fishy odour and taste.

ACTION,—Nutrient. Tonic. Alterative.

Dose—3 i to 8.

VI. OVUM—EGG.

The egg of *Gallus Banckiva*, the *Common Fowl*, Class, *Aves*, is officinal in the following forms:—

1. **Albumen Ovi**—**White of egg**, which is in the *Appendix* of the B.P., as a *test-solution* to determine the absence of metaphosphoric acid from dilute phosphoric acid. It is also a valuable demulcent and nutrient.

2. **Vitellus Ovi**—**Yolk of egg**, which is an ingredient in *Mistura Spiritus Vini Gallici*; and is employed for making emulsions.

SECTION IV.

SUMMARY OF OFFICINAL PREPARATIONS.

The officinal preparations of the B.P. have already been considered as regards:—1. Their general nature, and the methods of preparing the several groups; 2. The preparations of particular drugs. It is proposed now to give a summary of the members belonging to each group, also indicating the proportions of their important ingredients, where needed; and the doses of the preparations used for internal administration.

I. ACETA—VINEGARS.

1. Acetum—British vinegar.
2. „ Cantharidis (for external use).
3. „ Scillæ. Dose— $\text{m}15$ to 40.

II. AQUÆ—WATERS.

1. Aqua Destillata—Distilled water.
2. Solutions { *a.* Aqua Chloroformi } Dose—
in water { *b.* „ Camphoræ } $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 to 2.
3. Waters containing volatile oils, and prepared by distillation. (See VOLATILE OILS).

III. CATAPLASMATA—POULTICES.

1. Simple { *a.* Cataplasma Fermenti.
 b. „ Lini.
2. Containing { *a.* Cataplasma Carbonis.
special ingre- *b.* „ Conii.
dients. *c.* „ Sinapis.
 d. „ Sodæ Chloratæ.

| | | | | |
|-------------------------|----|---|------------------------------|-------------------|
| Compound Decoctions. | 2. | { | a. Decoctum Aloes Compositum | |
| | | | b. „ Sarsæ Compositum | $\frac{3}{4}$ 2 |
| | | | | $\frac{3}{4}$ 3-6 |

VII. EMPLASTRA—PLASTERS.

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| 1. Simple plasters, used for protec- tion or support. | { | a. Emplastrum Cerati Saponis. |
| | | b. „ Ferri. |
| | | c. „ Plumbi. |
| | | d. „ Resinæ. |
| | | e. „ Saponis. |
| 2. Stimulant and alterative plasters. | { | a. Emplastrum Ammoniaci cum Hydrargyro. |
| | | b. „ Galbani. |
| | | c. „ Hydrargyri. |
| | | d. „ Picis. |
| | | e. „ Plumbi Iodidi. |
| 3. Rubefacient or vesicant plasters. | { | a. Emplastrum Calefaciens. |
| | | b. „ Cantharidis. |
| 4. Anodyne or sedative plasters. | { | a. Emplastrum Belladonnæ. |
| | | b. „ Opii. |

VIII. ENEMATA—CLYSTERS.

1. Enema Aloes, gr. 40 in $\frac{3}{4}$ 10.
2. „ Assafoetidæ, gr. 30 in $\frac{3}{4}$ 4 of *cold water*.
3. „ Magnesiæ Sulphatis, $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 in $\frac{3}{4}$ 15 with
Olive Oil, $\frac{3}{4}$ 1.
4. „ Opii, $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 of Tincture in $\frac{3}{4}$ 2.
5. „ Tabaci, gr. 20 in $\frac{3}{4}$ 8 of *boiling water*.
6. „ Terebinthinæ, $\frac{3}{4}$ 1 in $\frac{3}{4}$ 15.

IX. ESSENTIÆ—ESSENCES.

| | | |
|--------------------|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. Essentia Anisi. | { | Solutions of <i>Volatile Oils</i> in |
| 2. „ Menthæ | | <i>Rectified Spirit</i> , 1 in 4. |
| Piperitæ. | | <i>Dose</i> — $\frac{3}{4}$ 10 to 20. |

X. EXTRACTA—EXTRACTS.

A. GREEN EXTRACTS.

Dose.

1. From fresh leaves } and flowering tops. } Extractum Aconiti gr. 1-2

2. From fresh leaves and young branches. {
 a. Extractum Belladonnæ gr. $\frac{1}{4}$ - $\frac{1}{2}$
 b. „ Conii . gr. 2-8
 c. „ Hyoscyami . gr. 3-6

4. From flowering herb. { Extractum Lactucæ . gr. 5-10

5. From fresh corms. {
 a. Extractum Colchici
 b. „ „ „ Ace- } gr. $\frac{1}{2}$ -2
 c. „ „ „ ticum.

6. From root—Extractum Taraxaci gr. 5-15

B. AQUEOUS EXTRACTS.

Dose.

1. Digested in boiling water. {
 a. Extractum Aloes Barba-
 densis . gr. $\frac{1}{2}$ -2
 b. Extractum Aloes Socot-
 rinæ . gr. 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ -3
 c. Extractum Pareiræ . gr. 10-20

2. Infused in boiling water, and then boiled. {
 a. Extractum Gentianæ . gr. 5-15
 b. „ „ Hæmatoxyli gr. 10-30

3. Boiled, and volatile oil added. { Extractum Anthemidis . gr. 3-10

4. Macerated in cold water. {
 a. Extractum Calumbæ . gr. 2-10
 b. „ „ Glycyrrhizæ 3 $\frac{1}{2}$ -1
 c. „ „ Krameriæ . gr. 5-20
 d. „ „ Opii . gr. $\frac{1}{2}$ -1
 e. „ „ Quassiæ . gr. 3-5

C. ALCOHOLIC EXTRACTS.

1. Prepared with rectified spirit. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} a. \text{Extractum Cannabis Indicæ gr. } \frac{1}{4}-1 \\ b. \quad \quad \quad \text{Nucis Vomicæ gr. } \frac{1}{3}-2 \\ c. \quad \quad \quad \text{Physostigmatis Fabæ . . . gr. } \frac{1}{16}-\frac{1}{4} \end{array} \right.$
2. Prepared with rectified spirit and water. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} a. \text{Extractum Jalapæ . gr. 5-15} \\ b. \quad \quad \quad \text{Lupuli . gr. 5-10} \\ c. \quad \quad \quad \text{Papaveris . gr. 2-5} \\ d. \quad \quad \quad \text{Rhei . gr. 3-8} \end{array} \right.$

D. ETHEREAL EXTRACTS.

1. Extractum Filicis Liquidum . m 15-30
2. " Mezerei Æthereum (contained in Linimentum Sinapis Compositum.)

E. LIQUID EXTRACTS.

1. Extractum Belæ Liquidum . 3 1-2
2. " Cinchonæ Flavæ Liquidum m 10-30
3. " Ergotæ Liquidum . m 10-60
4. " Glycyrrhizæ Liquidum $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 3 \text{ 1 or} \\ \text{more.} \end{array} \right.$
5. " Opii Liquidum . m 10-40
6. " Pareiræ Liquidum . 3 $\frac{1}{2}$ -2
7. " Sarsæ Liquidum . 3 1-4
8. " Filicis Liquidum is also a *liquid extract*, but is made entirely with ether, and therefore belongs properly to the last group.

XI. GLYCERINA—GLYCERINES.

1. Glycerinum Acidi Carbolici
2. " " Gallici
3. " " Tannici
4. " Boracis
5. " Amyli . . .
- $\left. \begin{array}{l} 2. \\ 3. \\ 4. \end{array} \right\} 1 \text{ in } 4.$
- $\left. \begin{array}{l} 4. \\ 5. \end{array} \right\} 1 \text{ in } 8.$

XII. INFUSA—INFUSIONS.

A. SIMPLE INFUSIONS.

| | | | Dose. |
|--|---|--|--------------------------------|
| $\frac{3}{3}$ 1 in $\frac{3}{3}$ 10 | { | Infusum Cascarillæ . . . | $\frac{3}{3}$ 1-3 |
| | | „ Dulcamaræ . . . | $\frac{3}{3}$ 1-4 |
| | | „ Sennæ (contains ginger, gr. 30) . . . | $\frac{3}{3}$ 1-4 |
| $\frac{3}{3}$ $\frac{1}{2}$ in $\frac{3}{3}$ 10 | { | Infusum Anthemidis . . . | $\frac{3}{3}$ 1-2 |
| | | „ Aurantii . . . | $\frac{3}{3}$ 1-2 |
| | | „ Buchu . . . | $\frac{3}{3}$ 1-2 |
| | | „ Calumbæ (cold water) . . . | $\frac{3}{3}$ 1-3 |
| | | „ Cinchonæ Flavæ . . . | $\frac{3}{3}$ 1-2 |
| | | „ Cuspariæ, (water = 120°) . . . | $\frac{3}{3}$ $\frac{1}{2}$ -2 |
| | | „ Cusso . . . | $\frac{3}{3}$ 4-8 |
| | | „ Krameriæ . . . | $\frac{3}{3}$ 1-2 |
| | | „ Lupuli . . . | $\frac{3}{3}$ 1-2 |
| | | „ Maticæ . . . | $\frac{3}{3}$ 1-2 |
| | | „ Senegæ . . . | $\frac{3}{3}$ $\frac{1}{2}$ -2 |
| | | „ Uvæ Ursi . . . | $\frac{3}{3}$ 1-2 |
| 160 gr. in $\frac{3}{3}$ 10 | { | Infusum Catechu, (contains cinnamon, gr. 30) . . . | $\frac{3}{3}$ 1-2 |
| | | „ Lini, (contains liquorice, gr. 60) . . . | $\frac{3}{3}$ 2-4 |
| 3 2 in $\frac{3}{3}$ 10 | { | Infusum Caryophylli . . . | $\frac{3}{3}$ $\frac{1}{2}$ -2 |
| | | „ Chirataë, (water = 120) . . . | $\frac{3}{3}$ $\frac{1}{2}$ -2 |
| | | „ Ergotæ . . . | $\frac{3}{3}$ 2 $\frac{1}{2}$ |
| | | „ Rhei . . . | $\frac{3}{3}$ $\frac{1}{2}$ -2 |
| | | „ Rosæ Acidum (contains dilute sulphuric acid, 3 i) . . . | $\frac{3}{3}$ 1-2 |
| $\frac{3}{3}$ 1 in $\frac{3}{3}$ 10 | { | Infusum Serpentariæ . . . | $\frac{3}{3}$ 1-2 |
| | | „ Valerianæ . . . | $\frac{3}{3}$ 1-2 |
| $\frac{3}{3}$ 1 in $\frac{3}{3}$ 10 | { | Infusum Quassiæ (cold water) . . . | $\frac{3}{3}$ 1-2 |
| 3 $\frac{1}{2}$ in $\frac{3}{3}$ 10 | { | Infusum Digitalis . . . | 3 2-3 i |

B. COMPOUND INFUSIONS.

| | | | |
|-----------------------------|---|---|-------------------|
| Infusum Gentianæ Compositum | } | . | $\frac{2}{3}$ 1-2 |
| „ Aurantii „ | | | |

XIII. INJECTIO—INJECTION.

1. Injectio Morphiæ Hypodermica = gr. 1 of Acetate of Morphia in 12 minims.

XIV. LINIMENTA—EMBROCATIONS.

| | | |
|--|---|--|
| 1. Mixtures with or solutions in Olive Oil. | { | a. Linimentum Ammoniaë, 1 of <i>Liquor Ammoniaë</i> in 4. |
| | | b. Linimentum Calcis, 1 of <i>Liquor Calcis</i> in 2. |
| | | c. Linimentum Camphoræ, 1 in 5. |
| 2. Mixtures with or solutions in Camphor Liniment. | { | a. Linimentum Chloroformi, 1 in 2. |
| | | b. „ Terebinthinæ Aceticum. (Equal parts of each ingredient). |
| | | c. Linimentum Hydrargyri. (Equal parts of ointment of mercury, solution of ammonia, and camphor liniment). |
| 3. Prepared by maceration and percolation with rectified spirit, camphor being then added. | { | a. Linimentum Aconiti |
| | | b. „ Belladonnæ |
| | | } 1 in 1 |

| | |
|------------|---|
| | 2. Emmentum Camphoræ Compositum. |
| 1. Special | 1. Emmentum Crotonis. |
| Imments | 2. " Iodi. |
| Emmentum | 2. " Potassi Iodidi cum |
| Emmentum | 1. Emmentum Saponis. |
| | 2. " Saponis Compositum. |
| | 2. " Terebinthinæ. |
| 3. Mixture | 2. Emmentum Opii. (An equal |
| with Soap | proportion of Tincture of Opium). |
| Emmentum | |

IV. LIQURES—SOLUTIONS.

This is a very large group of pharmaceutical preparations and one difficult to classify. The following arrangement has appeared to me practically useful both for remembering them and for reference.

| | |
|---|---|
| | Liquor Iod. gr. 20 in $\frac{3}{4}$ l. contains Iodide of Potassium gr. 20. |
| 1. Solutions of | 2. Liquor Chlori. gr. 2.66 in $\frac{3}{4}$ l. |
| of Chlorine | 1. " Calcis Chloratæ = gr. 13 |
| of Chlorine | 2. " of Chlorine in $\frac{3}{4}$ l. |
| of Chlorine | 1. " Sodæ Chloratæ. |
| | Dose. |
| 2. Liquor Ammonia Fortior, | |
| gr. 15.83 in $\frac{3}{4}$ l. | |
| 1. Liquor Ammonia, gr. 5.2 | |
| in $\frac{3}{4}$ l. | m 10-30 |
| 1. Liquor Potassæ, gr. 27 | |
| in $\frac{3}{4}$ l. | m 15-5 l |
| 1. Liquor Sodæ, gr. 18.8 | |
| in $\frac{3}{4}$ l. | 3 $\frac{1}{2}$ -1 |
| 1. Liquor Calcis, gr. $\frac{1}{2}$ in $\frac{3}{4}$ l. | 3 $\frac{1}{2}$ -4 |
| 1. Liquor Calcis Saccharata, | |
| gr. 7.11 in $\frac{3}{4}$ l. | m 15-5 l |

| | | | |
|-----------------|-----------|--------------------------|------------------|
| 4. Solutions of | <i>a.</i> | Liquor Ammoniae Acetatis | 3 2-6 |
| Carbonates, | <i>b.</i> | " " Citratis | 3 2-6 |
| Acetates, | <i>c.</i> | Lithiae Effervescens | 3 5-10 |
| or Citrates | <i>d.</i> | Potassae " | } <i>ad lib.</i> |
| of | <i>e.</i> | Sodae " | |
| Alkalies or | <i>f.</i> | Magnesiae Carbonatis | 3 1-2 |
| Alkaline | <i>g.</i> | " Citratis | 3 5-10 |
| Earths. | | | |

| | | | |
|----------------------------------|-----------|--|----------------------|
| 5. Solutions containing Arsenic. | <i>a.</i> | Liquor Arsenicalis | } gr. 4 in 3 1 |
| | <i>b.</i> | Liquor Arsenici Hydrochlorici | |
| | | | } <i>Dose</i> m 3-10 |
| | <i>c.</i> | Liquor Sodae Arseniatis, gr. 4 of Arseniate of Soda in 3 1 . . . | m 3-10 |

| | | | |
|-------------------------|-----------|-----------------------------------|-----------|
| 6. Solutions containing | <i>a.</i> | Liquor Ferri Perchloridi Fortior. | |
| Salts of | <i>b.</i> | " " Perchloridi | } m 10-40 |
| Iron. | <i>c.</i> | " " Pernitratidis | |
| | <i>d.</i> | " " Persulphatis. | |

| | | | |
|----------------------------------|-----------|--|--------------------------------|
| 7. Solutions of Salts of Mercury | <i>a.</i> | Liquor Hydrargyri Nitratidis Acidus. | |
| | <i>b.</i> | Liquor Hydrargyri Perchloridi, gr. $\frac{1}{2}$ in 3 1 (contains Ammonium Chloride) . . . | <i>Dose</i> 3 $\frac{1}{2}$ -2 |

| | | | |
|------------------------------|-----------|------------------------------------|--|
| 8. Solutions containing Lead | <i>a.</i> | Liquor Plumbi Subacetatis. | |
| | <i>b.</i> | Liquor Plumbi Subacetatis Dilutus. | |

| | | | |
|--|-----------|--|--|
| 9. Special solutions of Inorganic Salts. | <i>a.</i> | Liquor Antimonii Chloridi. | |
| | <i>b.</i> | Liquor Bismuthi et Ammoniae Citratidis. <i>Dose</i> — 3 $\frac{1}{2}$ -2 | |
| | <i>c.</i> | Liquor Potassae Permanganatis. | |
| | <i>d.</i> | Liquor Zinci Chloridi. | |

| | | Dose. |
|---|-------------------------------------|---------|
| 10. Solutions of Alkaloids or their salts = | <i>a.</i> Liquor Atropiæ | ℥ 2-4 |
| | <i>b.</i> „ Atropiæ Sulphatis | |
| | <i>c.</i> „ Morphici Acetatis | ℥ 10-40 |
| | <i>d.</i> „ Morphici Hydrochloratis | |
| | <i>e.</i> „ Strychniæ | ℥ 5 |
| 11. Special solutions | <i>a.</i> Liquor Epispasticus. | |
| | <i>b.</i> „ Gutta-percha. | |

XVI. LOTIONES—LOTIONS.

1. Lotio Hydrargyri Flava (Yellow wash).
2. „ Hydrargyri Nigra (Black wash).

XVII. MELLITA—HONEY.

1. Mel Depuratum—Purified honey.
2. Mel Boracis.

XVIII. MISTURÆ—MIXTURES.

| | Dose. |
|-----------------------------------|------------------|
| Mistura Ammoniaci | $\frac{1}{2}$ -1 |
| „ Amygdalæ | 1-2 |
| „ Creasoti | 1-2 |
| „ Cretæ | 1-2 |
| „ Ferri Aromatica | $\frac{1}{2}$ -2 |
| „ Ferri Composita | $\frac{1}{2}$ -2 |
| „ Gentianæ | $\frac{1}{2}$ -1 |
| „ Guaiaci | $\frac{1}{2}$ -2 |
| „ Scammonii | $\frac{1}{2}$ -2 |
| „ Sennæ Composita | 1-2 |
| „ Spiritus Vini Gallici | 1-2 |

XIX. MUCILAGINES—MUCILAGES.

1. Mucilago Acaciæ. Used in making lozenges.
2. „ Amyli. Used in enemata.
3. „ Tragacanthæ.

XX. OLEA—OILS.

These preparations have been already fully discussed, and it will suffice here to sum them up in the following way:—

1. Oils from the Vegetable Kingdom.

| | |
|---|---|
| { | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Simple fixed oils. b. Ordinary volatile oils. c. Concrete oils. d. Oils with special actions. |
|---|---|
2. Cod liver oil.
3. Oleum Phosphoratum = gr. $\frac{1}{32}$ of Phosphorus in ℥5.
Dose—℥ 5-10.

XXI. OXYMELLITA—OXYMELS.

- | | Dose. |
|----------------------------|-------|
| 1. Oxymel | 3 ℥-4 |
| 2. Oxymel Scillæ | 3 ℥-4 |

XXII. PILULÆ—PILLS.

These preparations may be arranged thus:—

- | | | | Dose. |
|---|---|---|----------|
| 1. Aperient or Purgative Pills. All contain <i>Aloes</i> , except the last. | { | a. Pilula Aloes Barbadosensis | gr. 5-10 |
| | | b. „ Aloes Socotrinæ . | gr. 5-10 |
| | | c. „ Aloes et Assafœtidæ | gr. 5-20 |
| | | d. „ Aloes et Ferri . | gr. 5-10 |
| | | e. „ Aloes et Myrrhæ | gr. 5-15 |
| | | f. „ Cambogiæ Composita | gr. 5-15 |
| | | g. „ Colocynthis „ | gr. 5-15 |
| | | h. „ Colocynthis et Hyoscyami . . . | gr. 5-15 |
| | | i. „ Rhei Composita. | gr. 5-20 |
| | | j. „ Scammonii Composita (does not contain Aloes). | gr. 5-15 |

| | | | |
|--|---|--|----------|
| 2. Pills containing special Iron-salts | { | <i>a.</i> Pilula Ferri Carbonatis | gr. 5-10 |
| | | <i>b.</i> „ Ferri Iodidi | gr. 5-15 |
| 3. Pills containing Mercury. | { | <i>a.</i> Pilula Hydrargyri | gr. 2-15 |
| | | <i>b.</i> „ „ Subchloridi | |
| | | Composita | gr. 5-10 |
| 4. Pills containing Opium, either alone or with other ingredients. | { | <i>a.</i> Pilula Ipecacuanhæ cum Scillæ (made with Dover's Powder) | gr. 5-10 |
| | | <i>b.</i> Pilula Plumbi cum Opio | gr. 4-6 |
| | | <i>c.</i> „ Saponis Composita | gr. 2-10 |
| | | (Opium is the only active ingredient = about gr. 1 in 6). | |
| | | | |
| 5. Pills of various composi- tions. | { | <i>a.</i> Pilula Assafoetidæ Com- posita | gr. 5-20 |
| | | <i>b.</i> „ Conii Composita | gr. 5-10 |
| | | <i>c.</i> „ Phosphori, gr. $\frac{1}{18}$ in gr. 5 | gr. 3-6 |
| | | <i>d.</i> „ Quiniæ, gr. 3 in 4. | gr. 2-10 |
| | | <i>e.</i> „ Scillæ Composita | gr. 5-15 |

XXIII. PULVERES—POWDERS.

These preparations must be studied individually, but for mere reference they may be grouped thus:—

| | | | |
|---|---|--|-------------------------|
| 1. Inactive powders, chiefly used for pharma- ceutical pur- poses. | { | <i>a.</i> Pulvis Amygdalæ Com- positus | Dose. <i>ad lib.</i> |
| | | <i>b.</i> Pulvis Cinnamomi Com- positus | gr. 5-30 |
| | | <i>c.</i> Pulvis Tragacanthæ Compositus | gr. 20-60 |

- | | | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|---|----------------------|
| 2. Powder containing Antimony. | { | a. Pulvis Antimonialis, (contains Oxide of Antimony, 1 in 3) | . gr. 2-10 |
| 3. Astringent powders. | { | a. Pulvis Catechu Compositus . . . | gr. 20-60 or more. |
| | { | b. Pulvis Cretæ Aromaticus . . . | gr. 5 upwards. |
| 4. Powders containing Opium. | { | a. Pulvis Cretæ Aromaticus cum Opio, 1 in 40 | gr. 5-40 |
| | { | b. Pulvis Kino Compositus, 1 in 20 . . . | gr. 5-30 |
| | { | c. Pulvis Ipecacuanhæ Compositus, 1 in 10 | gr. 2-10 |
| | { | d. Pulvis Opii Compositus, 1 in 10 . . . | gr. 2-10 |
| 5. Purgative or aperient powders. | { | a. Pulvis Elaterii Compositus, 1 in 10 . . . | gr. $\frac{1}{2}$ -5 |
| | { | b. Pulvis Glycyrrhizæ Compositus, (contains Senna) . . . | gr. 30-60 |
| | { | c. Pulvis Jalapæ Compositus, (contains Cream of Tartar) . . . | gr. 15-40 |
| | { | d. Pulvis Rhei Compositus | gr. 5-60 |
| | { | e. „ Scammonii Compositus . . . | gr. 10-20 |

XXIV. SPIRITUS—SPIRITS.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------------|---|---------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. Alcoholic group. | { | a. Spiritus Rectificatus. | |
| | { | b. „ Tenuior. | |
| | { | c. „ Vini Gallici. | |
| 2. Ether and chloroform group. | { | a. Spiritus Ætheris . . . | $3\frac{1}{2}$ -3 |
| | { | b. „ „ Nitrosi . . . | $3\frac{1}{2}$ -3 |
| | { | c. „ „ Chloroformi . . . | 10-31 |

| | | | |
|---|---|--|--------|
| 3. Ammonia group. | { | a. Spiritus Ammoniaë Aromaticus . . . | ℥20-31 |
| | | b. Spiritus Ammoniaë Fœtidus . . . | 3 ½-1 |
| 4. Solutions of volatile oils in rectified spirit, = 1 in 49. | { | a. Spiritus Cajuputi . . . | 3 ½-1 |
| | | b. " Juniperi . . . | ℥20-31 |
| | | c. " Lavandulæ . . . | ℥20-30 |
| | | d. " Menthaë Piperitæ . . . | ℥10-30 |
| | | e. " Myristicæ . . . | 3 ½-1 |
| | | f. " Rosmarini . . . | 3 ½-2 |
| 5. Special. | { | a. Spiritus Armoraciæ Compositus . . . | 3 ½-2 |
| | | b. Spiritus Camphoræ . . . | ℥10-30 |

XXV. SUCCI—JUICES.

| | | | |
|--|---|----------------------------|----------------|
| 1. Fresh expressed juices of ripe fruits. | { | a. Succus Limonis . . . | 3 2-3 1 |
| | | b. " Mori . . . | <i>ad lib.</i> |
| | | c. " Rhamni . . . | 3 1-3 |
| 2. Expressed juices preserved with rectified spirit. | { | a. Succus Belladonnæ . . . | ℥5-15 |
| | | b. " Conii . . . | ℥20-31 |
| | | c. " Hyoscyami . . . | ℥30-31 |
| | | d. " Scoparii . . . | 3 1-2 |
| | | e. " Taraxaci . . . | ℥10-32 |

XXVI. SUPPOSITORIA—SUPPOSITORIES.

| | |
|--|---------------------------|
| 1. Suppositoria Acidi Carbolici cum Sapone, gr. 1. | |
| 2. " " Tannici | } gr. 3. |
| 3. " " " cum Sapone | |
| 4. " Hydrargyri, gr. 5 of Unguentum Hydrargyri | |
| 5. Suppositoria Morphiaë | } gr. ½ of Hydrochlorate. |
| 6. " " cum Sapone | |
| 7. " Plumbi { Acetate of Lead, gr. 3. | |
| Composita { Opium, gr. 1. | |

XXVII. SYRUP—SYRUPS.

1. Syrupus—Solution of sugar . . . *ad lib.*
2. Mixtures with or solutions in syrup. {
- a. Syrupus Chloral, gr. 10 in 3 i . . . ℥30-32
 - b. Syrupus Aurantii, 1 of Tincture in 8 . . . 3 i-2
 - c. Syrupus Zingiberis, 1 of Strong Tincture in 26 . . . 3 i-2
3. Syrups made from juices of fruits. {
- a. Syrupus Limonis, (with lemon-peel), 1 in 2 . . . 3 i-2
 - b. Syrupus Mori, 1 in 2 . . . *ad lib.*
 - c. „ Rhamni, (with Ginger and Pimento) . . . 3 i-2
4. Syrups made from parts of plants {
- a. Syrupus Hemidesmi . . . 3 i-3
 - b. „ Papaveris . . . 3 $\frac{1}{2}$ -4
 - c. „ Rhœados . . . 3 $\frac{1}{2}$ -1
 - d. „ Rosæ Gallicæ . . . 3 i-2
 - e. „ Rhei . . . 3 i-4
 - f. „ Sennæ . . . 3 i-2
5. Syrups made from special preparations. {
- a. Syrupus Aurantii Floris (from Orange-flower Water) . . . 3 i-2
 - b. Syrupus Scillæ (from Acetum Scillæ) . . . 3 $\frac{1}{2}$ -2
 - c. Syrupus Tolutanus (from Balsam of tolu) . . . 3 i-2
6. Syrups containing Iron-salts. {
- a. Syrupus Ferri Iodidi, gr. 4 $\frac{1}{2}$ in 3 i . . . ℥5-20
 - b. Syrupus Ferri Phosphatis, gr. 1 in 3 i . . . ℥20-31

| | |
|--|--------------------|
| 1 in 27, Tinctura Quassiae | 3 $\frac{1}{2}$ -2 |
| 1 in 40 { Tinctura Aloes, (contains Extract of Liquorice) | 3 1-4 |

C. AMMONIATED TINCTURES.

| | |
|--|--|
| Aromatic Spirit { Tinctura Guaiaci Ammoniata 3 $\frac{1}{2}$ -1 of Ammonia. { „ Valerianæ „ 3 $\frac{1}{2}$ -2 | |
| Strong Solution of { Tinctura Opii Ammo- Ammonia and { niata, 1 in 96 (a Com- Rectified Spirit. { pound Tincture) . 3 $\frac{1}{2}$ -1 | |
| Solution of Ammo- { Tinctura Quiniæ nia and Proof { Ammoniata, gr. 1 Spirit. { in 3 i . . . 3 i or more | |

D. TINCTURES MADE WITH SPECIAL MENSTRUUM.

| | |
|---|-------------|
| Tinctura Lobeliæ Ætherea, made with Spirit of Ether | m 10-3 i |
| Tinctura Quiniæ, made with Orange Wine, gr. 1 in 3 i | 3 i or more |

E. COMPOUND TINCTURES.

(a). Made with Rectified Spirit.

| | |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------|
| Tinctura Benzoini Composita | Dose. 3 1-2 |
| „ Chloroformi Composita | m 10-40 |
| „ Lavandulæ Composita | 3 $\frac{1}{2}$ -2 |

(b). Made with Proof Spirit.

| | |
|--|--------------------|
| Tinctura Camphoræ Composita, (con- tains Opium gr. 1 in 3 $\frac{1}{2}$) | 3 $\frac{1}{2}$ -3 |
| „ Cardamomi Composita | 3 $\frac{1}{2}$ -2 |
| „ Cinchonæ Composita | 3 1-3 |
| „ Gentianæ Composita | 3 $\frac{1}{2}$ -2 |
| „ Rhei | 3 $\frac{1}{2}$ -4 |
| „ Sennæ | 3 1-4 |

F. TINCTURES OF ANIMAL DRUGS.

| | | |
|-------------------|-------------------------|-----------|
| Proof Spirit. | { Tinctura Cantharidis, | |
| | 1 in 80 | . m 10-40 |
| | „ Cocci, 1 in 8 | . ad lib. |
| Rectified Spirit, | „ Castorei, 1 in 20 | . 3 1-4 |

XXIX. TROCHISCI—LOZENGES.

| | |
|----------------------------|---|
| Trochisci Acidi Tannici, | gr. $\frac{1}{2}$. |
| „ Bismuthi, | gr. 2. |
| „ Catechu, | gr. 1. |
| „ Ferri Redacti, | gr. 1. |
| „ Ipecacuanhæ, | gr. $\frac{1}{4}$. |
| „ Morphiae, | gr. $\frac{1}{36}$ of Hydrochlorate. |
| „ Morphiae et Ipecacuanhæ, | gr. $\frac{1}{36}$ and $\frac{1}{12}$. |
| „ Opii, | gr. $\frac{1}{10}$ of Extract. |
| „ Potassæ Chloratis, | gr. 5. |
| „ Soda Bicarbonatis, | gr. 5. |

XXX. UNGUENTA—OINTMENTS.

For practical purposes the officinal ointments may be grouped thus:—

A. *Unguentum Simplex*, a mixture of prepared lard, white wax, and almond oil.

B. *Those containing Inorganic Drugs.*

| | | | |
|----------------------------------|---|----|---|
| 1. Containing Iodine or Iodides. | { | a. | Unguentum Iodi, (contains Iodide of Potassium). |
| | | b. | „ Sulphuris Iodidi. |
| | | c. | „ Cadmii Iodidi. |
| | | d. | „ Plumbi Iodidi. |
| | | e. | „ Potassii Iodidi. |

2. Unguentum Antimonii Tartarati.

| | | | |
|---|-----------|-----------------------|---------------|
| 3. Containing Mercury or its compounds. | <i>a.</i> | Unguentum Hydrargyri. | |
| | <i>b.</i> | " | Compositum. |
| | <i>c.</i> | " | Oxidi Rubri. |
| | <i>d.</i> | " | Nitratis. |
| | <i>e.</i> | " | Iodidi Rubri. |
| | <i>f.</i> | " | Subchloridi. |
| | <i>g.</i> | " | Ammoniat. |

| | | | |
|----------------------------------|-----------|----------------------------|---|
| 4. Containing compounds of Lead. | <i>a.</i> | Unguentum Plumbi Acetatis. | |
| | <i>b.</i> | " | Subacetatis. |
| | <i>c.</i> | " | Carbonatis. |
| | <i>d.</i> | " | Iodidi, (also mentioned under Iodides). |

5. Unguentum Zinci, contains Oxide of Zinc.

| | | | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------|----------------------|----------------------|
| 6. Containing Sulphur or a Sulphide. | <i>a.</i> | Unguentum Sulphuris. | |
| | <i>b.</i> | " | Potassæ Sulphuratae. |

C. Those containing Organic Drugs.

| | | | |
|---|-----------|-----------------------|-----------------|
| 1. Containing parts of plants, or vegetable products or preparations. | <i>a.</i> | Unguentum Belladonnæ, | |
| | | (Extract 1 in 6½). | |
| | <i>b.</i> | Unguentum Elemi. | |
| | <i>c.</i> | " | Gallæ. |
| | <i>d.</i> | " | Gallæ cum Opio. |
| | <i>e.</i> | " | Sabinæ. |

| | | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------|--------------------|---------------|
| 2. Containing powerful Alkaloids. | <i>a.</i> | Unguentum Aconitiæ | |
| | <i>b.</i> | " | Atropiæ |
| | <i>c.</i> | " | Veratriæ |
| | | | gr. 8 in 3 i. |

| | | | |
|---|-----------|---------------------|----------------|
| 3. Containing products of distillation of wood. | <i>a.</i> | Unguentum Creasoti. | |
| | <i>b.</i> | " | Picis Liquidæ. |
| | <i>c.</i> | " | Terebinthinæ. |

| | | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------|------------------------|----------|
| 4. Containing Animal drugs. | <i>a.</i> | Unguentum Cantharidis. | |
| | <i>b.</i> | " | Cetacei. |

XXXI. VAPORES—INHALATIONS.

1. Vapor Acidi Hydrocyanici, $\mathfrak{m}10$ to 15 to 3 i of *cold* water.
2. Vapor Chlori, made by moistening Chlorinated Lime with water.
3. Vapor Coniæ, made with Extract of Hemlock, Solution of Potash, and water.
4. Vapor Creasoti, $\mathfrak{m}12$ to $\frac{3}{8}$ of *boiling* water.
5. Vapor Iodi, consists of Tincture of Iodine, 3 i with water $\frac{3}{8}\text{ i}$, heated gently.

XXXII. VINA—WINES.

1. Simple Wines. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} a. \text{ Vinum Aurantii.} \\ b. \quad \quad \quad \text{,, Xericum.} \end{array} \right.$ Dose.
2. Wines containing inorganic drugs. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} a. \text{ Vinum Antimoniale,} \\ \quad \quad \quad (\text{gr. } 2 \text{ in } \frac{3}{8}\text{ i}) \quad \quad \quad \mathfrak{m}10\text{--}32 \\ b. \text{ Vinum Ferri} \quad \quad \quad 3\text{ i--}\frac{3}{8}\text{ i} \\ c. \quad \quad \quad \text{,, Citratis, (made} \\ \quad \quad \quad \text{with Orange Wine) gr. } 8 \text{ in } \frac{3}{8}\text{ i } \frac{3}{8}\frac{1}{2}\text{--}1 \end{array} \right.$
3. Wines containing vegetable drugs. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} a. \text{ Vinum Aloes} \quad \quad \quad 3\text{ i--}3 \\ b. \quad \quad \quad \text{,, Colchici} \quad \quad \quad 3\frac{1}{2}\text{--}2 \\ c. \quad \quad \quad \text{,, Ipecacuanhæ} \quad \quad \mathfrak{m}5\text{--}32 \\ d. \quad \quad \quad \text{,, Opii, (1 of Extract} \\ \quad \quad \quad \text{in } 20) \quad \quad \quad \mathfrak{m}10\text{--}40 \\ e. \text{ Vinum Quiniæ, (made with} \\ \quad \quad \quad \text{Orange Wine), gr. } 1 \text{ in } \frac{3}{8}\text{ i } \quad \quad \frac{3}{8}\text{ i} \\ f. \text{ Vinum Rhei} \quad \quad \quad 3\text{ i--}4 \text{ or more.} \end{array} \right.$



INDEX.

Aceta, 10, 355
 Acid, Acetic, 61
 — Benzoic, 340
 — Carbolic, 189
 — Citric, 63
 — Gallic, 337
 — Hydrochloric, 57
 — Hydrocyanic, 176
 — Nitric, 57
 — Nitro-hydrochloric, 59
 — Phosphoric, 59
 — Sulphuric, 57
 — Sulphurous, 39
 — Tannic, 337
 — Tartaric, 65
 Aconite, 192
 — Leaves, 252
 — Root, 232
 Aconitia, 321
 Active principles, 6
 Adulterations, 30
 Alcohol, 177
 Almond, 204, 273
 — Oil, 294
 Aloes, 226, 309
 Aluminium, 105
 Ammoniacum, 208, 287
 Ammonium Salts, 67
 — Sulphide, 38
 Amyl Nitrite, 187
 Anise, 208, 193
 Antimony, 119
 Aquæ, 10, 355
 Areca, 226, 274
 Arnica, 211, 241
 Arsenic, 126

Assafoetida, 209, 288
 Atropia, 322

Bael, 197, 265
 Balsam of Peru, 201, 290
 — Tolu, 202, 291
 Barley, 228, 277
 Bebeeru Bark, 219, 248
 Beberia, 324
 Belladonna, 216
 — Leaves, 253
 — Root, 234
 Benzoin, 213, 291
 Bismuth 131
 Bromine, 50
 Buchu, 198, 255
 Buckthorn, 199, 271

Cacao Butter, 196, 301
 Cadmium Iodide, 49
 Cajuput, 205
 Calabar Bean, 202, 275
 Calcium Hypophosphite, 53
 — Salts, 107
 Calumba, 193, 237
 Camphor, 219, 299
 Canada Balsam, 224, 292
 Cannabis Indica, 222, 258
 Canella, 197, 244
 Cantharides, 345
 Capsicum, 215, 265
 Caraway, 208, 263
 Cardamoms, 225, 275
 Cascarilla, 220, 245

Cassia, 203, 268
 Castor, 349
 — Oil, 220, 303
 Cataplasmata, 11, 255
 Catechu, 209, 312
 Cerium, 113
 Cevadilla, 227, 268
 Chamomile, 211, 259
 Charcoal, 35
 Chartæ, 11, 356
 Cherry Laurel, 204, 254
 Chiretta, 214, 230
 Chloral, 186
 Chlorine, 43
 Chloroform, 185
 Cinchona, 211, 246
 Cinnamon, 219, 247
 Clove, 206, 259
 Cochineal, 348
 Cod Liver Oil, 359
 Colchicum, 226
 — Corm, 279
 — Seeds, 276
 Collodion, 341
 Colocynth, 206, 269
 Confectiones, 11, 356
 Conium, 207
 — Fruit, 263
 — Leaves, 257
 Copaiva, 203, 292
 — Oil, 304
 Copper, 134
 Coriander, 208, 263
 Cotton, 196
 Creasote, 190
 Croton Oil, 220, 303
 Cubebs, 221
 — Fruit, 266
 — Oil, 304
 Cusparia, 199, 245

Decantation, 23
 Decocta, 11, 356
 Digestion, 23
 Digitaline, 355
 Digitalis, 217, 253
 Dill, 207, 263

Distillation, 23
 Dulcamara, 216, 252

Ecbalium, 209, 266
 Egg, 354
 Elaterium, 313
 Elder, 209, 260
 Elemi, 200, 284
 Elm, 222, 249
 Elutriation, 23
 Emplastra, 12, 357
 Emulsion, 16
 Enemata, 12, 357
 Ergot, 228, 281
 Ether, 180
 Essentiæ, 12, 357
 Evaporation, 24
 Extracta, 12, 357

Fennel, 208, 263
 Fig, 221, 262
 Filix Mas, 228, 241
 Filtration, 24
 Flour, 227
 Frankincense, 224, 293

Galbanum, 209, 288
 Galls, 222, 281
 Gamboge, 197, 289
 Gentian, 214, 235
 Ginger, 225, 240
 Glycerina, 14, 359
 Glycerine, 306
 Grape, 198
 Guaiacum, 198, 249
 — Resin, 283
 Gum Acacia, 203, 282
 — Tragacanth, 200, 283
 Gutta Percha, 213, 314

Hellebore, 227
 Hemidesmus, 214, 240
 Honey, 351
 Hop, 222, 262
 Horse-radish, 194, 233
 Hyoscyamus, 216, 254

Iceland Moss, 229, 231
 Impurities, 30
 Incompatibles, 3
 Indigo, 4
 Infusa, 14, 360
 Injectio, 14, 361
 Iodine, 46
 Ipecacuanha, 210, 238
 Iron, 136
 Isinglass, 350

Jalap, 215, 279
 ——— Resin, 285
 Juniper, 223, 304

Kamala, 220, 272
 Kino, 201, 315
 Koussou, 204, 258

Lactucarium, 231
 Larch, 148, 223
 Lard, 348
 Lavender, 217
 Lead, 164
 Leech, 345
 Lemon, 197, 270
 Lettuce, 211, 231
 Lime, Chlorinated, 44
 Linimenta, 14, 361
 Linseed, 195, 278
 Liquores, 15, 362
 Liquorice, 200, 235
 Litmus, 229
 Lithium, 103
 Lixiviation, 24
 Lobelia, 212, 231
 Logwood, 202, 250
 Lotiones, 15, 364

Maceration, 24
 Magnesium, 114
 Manna, 213, 316
 Mastiche, 200, 285
 Matico, 221, 254
 Measures, 22
 Mellita, 15, 364
 Mercury, 153
 Mezereon, 218, 248

Milk, 350
 ——— Sugar of, 350
 Mistura, 15, 364
 Morphia, 326
 Mucilagines, 16, 364
 Mulberry, 221, 271
 Musk, 353
 Mustard, 195, 276
 ——— Oil, 304
 Myrrh, 200, 289

Non-official, 4
 Nutmeg, 217, 274
 ——— Expressed Oil of, 301
 Nux Vomica, 214, 274

Oak Bark, 222, 248
 Official, 4
 Olea, 16, 365
 Olive, 213, 294
 Opium, 193, 316
 Orange, 196, 270
 Ox Bile, 353
 Oxymellita, 16, 365

Pareira, 193, 236
 Pellitory, 212, 237
 Pepper, 221, 267
 Peppermint, 217
 Pepsin, 352
 Percolation, 24
 Phosphorus, 51
 Pilulæ, 16, 365
 Pimento, 206, 267
 Pitch, Burgundy, 223
 Podophyllum, 192, 237
 ——— Resin, 286
 Pomegranate, 206, 244
 Poppy, 193
 ——— Capsules, 266
 ——— Petals, 260
 Potassa Sulphurata, 39
 Potassium Salts, 77
 Precipitation, 24
 Prune, 204, 263
 Pulveres, 17, 366
 Pyroxylin, 341

Quassia, 199, 250
 Quinia, 329

Raisin, 263
 Resin, 224, 286
 Rhatany, 195, 236
 Rhubarb, 218, 239
 Rose, 205
 ——— Fruit, 267
 ——— Petals, 260
 Rosemary, 218
 Rue, 199, 304

Saffron, 225, 261
 Sandal Wood, 201, 250
 Santonica, 212, 259
 Santonin, 336
 Sarsaparilla, 225, 243
 Sassafras, 220, 240
 Saturation, 24
 Savin, 223, 251
 ——— Oil, 304
 Scammony, 215, 290
 ——— Resin, 287
 ——— Root, 233
 Senega, 195, 242
 Senna, 202, 256
 Serpentry, 220, 243
 Silver, 124
 Soaps, 307
 Soda, Chlorinated, 45
 ——— Hypophosphite, 54
 ——— Hyposulphite, 42
 Sodium Salts, 91
 Spearmint, 218
 Spermaceti, 352
 Spiritus, 17, 367
 Squill, 226, 280
 Starch, 227, 343
 Storax, 223, 291
 Stramonium, 217
 ——— Leaves, 254
 ——— Seeds, 277

Strychnia, 330
 Sublimation, 24
 Succi, 18, 368
 Suet, 349
 Sugar, 228
 Sulphur, 37
 Sulphur Iodide, 49
 Sulphuretted Hydrogen, 40
 Sumbul, 209, 238
 Suppositories, 18, 368
 Syrupi, 18, 369

Tamarind, 203, 268
 Tar, 224, 342
 Taraxacum, 212, 234
 Tests, 29
 Tinctures, 19, 376
 Tobacco, 217, 255
 Treacle, 228
 Trituration, 25
 Trochisci, 20, 373
 Turmeric, 225, 241
 Turpentine, 224, 305

Unguenta, 21, 373
 Uva Ursi, 212, 257

Valerian, 211, 242
 Vapores, 21, 375
 Veratria, 333
 Veratrum, 227, 243
 Vina, 22, 375
 Vinegar, 59
 Volatile Oils, 295

Washing, 25
 Water, 34
 Wax, 351
 Weights, 22

Yeast, 229, 343

Zinc, 170

1

2

3

